RESTRICTED

GERMAN TRAINING METHODS

RESTRICTED

√10

GERMAN MILITARY TRAINING

A Study of
German Military Training

Produced at
GMDS
by a combined
British, Canadian, and U S
Staff

May 1946.

MAY 07 2001

PREFACE

This study has been prepared under joint United States, British, and Canadian auspices from original German documents and from information from prisoners of war. The paper should not be regarded as a complete study of German military training. Limitations of both material and time have permitted the treatment of certain aspects only; thus much of the information that would be included in a complete treatment of the subject is not dealt with in the paper. It has not been possible to verify in detail all the information provided by the prisoners of war, but nothing has been accepted, which is not in accord with the body of certain facts. There are some points of minor detail in which the paper can not be regarded as authoritative.

The study has been produced, in the main, to meet certain specific needs rather than to present an exhaustive survey of all the problems presented in German military training. In particular, the organization of the German High Command in regard to training, as well as the conduct and procedure of training from 1939 to 1945, is dealt with methodically and examined in great detail. The paper is divided into two main parts. Part I deals with German Army training, whereas part II deals with German paramilitary training.

Part I is divided into six chapters, each containing a number of minor chapters. Chapter I is a brief presentation of the general background of the subject and contains a history of the development of military training up to and including World War I. Chapter II presents training in the period 1919 to 1939 and includes a brief introduction to the peacetime organization of the Army High Command insofar as it affected the training branch.

Chapter III is the main body of the study, namely, German military training in wartime (1939 to 1945). This chapter deals with the training organization of the German High Command in both the Field Army and the Replacement Army and with the duties of the various offices and branches. It also presents the conduct of training in both the Field Army and the Replacement Army. This subject is considerably enlarged by the inclusion of various training syllabi in the appendixes. A study of the training in schools and courses in the Field Army and the Replacement Army, together with the training of potential officers and NCOs, completes the chapter on wartime training.

Armored training is dealt with in a separate study because of its importance in the German Army. Chapter IV depicts the training organization, and the conduct and procedure of training within the Waffen-SS. Included is also a survey of the training in the schools and courses as well as the training of Waffen-SS officers.

Part I of the study concludes with a brief summary which is presented in chapter V.

Part II of the study, consisting of eight chapters, deals with those paramilitary organizations which participated, to a certain extent, in military training. It was found impossible to deal with military training without describing the organization, function, and general employment of these organizations. At the same time, part II is not to be considered complete except where it touches on military training.

In the appendixes will be found a large amount of material which illustrates the text. Wherever the appendixes are complete translations or extracts from original documents, an attempt has been made to include the date, origin, and recipient of the document.

In addition, a special bibliography has been prepared to describe the sources, in part only, of the documentary information. It is intended as an aid to additional research and to assist departments in drawing up questionnaires, should their particular sphere of interest not be sufficiently covered in the study.

American spelling and military terms are used throughout. Thus, for example, Generalmajor is translated brigadier general, although British usage is to render it brigadier, and Batterie is translated battery, where the British equivalent would be troop. Where there are no equivalents for German terms, suitable translations have been made, and the German term is included the first time it appears. Wherever deemed necessary, a description of the terms is also included with the first translation.

CONTENTS

Page

PART I GERMAN ARMY TRAINING (1918 to 1945

Chapter 1 INTRODUCTION 1

Chapter 2 PEACETIME TRAINING 3
  Hundred-thousand Army (1919 to 1934) 3
  Army (1934 to 1939) 8

Chapter 3 WARTIME TRAINING 13
  Organization of German Army High Command in Regard to Training (1939 to 1945) 13
    Field Army 13
    Replacement Army 14
    Reorganization in the German High Command Affecting Both the Field Army and the Replacement Army 20
  Conduct and Procedure of Training 20
    Field Army 20
    Replacement Army Training 31
  Training Schools and Courses in the Field Army and the Replacement Army 42
    Schools and Courses in the Field Army 43
    Schools and Courses in the Replacement Army 47
    Special Officer Courses in the Field Army and the Replacement Army 51
    Training of Potential Line Officer Candidates 55
    Training of Specialist Officer Candidates 60
    Training of Potential Officers for Motor Maintenance Troops 67
    Training of Potential NCOs in Schools and Courses 68

Chapter 4 THE WAFFEN-SS 71
  General 71
  Training High Command of the Waffen-SS 72
  Conduct and Procedure of Training 73
    Field Army 73
    Replacement Army 73
  Training in Schools and Courses of the Field and Replacement Waffen-SS 73
    Training of Officer Replacements in Troop Units and in Schools 73
  Summary 76

Chapter 5 SUMMARY 77

PART II GERMAN PARAMILITARY TRAINING

Chapter 6 SCOPE AND PURPOSE OF PREMILITARY TRAINING OF GERMAN YOUGH 81

Chapter 7 PREMILITARY TRAINING IN THE HITLER YOUTH 82
  General 82
  Organization of the Hitler Youth 83
  Organization, Structure, and Responsibilities of the Hitlerjugend and the Deutsches Jungvolk 83

CONTENTS

Page
Chapter 7 PREMILITARY TRAINING IN THE HITLER YOUTH (Cont'd) 82
  Organization and Structure 83
  Responsibilities 83
 Education and Training in the Deutsches Jungvolk (DJ) 83
  In Peacetime 83
  In Wartime 85
 Education and Training in the Hitlerjugend 85
  In Peacetime 85
  In Wartime 89
 Training of Hitler Youth Leaders 95
 Liaison Between the Hitler Youth and the Armed Forces 95
  In Peacetime 95
  In Wartime 96
 Employment of the Hitler Youth in the Armed Forces in Wartime 96
  War Employment 96
  Air Force and Navy Auxiliaries (Luftwaffen-und Marinehelfer) 96
  Army NCO Preparatory School 96
 Summary 97

Chapter 8 EDUCATION AND TRAINING IN THE GERMAN LABOR SERVICE 98
 General 98
 Organization of the German Labor Service (RAD) 98
 Duties of the German Labor Service 99
  In Peacetime 99
  In Wartime 99
 Military Education and Training 99
  Training During Employment with the Armed Forces on the Westwall 99
  Military Training (1940 to 1944) 100
  Military Training after 1944 101
 Summary 101

Chapter 9 MILITARY TRAINING OF THE STORM TROOPS (SA) 103
 General 103
 Military Training up to 1939 103
 Organization of the SA 104
 SA Defense Units 104
 Employment of the SA in Wartime 104
 Employment of the SA in the Zone of the Interior 105
 War Record of the SA Special Units 105
 Relationsship Between the SA and the Armed Forces 106
 Summary 106

Chapter 10 MILITARY TRAINING IN THE NATIONAL SOCIALIST MOTOR CORPS (NSKK) 107
 General 107
 Organization 107
 General NSKK Training 108
 Technical Training 108
 Premilitary and Postmilitary Training 108
 Summary 109

CONTENTS

Page
Chapter 11 THE NATIONAL SOCIALIST FLYING CORPS (NSFK) 110
 General 110
 Organization and Tasks 110
 Training 110
 Summary 111

Chapter 12 TRAINING IN THE VOLKSSTURM 112
 General 112
 Structure and Organization 112
 Military Training of the Volkssturm 113
 Summary 114

Chapter 13 THE TODT ORGANIZATION 115
 General 115
 Liaison with Armed Forces 115
 Training in the OT 115
 Summary 116

Table of Appendixes

Number	Description	Page
1	Organization of Branch 4 (Army Training Branch)	117
2	Suggestions for Training in Combat Positions	118
3	Machine Gun Training	120
4	Instructions for the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army	122
5	Directives for the Training in the Replacement Army	124
6	Service Regulation for the Training Film Branch	135
7	Service Directives to Inspectors of Arms and Services	137
8	Service Regulations for Senior Motor Transport Officers in the Army High Command	138
9	Service Regulations for the Inspector General or Panzer Troops	139
10	Service Directives for the Inspector of Training and Education	141
11	Reorganization for the Inspectors of Army Training and Education	143
12	Service Regulations for the Chiefs of Branches in the Army High Command	145
13	Order Issued by the Operations Section of Training Branch	148
14	Directives and Training Plans for Arms and Service Schools	157
15	Training Plan for a Division Combat School	161
16	Training of Company and Battery Commanders	207
17	Reports of the School for Company Commanders	210
18	Guidance for the Training and Employment of Snipers	212
19	Manuscript of Army Training Manual 240/2	213
20	Plan for Short-Term Training of Recalled, Deferred Personnel in a Rifle Company	215
21	National Socialist Guidance	228
22	Summary of Courses Held by Order of the Army High Command during the First Half of 1945	231
23	Guiding Principles for the Psychological Examination Boards of the Armed Forces and for the Psychological Laboratory of the Ministry of War	234
24	Terminology for Officer Candidates	235
25	Regular Army Officer Candidates Career in Peacetime	237
26	Career of Reserve Officer Candidates for Line Officers in Peacetime	238
27	Directives for the Indoctrination and Training of Officer Candidates in the Replacement Army	239
28	Stages of Training for Potential Regular Line Officers in Wartime (1939 to March 1942)	244
29	Stages of Training for Potential Regular Line Officers in Wartime (March 1942 to March 1945)	245
30	Stages of Training for Potential Reserve Line Officers in Wartime (1939 to March 1942)	246
31	Stages of Training for Potential Reserve Line Officers in Wartime (March 1942 to March 1945)	247
32	Survey of Officer Candidate Schools and Courses at Service Schools (1939-to 1941)	248
33	Survey of Officer Candidate Schools and Courses at Service Schools (1942 to 1945)	250
34	Officer Candidate Courses at Railway Engineer Schools	253
35	Potential Officers for Wartime Commissions	255
36	Stages of Training of Reserve Medical Officers	257
37	Stages of Training of Reserve Veterinary Officers, Graduate Veterinarians, and Students of Veterinary Medicine	258
38	Stages of Training for Reserve Specialist Engineer Officers, Graduate Engineers, and Students of German Postgraduate Technical Schools	259

Number	Description	Page
39	Conducting and Umpiring Field Problems	260
40	Training Plan for Training Companies for Special Assignment and NCO Training Units	264
41	Organization of Staff of the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army--1942	270-271
42	Chain of Command of Branch IV (Training) of Staff Commander of the Replacement Army--1945	272-273

PART I

GERMAN ARMY TRAINING
(1918 to 1945)

Chapter 1

INTRODUCTION

In the Imperial German Army, the infantry was regarded as all-important. This was expressly recognized by the directive of 29 May 1906, which declared: "The infantry is the chief arm." All other arms, even the artillery, were ancillary to the infantry. The infantry stood at the right (honor position) of the line while on parade; many imperial and royal princes joined the infantry as a matter of tradition. Nearly all corps commanders came from the infantry.

In the peace years between 1871 and 1914, no actual war experience influence the basic concept of infantry training. During these years, the principles of attack were cultivated, drilled, and driven home by every conceivable method of training. This has often been referred to as the "mania for attack" (Angriffshetze) of the German infantry. The artillery was expected to keep up with the quick tempo of the infantry attack, but, as this was not always possible, the infantry often made the attack without waiting for the artillery, and consequently suffered heavily. The victories of 1864, 1866, 1870, 1871, and also 1914 and 1915, were mainly won by infantry in the attack. Losses were severe, but the reputation of the infantry stood high.

Training in the principles of defense was not popular, and practice in defensive combat was not given to any great extent. Battle drill, including long marches and rifle training, was cultivated to a very high degree. The keystone of rifle training was the careful coaching of the individual rifleman in applied fire, including the concentration of fire on definite targets so that when the platoon fired, almost every shot was effective. Great importance was given to both bayonet fighting and assault operations in infantry training. Fighting in woods was to be avoided as far as possible, for it was feared that the discipline and control of the troops would suffer. Therefore, no training in forest fighting was given; exercises were normally carried out in open country. It was thought that an attack over ground with good cover was easy enough not to require practice. Attack by night was consciously neglected on the same grounds that caused fighting in the woods to be deprecated. Not until the years just preceding World War I did German views begin to change, as a result of the lessons drawn from the Russo-Japanese war. After 1912 recruits were made to go through 12 night exercises during their three months of basic training. Movement and regrouping of troops at night were assiduously practiced.

The whole training and mental attitude of the majority of the high officers of that time made them adopt an unfavorable attitude toward technical matters. The technical arms of the service were considered far less important than the infantry, engineers, and cavalry. Field artillery units were badly trained although military manuals contained extensive training instructions. For example, the field artillery was loath to adopt the practice of indirect fire from concealed positions. Heavy artillery, on the other hand, had to some extent attained a high standard of proficiency in indirect fire. Training methods in new means of communication were never given great consideration. In general, technical matters were neglected; morale, self-sacrifice, and honor were considered far more important.

Thus trained, the German Army, with the infantry as its main arm, entered World War I. In 1914 and 1915, it fought mainly on the basis of its peacetime principles, although these were modified by new experiences. Little need be said of the nature of trench warfare which characterized World War I. For the infantry, the entrenching tool became a weapon; and the rifle, contrary to the wishes of the High Command, was merely a subsidiary weapon. The infantry soldier came to rely on support from the artillery and from automatic weapons more and more, and steadily made less use of his rifle, in spite of many orders to the contrary. Thus the technical arms and services received more consideration, and their training gained added importance.

In 1918, an excellent infantry training manual was published. It was the basis for the last great offensive on the western front. This manual, based as it was on actual field experience, was considered so good that it remained current in the Hundred-thousand Army (Reichsheer) for many years after the last war.

Chapter 2

PEACETIME TRAINING

A. Hundred-thousand Army (1919 to 1934)

The Treaty of Versailles, 1919, strictly limited the size and functions of the Germany Army. The actual organization of this army, called the Hundred-thousand Army, fixed at an over-all maximum of 100,000 men, consisted of seven infantry divisions and three cavalry divisions. Armament, reserves, and period of service (NCOs and men, 12 years, officers, 25 years) were regulated. This army had no modern weapons such as tanks, aircraft, heavy artillery, and antitank weapons. The only schools permitted were one officer candidate school for each branch of the service. The German General Staff was disbanded.

The basic principles of the Hundred-thousand Army were that it was to remain nonpolitical, and it was to devote all its efforts to aiding in the establishment of a unified Germany. In other words, it was almost a police force. Each individual soldier was to be conscious only of his duties and responsibilities toward the state. While in service, all members of the Hundred-thousand Army lost the right to vote. The loyalty of the army was shown during the Hitler-Putsch in Munich in 1923. Although the Putsch was aided by General Ludendorff, a favorite with army personnel, it was put down by the Hundred-thousand Army.

During the first few years, the main object of training in the new army was almost exclusively the building up of complete units (divisions), ready for immediate service. This training goal became of paramount importance, ostensibly because the Reich felt itself endangered by internal upheaval and foreign attack. This policy was pursued with intensity and on a large scale. As a result, individual training suffered.

The first changes in training were brought about in 1923. The chief emphasis was shifted from the division to the lowest units -- company and battery.

Germany, at the time, considered the disarmament negotiations of the allied powers hopeless, and resolved to remedy her own weak military position in some form. The only possible way, without violating the letter of the Treaty of Versailles, seemed to be the creation of a 100,000-man army of leaders.

The Commander in Chief of the Hundred-thousand Army, General von Seeckt, disagreed with the system in the old Imperial Army in which the rifleman was only a rifleman, and an officer or noncommissioned officer performed only his own particular job. He thought it better to train all the troops in order to produce an army of capable leaders, so that, should a crisis arise, each individual soldier would be able to occupy a position as leader if the army were ever expanded beyond Treaty strength. In addition to this, he wanted the troops to be ready at all times to go into combat; the lieutenant as platoon commander, the NCO as section (squad) leader, and the rifleman as an efficient soldier. Organization and training had to work hand in hand in order to comply with these two requirements. This idea was improved continuously in the years that followed.

Realizing that a body of capable leaders can be created only by highly qualified officers, special attention was directed to careful training of officers and potential officers.

The general officers represented mainly the elite of the officers' corps of the old Imperial Army. As these general officers received considerable experience during the war, their further training was mainly left to themselves. Constant contact with each other gave them many opportunities to express and digest military matters. Other means of instruction were through observation of foreign armies and military reports.

The training of suitable field General Staff officers,* who were destined to be senior commanders in the army, took place in service commands in a manner similar to the former War Academy. All company grade officers of a certain age class were compelled to take the service command examinations. Preparation for this examination took about six months, and facilities for study were offered mainly through correspondence courses established by each service command. This preparation consisted of instruction in tactics, weapons, and general subjects. Officers who were interested in technical subjects were given the opportunity to pass the Service Command Technical Examination instead of the regular service command examination for tactical officers. The technical examination included, in addition to the compulsory subjects for all officers, subjects of a technical nature and mathematics.

After having passed successfully the Service Command Examination, the tactical officers were detailed to a three-year training course in the service commands and upon termination of this training, qualified for nomination to field General Staff officer. The courses were nothing other than General Staff training. In 1935, with the reestablishment of the War Academy in Berlin, the courses were dropped by the service commands and continued, under centralized control, at the War Academy. Technical officers were assigned to a technical university to complete their engineering studies, and, after receiving their degree, were given an assignment for duty with the army ordnance office.

Because the service command examinations were compulsory, the efficiency level of the junior officer corps, with respect to military and general knowledge, was considerably raised.

The training of all line officers was intensified by frequent tactical exercises without troops, map exercises, tactical walks, and instructions on the aims and methods of training, as well as lectures on subjects of general knowledge. Courses at special schools of the army, and lectures within the officers' corps, together with newly compiled service regulations based on the war experiences of the last war, offered additional training material for all officers.

Training orders, issued yearly by the army High Command and by the service commands, were transformed into training plans for the units by the units themselves. These training orders were worked out into minute details, and their proper execution was supervised by officers of the unit.

Instruction of potential officers started as early as 1921, and was carried out in accordance with the high aims of training which the army had set itself. Covering a period of four years, the training qualified the potential officer to become a full assistant to the battalion commander. After six months of basic training in the training units of his own regiment, the officer candidate participated in the normal training exercises of a battalion for one year. Thus he underwent practically a complete training cycle as an enlisted man. In this manner, the potential officer was given a thorough insight into the varied functions of a unit, and could study the reaction to all orders and disciplinary matters by the troops.

During all this time, the potential officer was not granted any special favors.

---

*A name given officers who carried out General Staff officer assignments with the troops. This was permitted by allied military authorities although a General Staff was prohibited.

He had to go through all service routines, including fatigue duties. This was required of all junior officers in the officers' corps. The members were expected to understand the mentality of the enlisted man, and to be in a position to judge from their own experiences how actions by leaders affected men.

Another point of importance was that the career of an officer was open to anyone in the army. Military ability, character, and education were the only criteria in the selection of future officers. Soldiers whose formal education was considered inadequate, but who showed promise, were given special courses so that they were able to pass the required examinations. This placed them on the same level with those potential officers who had received an adequate formal education.

Upon completion of one year of service in a fully trained battalion, the officer candidate was required to take an examination given by a special commission set up for the relevant service command. Having passed this examination, the potential officer received his appointment to officer candidate school.

Officer candidates of all arms and services of the army then received a ten-month assignment to a course at an infantry school. This was an essential measure based on the realization that all officers of any army must have a complete knowledge of the principal arm -- the infantry. In wartime, all other arms and services were to be regarded merely as support for the infantry and employed accordingly.

Training at the infantry school consisted primarily in commanding platoons, companies, and battalions, together with their supporting weapons. In this respect, all phases and types of combat were studied. In addition, important general subjects were taught to enlarge the education of the officer candidates in accordance with the military tradition. The officer candidate had to realize that as a prospective officer he would have to assume increased responsibilities. His principal responsibility would be unselfish care for his men. Even though their military qualifications might be excellent, officer candidates who showed an obvious lack of character requirements had no chance for promotion to officer rank. (Candidates were promoted to the officer rank, not commissioned.) If rejected, the potential candidate returned to his original unit and continued his 12 years of service as an NCO. Those candidates who enlisted originally as potential officer candidates, could request a discharge.

Training at the infantry school was completed with the officer candidate examination. After the potential candidates had passed their examination, they were promoted to officer candidates and subsequently returned to their regiments. After a short period of active duty with his regiment, in which the officer candidate had to prove his leadership qualities for the first time, he was detailed to a course at his arm or service school. This course lasted 10 months. Here he learned combat methods on a battalion and regiment level and how to command such units. In addition to his regular training, he received specialized instructions so that he could be employed as an instructor and assistant to his commander upon his return to his regiment.

This training terminated with the final officer examination. Successful completion of this resulted in promotion to advanced officer candidate. After a training period of three and one-half to four years, the candidate was promoted to officer, if his application for a commission had been approved by the officers of his regiment. These officers formed a selection board which was directed by the regimental commander. The promotion of the advanced officer candidate concerned could be refused by any officer who could produce sufficient reason for doing so.

The development and training of NCOs was given great consideration, although no rigid program existed. All enlisted personnel could become NCOs. The company commander chose from among his own personnel any soldier who showed exceptional prospect as a possible leader. A minimum service of four years was required before selection could take place. These NCO candidates were normally assigned to a NCO training company within the regiment. Here they underwent NCO training for a period of six months. The company was generally commanded by the most capable officer available. The candidate, upon completion of the course, returned to his original company. Promotion to the NCO corps now depended upon vacancies in the organization of the company, length of service, and ability.

In 1926, the training of NCOs and men was reorganized. In addition to maintaining the army's striking power, the purpose of training was to produce as many NCOs as possible. All corporals had to be qualified to lead a platoon. The sergeants were trained to take the place of company commanders. Qualified men were trained to lead a section. In an army consisting of only 100,000 men enlisted for 12 years service, with few prospects of promotion for the individual, and without modern weapons, the danger of each individual eventually becoming stale was a constant worry. To give the men more variety in their service routine, plans were made to classify and to the soldiers according to their qualifications. This plan was carried out forcefully. All companies were divided into various efficiency classes and each one was trained according to a special schedule. In general, the following classes were established:

Class for sergeants: training of company commanders
Class for corporals: training of platoon leaders
Class for potential NCOs: training of section leaders
First class for enlisted personnel: training of efficient individual combat soldiers
Second class for enlisted personnel (men with one to two years of service): training depending on the knowledge acquired in basic training of valuable individual fighters and selection of qualified potential NCOs
Class for recruits: basic training (only in regiments without training units)

In addition, specialist classes were established when necessary for NCO technicians, supply technicians, etc. Within these classes, training was conducted on various levels and supervised at all times by officers.

In addition to this military training, the general education of NCOs was expanded. Company commanders sought every opportunity to be with their NCOs when off duty as it was considered important for officers to become thoroughly acquainted with their NCOs.

Principal training subjects, during this period, were terrain evaluation for all types of warfare, training in firing, study of ballistics, close order drill, organization of the army, sports, and specialist training.

Upon completion of class and of individual training, formation training began. During this period, training within the squad was emphasized particularly. Various types of warfare were taught by way of demonstration exercises which were generally performed beforehand at a sand table under the guidance of an instructor. The aim of this training was to acquaint the rifleman with his particular duties. An individual fighter was trained to think and act independently within his squad in all phases of combat.

Squad training was completed with an inspection by the commanding officer. It was considered successful if the squad leader was able to employ his squad and all supporting heavy weapons properly in the various phases of combat. Weapons which were forbidden for the Hundred-thousand Army in accordance with the Treaty of Versailles were frequently represented by flags. It was important to replace instinctive actions by squad leaders and riflemen with clear estimates of the situation, exact orders, and the correct execution of orders. Units and instructors were judged according to their training standard.

Squad training was followed by platoon training. This training lasted only a short time, as it was believed that a company which had had sufficient squad training would be able to fight in platoons without additional training.

After the company was transferred to a troop training area, it was trained in firing with live ammunition; there, squad, platoon, and company exercises took place. Exercises on higher levels were established for the training of NCOs, officers, and staffs.

The training year was completed with the autumn maneuvers in open country. These maneuvers were particularly intended to train the higher headquarters, test new tactical principles, and give a better understanding of field tactics to all concerned. The duties of umpires were particularly emphasized.*

Each exercise and training period was completed with an inspection and an open discussion. Deficiencies in training, as well as good performances, were discussed frankly in the presence of the men.

At the end of each training period, a critical summary based on the knowledge gained by the inspections was published by the Commander in Chief of the Army, and distributed among all organizations concerned. This critique showed up all deficiencies of training methods, and suggested appropriate measures for their correction. These suggestions formed the basis for training policies during the following year.

After Hitler became Chancellor of the German Reich in 1933, a gradual re-arming of the Hundred-thousand Army was undertaken.

The problem now was how rapidly and how extensively the enlargement of the army could be carried out in spite of insufficiently trained reserves.

To solve this problem, an experiment was made whereby all recruits of the year 1933 were assigned, upon enlistment, to a company of a fully trained battalion. To complete and further this experiment, one regiment of a division assigned its recruits to a rifle company, the second regiment assigned its recruits to a machine gun company, while the third regiment assigned its recruits to the infantry gun company. This meant that a recruit, instead of being assigned to a training company of a regiment for basic training as was the normal procedure, went directly to a company for approximately three weeks of special experimental training. Upon completion of the experimental training, the recruits were returned to the training company to begin their normal recruit training.

During this three-week period, only such subjects were taught as would enable a soldier to become sufficiently trained for combat, if that were necessary, but he would be trained only in a particular branch.

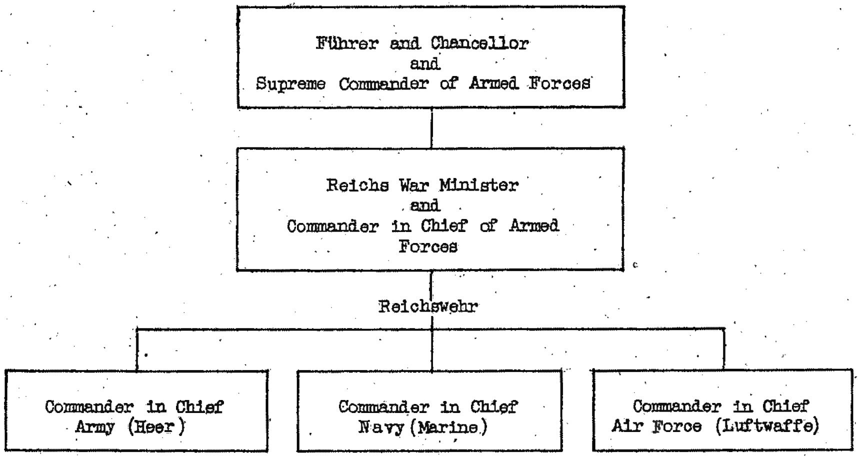
The recruits were assigned to squads containing two or three trained soldiers and commanded by a capable junior NCO. Field training and range firing comprised the main part of the syllabus. Phases of field training were first demonstrated by an instruction unit, after which they were carried out by squads of recruits. Close order drill was entirely omitted. During this training period, one or two exercises on platoon and company level were included to acquaint the recruits with fire and movement during field training. The result of this experiment proved conclusively that the Hundred-thousand Army could be tripled in a period of one to one and one-half months. The employment of such an army for actual combat was considered impossible as the training period was not sufficient, and the NCOs and trained men required to complete new formations were not available. This led to an increased training of potential NCOs and specialists during the remainder of 1933 and 1934.

---

*For details on umpiring, see appendix 39.

B. Army (1934 to 1939)

In the autumn of 1934, after the death of President von Hindenburg, Hitler, as Führer and Chancellor of the German Reich, automatically assumed command of all armed forces in Germany. The chain of command at this time was briefly as follows:



Immediately after assuming the position of Supreme Commander of the Armed Forces, Hitler started political preparations for the reconstruction of the Reichswehr. As far as this reconstruction affected the Hundred-thousand Army, it was decided that the early system of training an army of leaders had proved very successful.

The first step was to increase the officer and NCO corps. Simultaneously, a large number of additional specialists were needed to carry out duties in newly-formed units. These specialists included first sergeants, stable sergeants, and accountants, as well as pay and supply NCOs. At the same time, the construction of new barracks and training areas was begun, and the development of modern weapons was increased. To insure uniformity of training, new pamphlets and instructional manuals were published and issued in large quantities.

To provide the necessary personnel for the intended increase of the army, volunteers in 1934, for the first time, were enlisted for a period of one year instead of 12 years. In the autumn of the same year, the number of divisions of the army was doubled by dividing all existing larger units. Most of these newly created units, however, could not be brought up to full strength at this time, as the yearly intake of recruits was not increased. In general, infantry regiments consisted of only two battalions. The divisions and regiments were not numbered but were allotted the names of their garrison town for identification. From 1934 to 1937, the former Hundred-thousand Army, which consisted of seven infantry and three cavalry divisions, was increased to an army (Heer) of 12 army corps, each organized on a basis of three divisions, plus additional corresponding corps troops. This was done by simply creating three units from each of the existing units. Each division headquarters created the nucleus for three such headquarters; each regiment was subdivided to form three regiments and each battalion, three new battalions. In 1935, when the increase came into effect, the divisions and regiments of this new army were numbered for identification, since the former method of identifying units according to their garrison town was no longer considered practical.

The cadre for this new army was recruited from the already existing army formations and from units of the State Police (Landes-polizei). The latter consisted of 150,000 men as authorized by the Versailles Treaty. Personnel enlisted for a period of 12 years, and the force was organized similar to infantry units although they received no field training. They were established for protection against internal unrest.

In order to get sufficient personnel to bring these new formations up to strength, compulsory service for one year was introduced in 1935. This period was increased to two years in 1936, and affected persons from 19 to 24 years of age primarily. Older age groups were called up for a training period of only eight weeks.

The officer corps of the former Hundred-thousand Army was insufficient for the increased army. Consequently, officers from the State Police were transferred to the army, and the younger officer age group of World War I was recalled to active service. Special three-week courses were established for recalled officers who had been out of the army since the end of World War I. These courses were conducted for officers of all arms and services simultaneously, and were intended primarily to judge and assess the value of these officers. After this period, the officers were assigned to a unit for a probationary period of three months. Upon recommendation from the regimental commander to the army Personnel Office, these officers were officially reactivated as Regular Army officers with the rank of captain. At the same time, several hundred Regular Army NCOs with long service and exceptional ability were automatically promoted to second lieutenants.

With the two-year compulsory service came a new system of training for all recruits. The soldiers first received a six-month period of basic training followed by a second six-month period of squad, platoon, and company training. This second period included field exercises and maneuvers complete with live ammunition and supporting arms. The second year was utilized for advance training in which potential NCOs were used as assistant instructors or squad commanders. The aim of training was to produce proficient individual fighters and create a large body of potential reserve NCOs and officers. This training was carried out in the newly created regiments and conducted by officers and NCOs of the pre-1935 army. Training of the older age groups, which were recruited for eight weeks, was carried out in specially created training units. One such unit was created in practically every infantry and artillery regiment. The training excluded all field training and squad or platoon training, and was primarily intended to acquaint personnel of the older age classes with their weapons and with the army in general.

Hand in hand with the creation of new units went the improvement and enlargement of existing schools and the creation of new schools.*

---

*Special duties of the War Academy, special arm and service schools, NCO schools, and ordnance schools will be discussed in a later chapter.

The War Academy was re-established in 1935 to include the former courses conducted for the training of staff officers. Special arm and service schools for officer candidates, schools for NCOs, as well as preparatory schools for potential NCOs, were opened. Armorer-artificer and ordnance schools were introduced, and such army technical schools and army trade schools as already existed were enlarged and improved.

Among the most important of these schools were the preparatory schools for NCOs. At these schools, volunteers between the ages of 12 and 14 were given a premilitary education by Regular Army officers and NCOs. In addition to this, formal education was given by civilian teachers provided by the army. These schools, controlled by the Inspector of Training and Education in the army, were conducted over a period of three years. Upon graduation, many of the students joined the army as potential NCOs but were given no special advancement as compared to the normal flow of recruits. These schools were dissolved in 1942-43 when the Hitler Youth took over the functions of such schools.

In the Hundred-thousand Army, numerous rehabilitation schools were established to prepare the 12 year soldiers for a civilian occupation after their period of service. These schools were continued and enlarged during the years of compulsory service. In 1939, they were dissolved except for such schools as were needed to rehabilitate blinded and otherwise disabled veterans. Every soldier, prior to discharge, was compelled to attend one of these schools. In this way all personnel were assured of having an occupation upon leaving the Army; at the same time it was a valuable inducement for recruitment in prewar times. Young men who were financially unable to attend special schools as civilians would enlist for 12 years and emerge a fully qualified civilian official, tradesman, or technician.* Each garrison had two established trade schools for administration and for economics. The administration courses were given during the last four years of service and qualified the soldier upon graduation for a senior civil service position. The courses on economics were conducted during the last two years of service only, and qualified the soldier for a junior civil service position.

At the same time, each service command conducted one army trade school which a soldier could attend during this twelfth year of service. At these schools, students could learn to be locksmiths, tailors, shoemakers, electricians, or carpenters. The final examinations qualified the soldier as either a master or assistant craftsman in whatever trade he studied.

An Armed Forces Survey School was established in Berlin to teach graduates surveying and map making. A technical course was established at the Army Motorization School in Wünsdorf. At this course, students were trained to become government officials in the motor transport service.

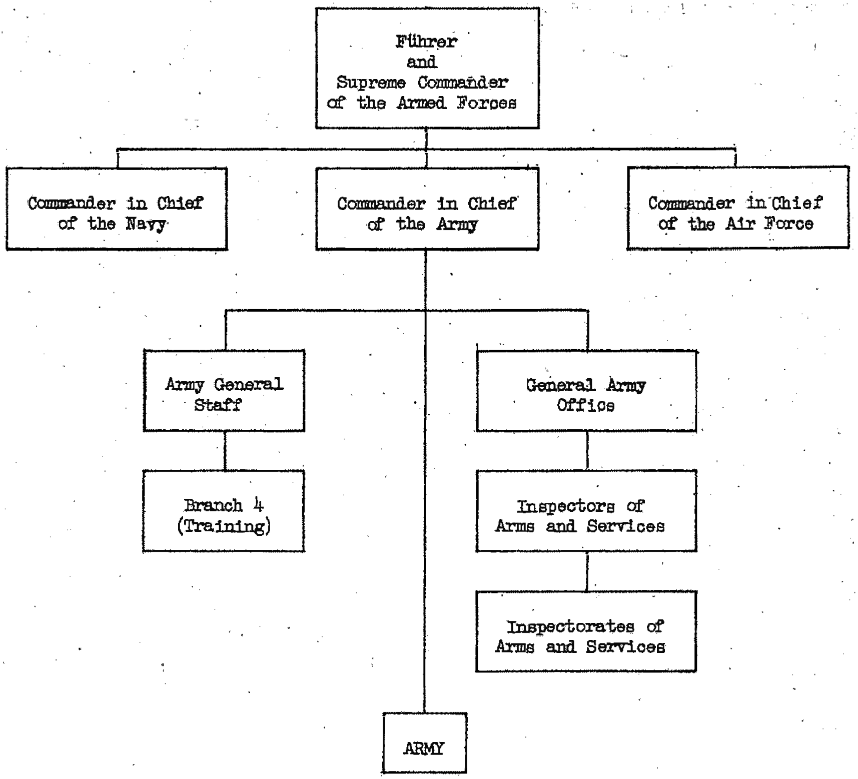
For soldiers who were interested in an outdoor trade, the army created an Army Forestry School and an Army Agricultural School. In order to attend the forestry school, students were required to have completed two years at a civilian forestry school before entering the army. Some units, especially rifle battalions, established similar forestry schools of their own.

Soldiers who had served their 12 year period and had been discharged as qualified tradesmen, were given preference in civilian jobs. The discharged soldiers were also given a loan in the event they desired to start their own business.

---

*These schools were conducted within the last four years of service. Soldiers attended these schools in addition to their normal military training, except for the last year when military duty was discontinued and the soldier attended the school only.

In 1938, the Reich War Minister, von Blomberg, was dismissed from office, and the office of Commander in Chief of the Armed Forces was disbanded. Hitler, as Supreme Commander of the Armed Forces, now controlled the Commanders in Chief of the Army, Navy, and Air Force directly. The organization of the High Command was now as follows:



The Army General Staff realized at this time that an army's striking power depended on thorough training along uniform lines. Therefore, particular attention was paid to this training. Even during wartime it maintained control over all training matters in Branch 4 (Training).* Branch 4 compiled, for the Army General Staff, all necessary orders and service regulations to service commands which were responsible for their proper execution. These orders and regulations were issued by the Army General Staff.

---

*For organization and duties of Branch 4 (Army Training Branch), see appendix 1.

All training problems of the various arms and services were worked out by appropriate departments of the General Army Office. These departments, known as Inspectorates of Arms and Services, were controlled by the Inspectors of Arms and Services. At the beginning of war, the Inspector of Arms and Services continued to function, but the inspectors of the four main arms (infantry, artillery, engineers, chemical warfare) were elevated to Chiefs of Arms and Services and were retained as aides by the Army General Staff.

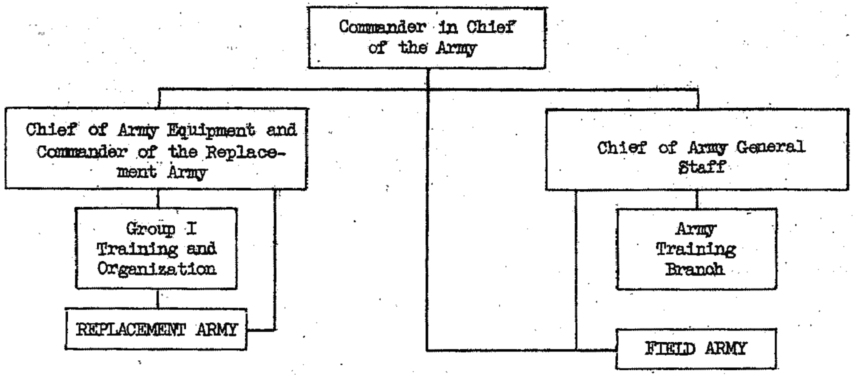
Chapter 3

WARTIME TRAINING

A. Organization of German Army High Command in Regard to Training (1939 to 1945)

With the outbreak of the war in 1939, the army was split up into a Field Army and a Replacement Army. Both were under the Commander in Chief of the Army, General von Brauchitsch, 1938-1941, followed by Adolf Hitler

Relative positions of the higher offices governing the training in both the Replacement Army and the Field Army are as follows:


Commander in Chief of the Army
Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army
Chief of Army General Staff
Group I Training and Organization
Army Training Branch
REPLACEMENT ARMY
FIELD ARMY

1. Field Army

The training in the Field Army was primarily an intensification of unit training emphasizing use of weapons and various methods of combat. In addition, emphasis was laid on short-term preliminary and advanced training of officers, NCOs, and specialists, with consideration for the combat conditions existing in the particular theaters of operations concerned.

a. The Training Branch of the Army General Staff

All fundamental training problems for the entire army (Field Army and Replacement Army) were worked out by the Training Branch of the General Staff of the Army.* In particular, this branch was responsible for all matters concerning training in the Field Army, and compiled information and instruction in training manuals for cooperation between the arms. These manuals were primarily based on the collection and evaluation of practical experience gained at the fronts. The essential thing was to send these experiences to the troops as speedily as possible. The usual means of transmission was instructional pamphlets, training hints, illustrated weapon pamphlets, and film and lantern-slide lectures.** These experiences were compiled also with a very definite view to the training of replacements. They were currently transmitted to the Commander in Chief of the Replacement Army (General Fromm, 1939-1944)

---

*For organization of the Training Branch of the General Staff, see appendix 1.

**For example, see appendix 2.

In addition to these duties, Branch 4, in conjunction with the Army Personnel Office (Personal Amt), had charge of the further training of General Staff officers as well as training in the principal arms and services (Waffenausbildung) of potential General Staff officers. This training took place in the units and at the arms and service schools of both the Field Army and the Replacement Army. All necessary orders were issued by the Commander in Chief of the Army (after 1941, through the Chief of the Army General Staff) to all higher headquarters of the Field Army, who were responsible for their execution. These headquarters not only distributed the training orders, pamphlets, etc., but also interpreted and applied them according to local conditions.

b. Chiefs of Arms and Services

In addition to the Training Branch of the Army General Staff, the Commander in Chief of the Army (after 1941, the Chief of the General Staff, at that time General Halder) had at his disposal four Chiefs of Arms and Services to assist him in dealing with these separate branches of the service (infantry, artillery, engineers, chemical warfare). It was their duty to evaluate the individual experiences gained in their own branches, and to acquaint their respective troops with their findings.

Necessary orders, supplements, and regulations* were issued in close cooperation with the Training Branch of the Army General Staff.

The Chiefs of Arms and Services could also call upon their respective branches of the General Army Office of the Commander of the Replacement Army for cooperation and assistance.

In addition, the individual arms and services issued monthly information bulletins with the following aims:

To instruct the troops in the views and opinions of their branches
To convey reports of actual battle experiences to the troops as speedily as possible
To put forward suggestions for training before regulations and pamphlets were published or to supplement the latter
To keep the units informed about new enemy weapons and methods of combat.

Until 1944, the Chiefs of Arms and Services had directive authority only over the Field Army and not over the Replacement Army.

2. Replacement Army

In contrast to the training of the Field Army, the Replacement Army was primarily concerned with the basic training of all replacement troops for the Field Army. This included training of potential officers, NCOs, and specialists, and the conducting of refresher courses for convalescent and redrafted personnel. The Replacement Army also cooperated in the training of organizations outside the army (see part II)

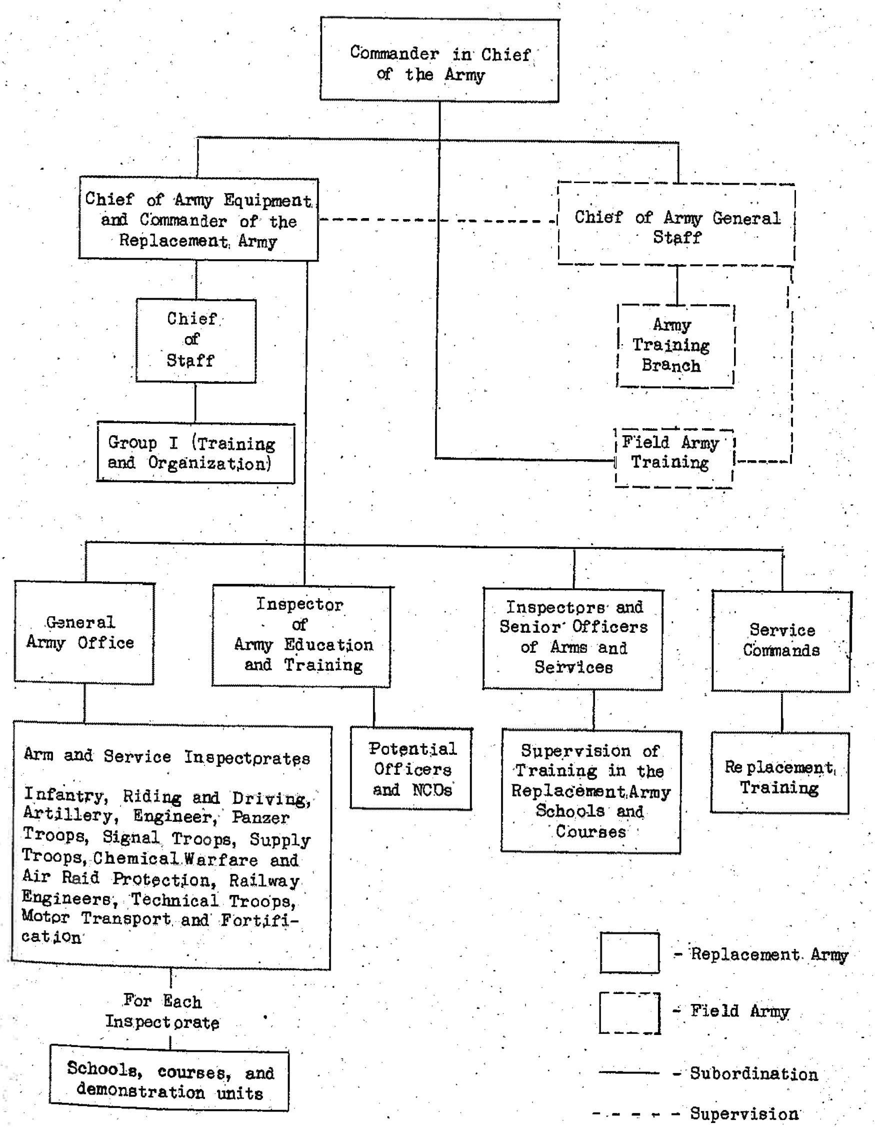
The Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army** controlled and supervised all activities of the Replacement Army. He was directly responsible to the Commander in Chief of the Army. His function was mainly to supply the Field

---

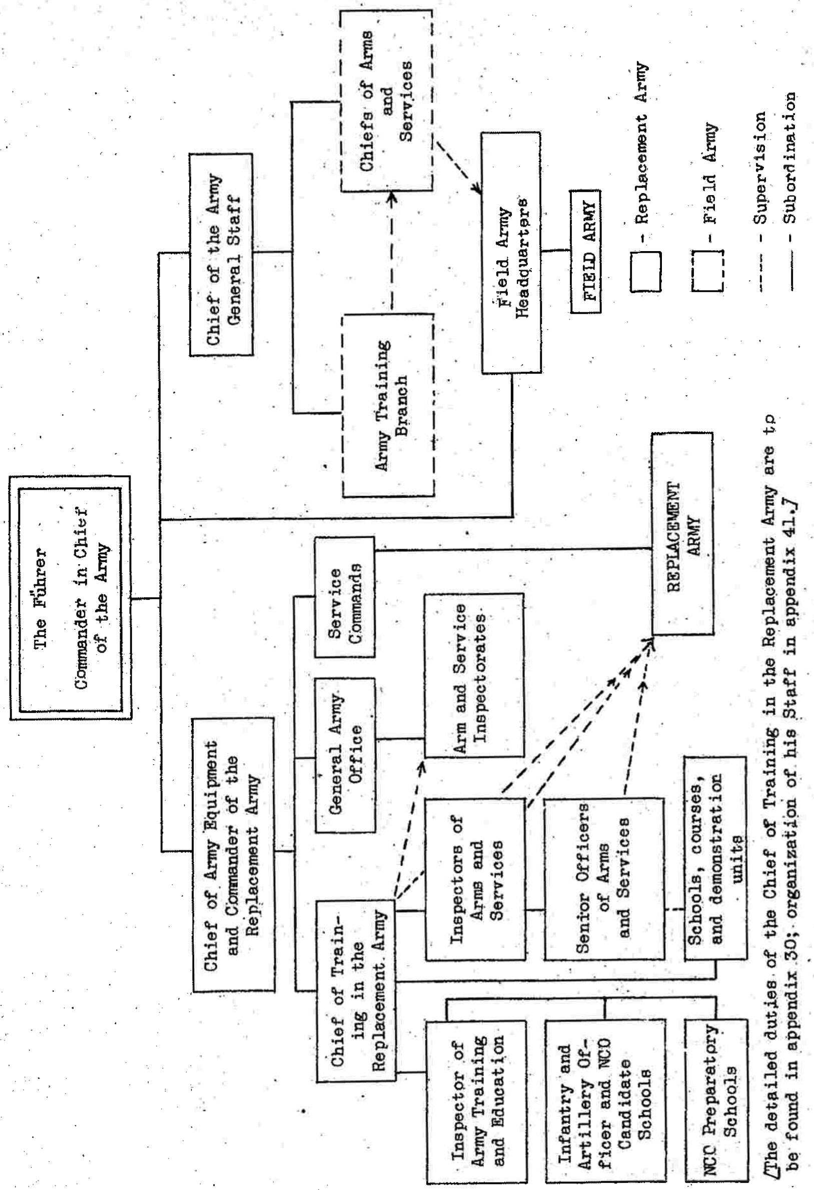
*For examples of these regulations, see appendix 3.

**Will be referred to as Commander of the Replacement Army.

ORGANIZATION OF TRAINING IN THE REPLACEMENT ARMY, 1939


Commander in Chief of the Army
Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army
Chief of Army General Staff
Chief of Staff
Army Training Branch
Group I (Training and Organization)
Field Army Training
General Army Office
Inspector of Army Education and Training
Inspectors and Senior Officers of Arms and Services
Service Commands
Arm and Service Inspectorates
Infantry, Riding and Driving, Artillery, Engineer, Panzer Troops, Signal Troops, Supply Troops, Chemical Warfare and Air Raid Protection, Railway Engineers, Technical Troops, Motor Transport and Fortification
Potential Officers and NCOs
Supervision of Training in the Replacement Army Schools and Courses
Replacement Training
For Each Inspectorate
Schools, courses, and demonstration units
- Replacement Army
- Field Army
- Subordination
- Supervision

ORGANIZATION OF TRAINING IN THE REPLACEMENT ARMY, 1942


The Führer
Commander in Chief of the Army
Chief of the Army General Staff
Chiefs of Arms and Services
Army Training Branch
Field Army Headquarters
FIELD ARMY
REPLACEMENT ARMY
Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army
General Army Office
Service Commands
Arm and Service Inspectorates
Chief of Training in the Replacement Army
Inspectors of Arms and Services
Senior Officers of Arms and Services
Schools, courses, and demonstration units
Inspector of Army Training and Education
Infantry and Artillery Officer and NCO Candidate Schools
NCO Preparatory Schools
- Replacement Army
- Field Army
- Supervision
- Subordination

[The detailed duties of the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army are to be found in appendix 30; organization of his Staff in appendix 41.]

Army with all its requirements of war material and trained personnel. All training matters in the Replacement Army were guided by Group I (Training and Organization) on the staff of the Commander of the Replacement Army.

The control exercised by Group I was by no means rigid. An interchange of ideas among subordinates determined the general policy of training. This flexible training organization, headed by two officers and working only part time on training projects, was adequate in the first part of the war when losses were slight and intervals between the various campaigns were long.

The invasion of Russia, however, necessitated changes, since a German victory was indefinitely postponed. The demands for trained reserves grew tremendously, new weapons were introduced, and thus it became clear that training in the Replacement Army required special attention and strict control. (For additional information on this subject see the letter of the Commander of the Replacement Army to the Chief of the Army General Staff at the end of chapter V.) The manifold changes in organization during the course of the war were as follows:

a. Chief of Training in the Replacement Army

The first step toward central coordination of training was made by the establishment of the post of Chief of Training in the Replacement Army* in the autumn of 1942.

The main functions of the Chief of Training were to incorporate actual battle experiences of the individual branches into the training of the Replacement Army; to control training of officer and NCO replacements, and insure the uniformity of training in the Replacement Army. He obtained the necessary material from constant and close contact with the Training Branch of the Army General Staff, and by sifting the inspection reports and field experience reports of the Field Army and the Replacement Army. The inspection reports were compiled by chiefs, inspectors, and senior officers of the arms and services. Field experience reports were regularly submitted by the field and replacement units. Furthermore, the Field Army submitted monthly situation reports which were also utilized by the Chief of Training.

The demands of the Field Army, based on new experiences, were outlined in orders and directives issued for the arms and services concerned, and served as a guide for the training of replacements.**

These training requirements were further outlined in pamphlets, instruction books, training films, and lantern slide lectures. The main pamphlets issued were "Directives for the Training in the Replacement Army" which were compiled with the cooperation of the Arms and Service Branches of the General Army Office, and the semiannual "Training Comments of the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army".

By 1942, the requirements of the fronts seriously curtailed the weapons, ammunition, and equipment available to the Replacement Army. Therefore, one of the main functions of the Chief of Training was to indicate to the Replacement Army ways and means of carrying on its training, even with these shortages, by organizing the training in ways that would compensate for weapon and equipment shortages through improvisation.

The Chief of Training also made considerable changes in the physical training program. Physical training, which had hitherto been of a very high standard, took on a new aspect. This phase of training was carried out only to the degree absolutely necessary for preparing for combat duty or to provide some recreation.

---

*For detailed organization, see appendix 4.

**For example of training directive, see appendix 5.

The instructional film section, transferred from the Training Branch of the Army General Staff to the Chief of Training, also began to function according to a new policy. Since instructional films were to supplement practical training, only personnel who had served with particular distinction in front-line combat duty were given parts in instructional films.* The Field Army and Replacement Army were kept continuously informed of the newest films produced.

The time allowed for training was extremely short. In general, it was possible to deal with each of the various subjects only once. Experience revealed the necessity for a reference book for the recruit, which he could use to review what he had been taught. It was found, however, that all peacetime training manuals on the subject were out of date. Therefore, the Chief of Training compiled a new instruction manual which included up-to-date information. This manual, subdivided according to the various branches of the service, had been finished in outline by the time of the capitulation, but had not been printed.

Besides the normal replacement training, an additional duty of the Chief of Training was to train all newly formed units which were under the command of the Commander in Chief of the Replacement Army. These newly formed units (Volksgrenadier Divisions, Italian Divisions, Hungarian Divisions, and depleted divisions) were trained in recruit or unit training formations in the Replacement Army. To complete this special training and not interrupt the regular replacement training system, special training staffs were established by the Chief of Training. These staffs, which consisted of two or three officers and three or four clerks, were either delegated to the service command or appointed from the existing personnel in the service command. They strictly supervised the training schedule and ascertained that all new training methods and new equipment were incorporated.

Foreign units were formed into their own divisions. They were trained by German personnel, along German lines with German weapons. This German personnel was part of a cadre designed to carry out these tasks. All relevant training manuals, pamphlets, etc. were translated under the direction of the Chief of Training by a translation branch which was directly responsible to the Commander in Chief of the Replacement Army. In addition, the Chief of Training was required to cooperate in the premilitary training of German Labor Service (Reichsarbeitsdienst).

Only Regular Army officers were employed on the staff of the Chief of Training; these were officers who had proved themselves competent leaders in training and in action. With the exception of two General Staff officers, they were drawn from the various arms and services. Their activity, however, was not restricted to their respective arm or service, but took in the problems of all arms or services in the sphere of training with which they were charged. By having officers of all arms and services on one staff, it was possible for an officer to find competent advice on other service branches without going outside his staff or office.

b. Inspectors and Senior Officers of Arms and Services (Waffeninspekteure - Höhere Waffenoffiziere)

Inspectors of Arms and Services had to supervise, on behalf of the Chief of Training, the uniform training in the replacement and training units, as well as the schools and courses in their respective branches of the Replacement Army.**

---

*For details concerning the functions of the instructional film section, see appendix 6.

**For regulations governing inspectors, see appendix 7.

Senior officers had the same functions as the inspectors. They had charge of three or four service commands. As a rule, they had seen active service. Inspectors had usually served as division commanders, and senior officers as regiment commanders, but both possessed special training experience. In these positions, however, they had no authority over field units.

As there was no Inspector for Motor Transport Service, the Senior Motor Transport Officer assumed his duties, insofar as training was concerned in the Replacement Army. In this respect, he, too, came directly under the Chief of Training.*

c. Arm and Service Inspectorates (Waffenabteilungen) of the General Army Office (Allgemeines Heeresamt - AHA)

The various inspectorates of the General Army Office were under the direction of the Chief of Training for all questions of training pertaining to their own branch. For all other matters, they came directly under the General Army Office. For example, they were expected to cooperate closely with the inspectors concerned.

The establishment of the post of Chief of Training in the Replacement Army brought a definite improvement in training efficiency in the Replacement Army. This did not, however, solve the problem of the armored command, which was considered the decisive weapon of the war by Hitler and some of the General Staff officers. Therefore, the position of Inspector General of Panzer Troops was created in the spring of 1943.

The latter was responsible for the training of units, schools, and courses for armored troops in the Field Army and Replacement Army.**

d. Inspector of Army Training and Education (later, the Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs in the army)

The Inspector of Army Training and Education*** supervised and controlled the training of potential officers and NCOs in the army, and was directly subordinate to the Chief of Training. Because of a considerable loss of officers and NCOs at the front, the education and training of new leaders became increasingly important. Supply no longer satisfied the demand. In addition, the Reserve officers and NCOs frequently did not meet the field requirements because of lack of uniform training and shortage of weapons in the Replacement Army. Therefore, it became necessary to create an organization to remedy these deficiencies; to recruit new officers and NCOs before they were inducted into the army as well as from the ranks, and later to train them according to the requirements of the Field Army. This was brought about by transforming the office of the Inspector of Army Training and Education into the office of the Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs in the spring of 1944.**** Because of the great importance of his work, this Inspector General was placed under the immediate command of the Commander in Chief of the Replacement Army. In training matters, he was still subordinate to the Chief of Training.

The Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs was responsible for all officer candidate and NCO schools, as well as all officer candidate courses at the

---

*For regulations governing the Senior Motor Transport Officer, see appendix 8.

**For general duties of the Inspector General of Panzer Troops, see appendix 9.

***For regulations governing the Inspector of Training and Education in the army see appendix 10.

****For regulations covering reorganization, see appendix 11.

PROPERTY OF U. S. ARMY

various branch schools. He directed their education and training by issuing relevant orders and directives.

e. Service Commands

Within their service commands, the commanders were responsible to the Commander in Chief of the Replacement Army for the standard of training in their replacement and training centers and courses. All matters of training were handled by the training section of the staff of the commanding general of the service command. In some service commands, a general officer was appointed from the service command officer pool, who supervised the uniform training of replacements for duty in the field on behalf of the Wehrkreis commander.

3. Reorganization in the German High Command Affecting Both the Field Army and the Replacement Army.

As the war progressed, the German General Staff came to the conclusion that the replacement system in the Replacement Army was not living up to the standards required by the Field Army. With this in mind, the chiefs of arms and services who normally controlled training in the Field Army only, were also delegated control and supervision over the training activities in the Replacement Army. Through this measure, it was intended to simplify the method of transmitting experiences gained at the fronts directly to the replacement troops and to guarantee a more uniform training system.*

As a result of this measure, the office of Chief of Training in the Replacement Army seemed to be no longer necessary. This staff was dissolved on 1 February 1945, and such functions as remained were again taken over by the staff of the Commander of the Replacement Army (Chef H Ruest u B d E/Abt. IV Ausb).

For all practical purposes, this innovation never came into effect, since, after March 1945, the activity of replacement and training units and of schools and courses in the Replacement Army was considerably hampered by a continuous withdrawal of the Field Army to the home theater. These replacement and training units, schools, and courses gradually came under the control of the Field Army, either ~~as~~ divisions or individual combat units. Because of the pressure of circumstances, the Field Army had to send them to the front without previous unit combat training, with insufficient training in individual combat, and with inferior equipment.

B. Conduct and Procedure of Training

1. Field Army

a. General

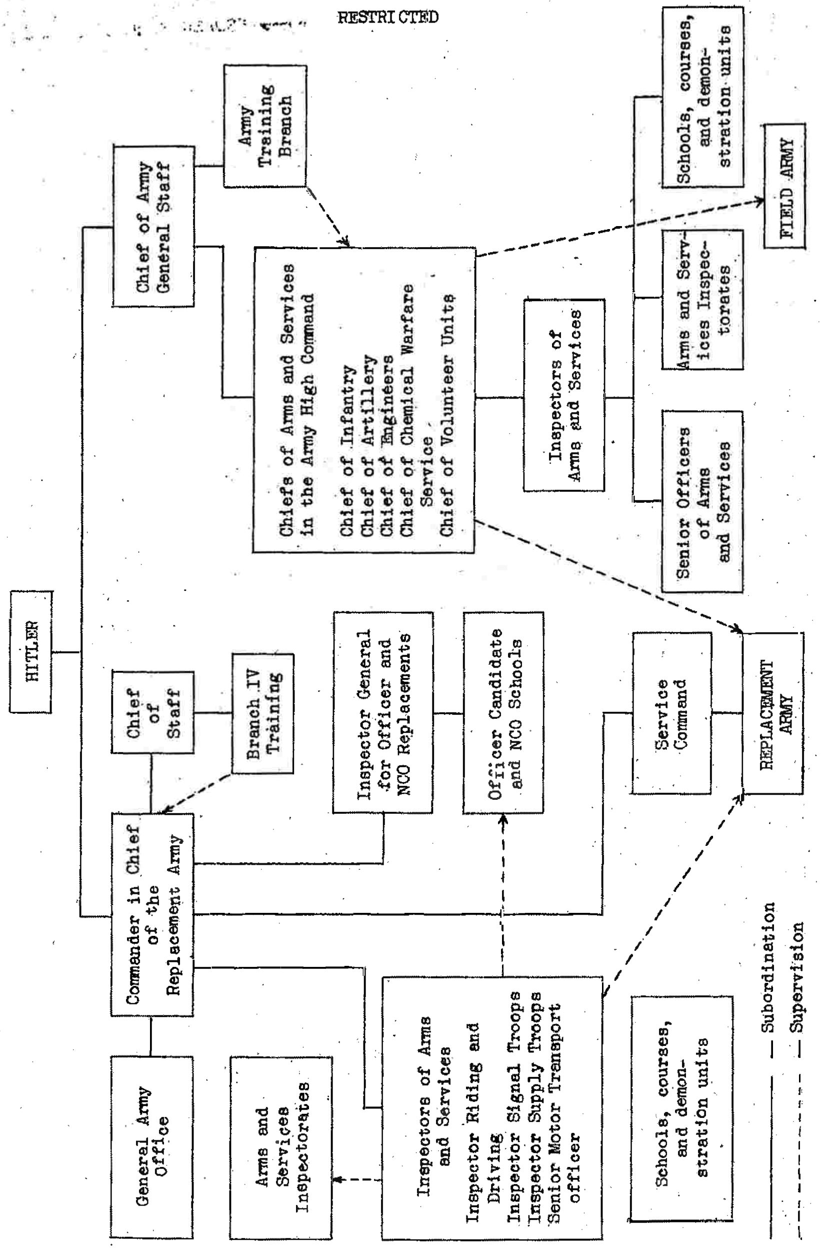
Before the German Army invaded Poland and France, it neither foresaw nor deemed it necessary that training should take place in the Field Army. The brevity of these campaigns and the fact that sufficient fully-trained reserves were available, made it unnecessary to establish training of any type outside of the Replacement Army. Individual replacements were drawn from a division reserve battalion which formed part of each division.

After these campaigns, the divisions of the Field Army received replacements directly from the Replacement Army. These replacements had undergone only their normal 12-week basic training. Unit training, which until then had been partly

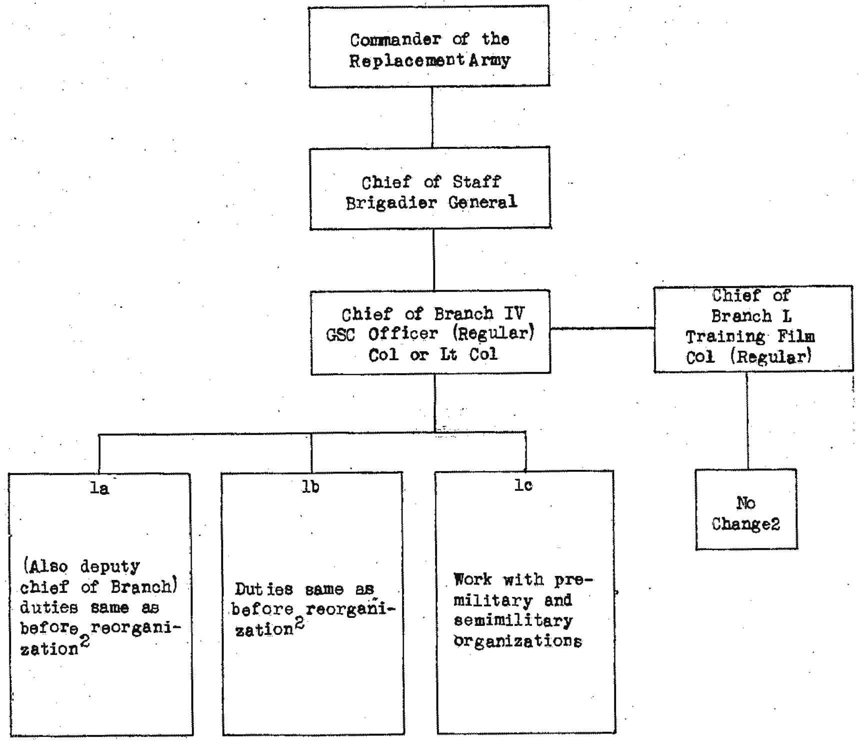
---

*For duties of the Chiefs of Arms and Services in the Army High Command, see appendix 12.

ORGANIZATION OF TRAINING IN THE REPLACEMENT ARMY, 1945


HITLER
Chief of Army General Staff
Army Training Branch
Chiefs of Arms and Services in the Army High Command
Chief of Infantry
Chief of Artillery
Chief of Engineers
Chief of Chemical Warfare Service
Chief of Volunteer Units
Inspectors of Arms and Services
Schools, courses, and demonstration units
Arms and Services Inspectorates
Senior Officers of Arms and Services
FIELD ARMY
Chief of Staff
Branch IV Training
Inspector General for Officer and NCO Replacements
Officer Candidate and NCO Schools
Service Command
REPLACEMENT ARMY
Commander in Chief of the Replacement Army
General Army Office
Arms and Services Inspectorates
Inspectors of Arms and Services
Inspector Riding and Driving
Inspector Signal Troops
Inspector Supply Troops
Senior Motor Transport officer
Schools, courses, and demonstration units
Subordination
Supervision

CHAIN OF COMMAND
of
Branch IV (Training)
of
The Commander of the Replacement Army[1]
(1945)


Commander of the Replacement Army
Chief of Staff Brigadier General
Chief of Branch IV GSC Officer (Regular) Col or Lt Col
Chief of Branch L Training Film Col (Regular)
1a
(Also deputy chief of Branch) duties same as before reorganization2
1b
Duties same as before reorganization2
1c
Work with premilitary and semimilitary organizations
No Change2

Remarks: Actual changes within Branch IV itself were slight. Primary changes in December 1944 reorganization on same level as above.

a. Section II handling personnel matters (see appendix 31) was taken out of Branch IV.

b. Section 1c, which coordinated training of premilitary organizations such as Hitler Youth and such semimilitary groups as the Volkssturm and the Labor Service was added.

---

[1] For organization of this branch, see appendix 42.

[2] See appendix 31.

carried out in the reserve battalions, was now carried out entirely in the units themselves. As there were no commitments at this time, it was not a difficult matter. The divisions which in peacetime had carried out all their own unit training, adopted the same methods and brought their formations up to the normal precampaign standards.

This unit training, after the beginning of the Russian campaign, became almost impossible, as the field units were constantly committed. Only divisions which were badly depleted and had to be withdrawn for reforming or divisions used as operational reserves were still able to carry out this training.

It was, however, still essential that fresh reserves be given a certain amount of unit training to prepare them for combat.

General directives for the training of the Field Army, based on the experiences of the campaigns against Poland and France, were issued by the Army High Command and applied to training during the winter of 1940-41. Even though this training could no longer be carried out fully, this order* still remained the basis for the further training of the Field Army.

The training of officers, NCOs, and specialists was done mainly by detailing them from the front to courses conducted by the regiments and the field reserve battalions (with combat schools) of the division. The rapidly decreasing standard of training, caused by heavy combat casualties, and the necessity of sending imperfectly trained soldiers into action, made it necessary to carry out continuous and intensive training in the front lines. Furthermore, wherever possible the trained reserves, transferred from the home units to the Field Army, were further trained in the field. This training, especially training with heavy weapons, was intensified, since this could not always be done satisfactorily by the home units because of lack of equipment.

b. Army Group

Functions of the army group with regard to training were as follows:

Exploitation and transmission of training experiences gained by individual subordinate units to all units within the army group

Dissemination of the directives issued by Army General Staff on training experiences especially relating to combat conditions in the army group area

Allotment of vacancies in courses which were under control of the army group and in courses outside army group areas

Elaboration of the training aims and schedules for all courses in the army group, and for the training of the reserves in the field training divisions.

Courses at the army group were held either by order of the Army General Staff, or on the army group's own initiative whenever circumstances permitted, and as long as there were no changes in the organization within the army group, no severe fighting, ample facilities for training, and sufficient accommodations. For this purpose, the army group had to detail the necessary training staff from the subordinate units. At the beginning of the war, this could generally be done without any harm to the state of preparedness for combat or to the training of the unit. After 1942, it became difficult to find good instructors from the units; the latter found it increasingly difficult to carry on without good officers and NCOs.

---

*For sample training directive, see appendix 13.

The basic ideas behind these training methods were, however, adhered to throughout the war. The reasons for this were as follows:

The longer the war lasted, the more important was the training of the potential leader

In this way the latest training methods were quickly and uniformly brought to the troops

Officer and NCO reserves were created who were in great demand by the field units.

In 1943, many army groups received field training divisions, which were mainly intended to intensify the training of such replacements as were not sufficiently trained to meet front-line requirements. Originally these divisions were part of the Replacement Army, and were stationed and trained in occupied areas away from the front. These troops, who were undergoing basic training, also served as occupation troops in these areas. In 1943, these recruit training divisions were transferred to the Field Army as field training divisions. As far as was possible, each army group received one of these divisions.

The main duties of these divisions were now the further training of recruits from the Replacement Army, and those fully trained, but previously deferred, personnel who were redrafted into the army. The divisions were in charge of the retraining of such personnel who had become available through the combing-out of clerks, specialists, and members of the air force and navy, unless this had already been done in the Replacement Army.

According to the situation at the front, the army group commander decided whether the replacements should be sent directly into the lines or to the field training divisions for further training. The length of training was also determined by the situation at the front and the losses incurred. Whenever this training could be carried out properly, it proved to be of great value.

This was the only establishment within the Field Army which carried out advanced training of recruits and deferred personnel.

The cadre and instructors were chosen from the units, and if they were satisfactory, they were temporarily transferred to the tables of organization (war establishment) of the school. The commanding officer of such a school had to be an especially capable senior officer, who had had battle experience and was usually a regiment commander. He was responsible for the training according to army training directives.

The arm or service school was the focal point of training within the army command.

The main training purposes of the schools were to rectify known training defects, to supply training with new weapons, and to exploit combat experiences. When new weapons or equipment were issued, or when the latest combat experiences were to be exploited, the army arm and service school could issue brief directives which were distributed to the army units to insure uniform training.

The most important subjects for company commander training were the following:

(a) Education of the young company commander in commanding and training his own units

(b) Commanding the company in the following phases of combat:
Counterthrusts and counterattack
Defense of large sectors, including the preparation of fire plans
Coordination of all weapons
Cooperation with tanks and assault guns
Fighting and reconnaissance patrols
Approach march and action at night and during fog
Antitank defense and antitank close combat
Antiaircraft defense with machine gun and rifle
Constructing field positions
Training in front-line positions

(c) Welfare, discipline, and supply of the unit in the rest area, on the march, and during combat

(d) Training unit NCOs in the following subjects:
Training in front-line positions
Methods of training
Preparing written combat missions (attack, defense, patrols, etc.)

The training of specialists depended on their demand within the army units. It was given by individual instruction staffs (Lehrstäben). The following types of specialists were trained:.

Artillery fire coordinating NCOs, artillery forward observers, communication troops, patrol leaders, gas detection specialists, riding instructors, drivers, and equipment NCOs. The following list of subjects and subject hours shows a comparison of infantry and artillery training given during one specific course.

Subject	Infantry	Artillery
Army administration	12¼ hours	9½ hours
Field training	38 hours	31 hours
Infantry tactics	13½ hours	--
Firing instruction and firing	12 hours	20 hours
Terrain analysis	11 hours	6 hours
Small arms and artillery instruction	5¼ hours	29 3/4 hours
Infantry and artillery functions	1 3/4 hours	2 3/4 hours
General company administration	9 3/4 hours	3 hours
Gas defense instruction	2 hours	2 hours
Instruction about the air force	2 hours	2 hours
Instruction about the armored troops	1 3/4 hours	1 3/4 hours
Lectures, films	2½ hours	1 3/4 hours
Veterinary and medical service	1½ hours	3/4 hours

The company and battery commander schools proved of extreme value during the years following the enlargement of the German Army and the beginning of the campaigns against France and Norway. In 1943, it was decided to increase the number of such schools and allot them permanently to the individual armies. A permanent organization was established for these schools which included the incorporation of the company and battery commander schools. These newly organized schools were called the army arm and service schools.* In addition to company and battery commander courses, these schools also held courses for NCO specialists.

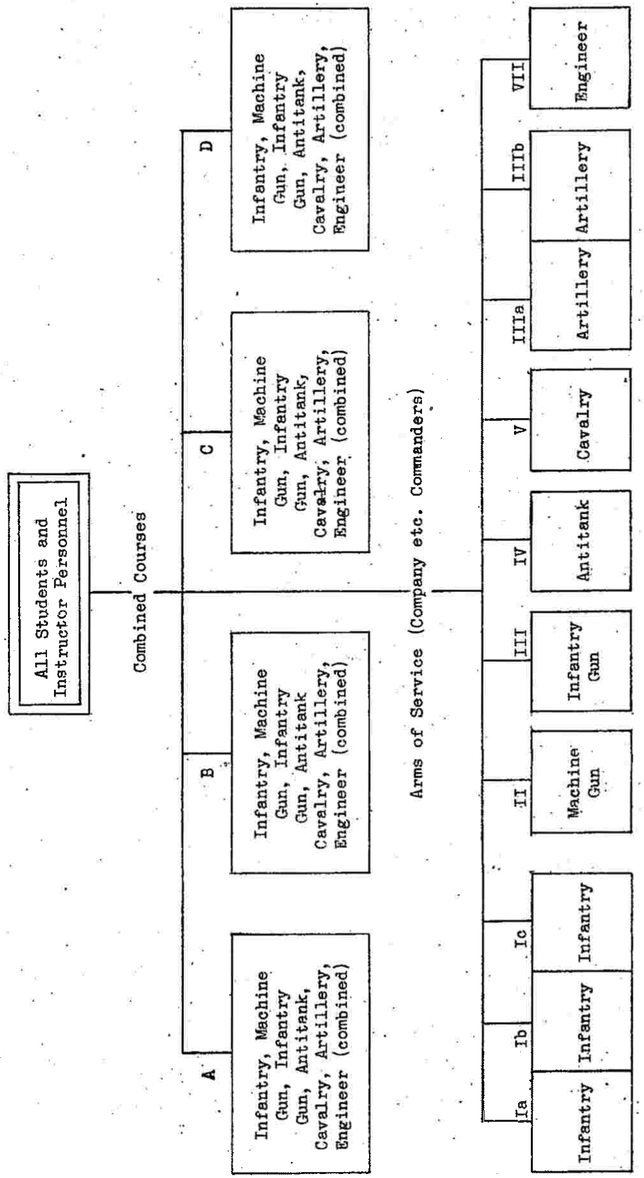
c. Army

Immediately following the Polish campaign, the German Army was enlarged considerably. A large number of vacancies for experienced company and battery

---

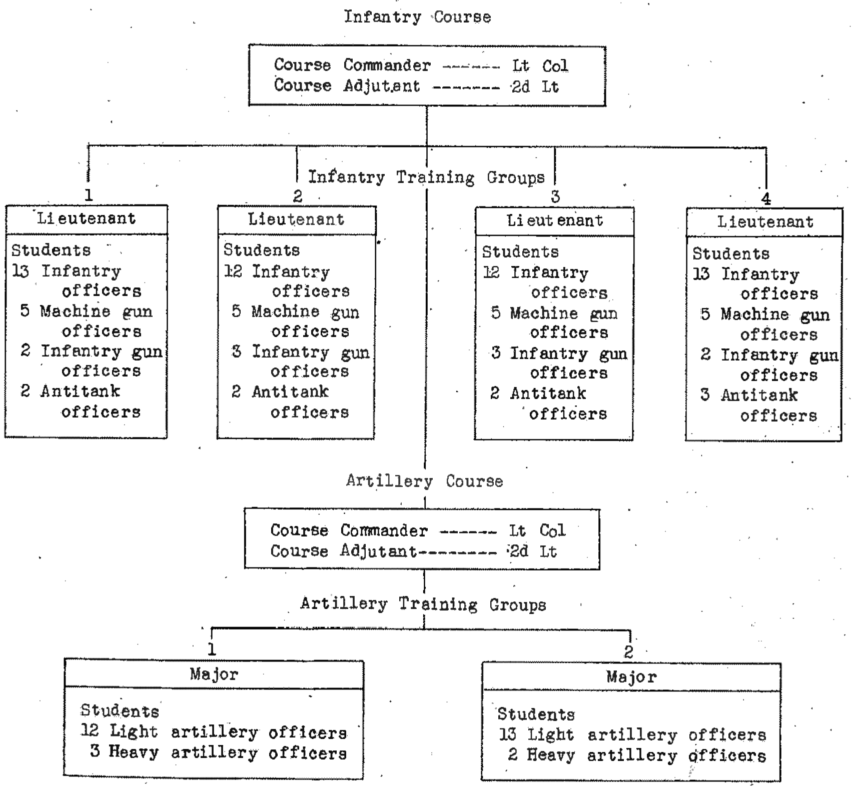
*For training plan, see appendix 14.

ORGANIZATION
OF THE COMPANY COMMANDERS (COMBINED) SCHOOL OF ARMY GROUP B (1939-40)


All Students and Instructor Personnel
Combined Courses
A
Infantry, Machine Gun, Infantry Gun, Antitank, Cavalry, Artillery, Engineer (combined)
B
Infantry, Machine Gun, Infantry Gun, Antitank Cavalry, Artillery, Engineer (combined)
C
Infantry, Machine Gun, Infantry Gun, Antitank, Cavalry, Artillery, Engineer (combined)
D
Infantry, Machine Gun, Infantry Gun, Antitank, Cavalry, Artillery, Engineer (combined)
Arms of Service (Company etc. Commanders)
Ia
Infantry
Ib
Infantry
Ic
Infantry
II
Machine Gun
III
Infantry Gun
IV
Antitank
V
Cavalry
IIIa
Artillery
IIIb
Artillery
VII
Engineer

ORGANIZATION
OF A
COMPANY AND BATTERY COMMANDERS SCHOOL
ESTABLISHED BY HEADQUARTERS SECOND ARMY 10 JANUARY 1941

School Commander	Col
School Adjutant	Capt
School Administration Officer	2d Lt

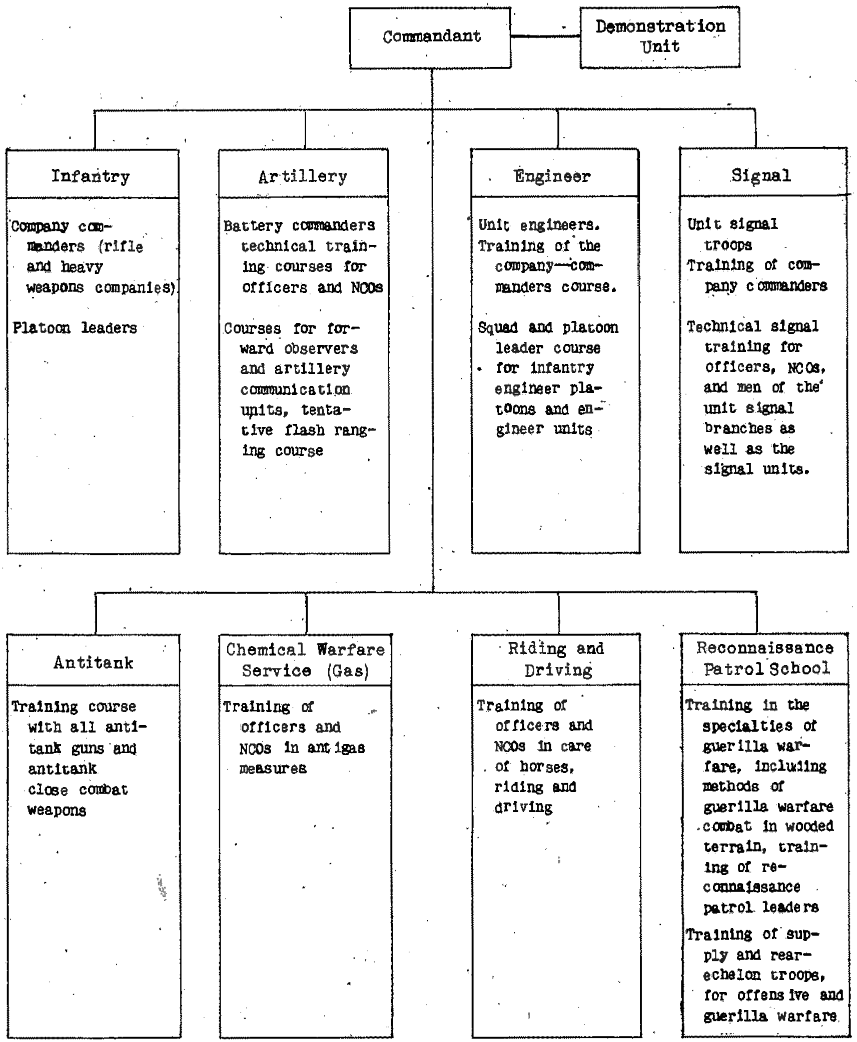

Infantry Course
Course Commander ------- Lt Col
Course Adjutant -------- 2d Lt
Infantry Training Groups
1
Lieutenant
Students
13 Infantry officers
5 Machine gun officers
2 Infantry gun officers
2 Antitank officers
2
Lieutenant
Students
12 Infantry officers
5 Machine gun officers
3 Infantry gun officers
2 Antitank officers
3
Lieutenant
Students
12 Infantry officers
5 Machine gun officers
3 Infantry gun officers
2 Antitank officers
4
Lieutenant
Students
13 Infantry officers
5 Machine gun officers
2 Infantry gun officers
3 Antitank officers
Artillery Course
Course Commander ------- Lt Col
Course Adjutant--------- 2d Lt
Artillery Training Groups
1
Major
Students
12 Light artillery officers
3 Heavy artillery officers
2
Major
Students
13 Light artillery officers
2 Heavy artillery officers

The above chart shows the number and types of officers attending the course and also the rank held by each of the officers on the staff.

The instructional troops consisted of one infantry battalion and one artillery battalion. They were under command of the school commander for discipline and under the course commanders respectively for duty.

The above courses were of three weeks duration.

ORGANIZATION OF AN ARMY ARM OF SERVICE SCHOOL


Commandant
Demonstration Unit
Infantry
Company commanders (rifle and heavy weapons companies)
Platoon leaders
Artillery
Battery commanders technical training courses for officers and NCOs
Courses for forward observers and artillery communication units, tentative flash ranging course
Engineer
Unit engineers. Training of the company-commanders course.
Squad and platoon leader course for infantry engineer platoons and engineer units
Signal
Unit signal troops
Training of company commanders
Technical signal training for officers, NCOs, and men of the unit signal branches as well as the signal units.
Antitank
Training course with all antitank guns and antitank close combat weapons
Chemical Warfare Service (Gas)
Training of officers and NCOs in antigas measures
Riding and Driving
Training of officers and NCOs in care of horses, riding and driving
Reconnaissance Patrol School
Training in the specialties of guerilla warfare, including methods of guerilla warfare combat in wooded terrain, training of reconnaissance patrol leaders
Training of supply and rear-echelon troops, for offensive and guerilla warfare

For examples of training plans, see appendix 14.

commanders were created. These vacancies could not be filled by the available junior officers who lacked experience in commanding a unit of this size.

The arm and service schools of the Replacement Army were insufficient to train the required number of officers needed for the coming campaigns against France and Norway.

Consequently, the Commander in Chief of the Army ordered the establishment of company and battery commander schools to be set up by the army groups of the Field Army. These schools not only applied to infantry and artillery, but could be set up for other arms and services as well, and a certain percentage of vacancies were at all times allotted to personnel from the Replacement Army. The schools did not conform to a uniform organization but could be established to meet the requirements of the particular army group.*

Efforts were made to assign elements of field units to the army schools as a demonstration team, but this could not always be accomplished. The ideal demonstration unit consisted of an infantry battalion, an artillery battery, and companies and platoons of other arms. The teams assigned could perfect their own training and recover from the fatigue of their service at the front.

The army arm and service schools were preferred by the unit commanders to similar schools in the Replacement Army. The main advantages of these schools were as follows:

Instruction personnel were capable and experienced in actual combat

The latest weapons and equipment were available for training

Field units were insured the return of their personnel. This was not always the case with schools in the Replacement Army

Schools were near enough to the front for students to keep in touch with the situation and their units, and in the event of large scale offensives, could be returned easily to their units.

The arm and service schools of the army were, except for the division combat school (Kampfschule der Division) and the field reserve battalion, the main establishments for the training of specialized NCOs and officers of the Field Army.

d. Corps

The corps headquarters only controlled and supervised training. It had no permanent training establishments of its own. It issued directives and instructions on training; it saw that there was uniformity of training within divisions, and distributed the training material for weapons, ammunition, and equipment. In addition to this, it assigned the localities available for the courses and informed all superior and subordinate offices. The result was that training within a corps depended on the personality of the general officer commanding, as well as on the period during which the divisions were under his control. A further important task was to supervise the training of newly formed units or those which were transferred from other theaters of war.

In general, the corps headquarters confined itself to training specialists for its own corps troops and divisions. Examples of specialist courses were close combat tank fighting (conducted by the antitank staff officer of the corps headquarters); use of explosives and ignition charges (conducted by the engineer staff officer); radio and telephone operations (conducted by the senior signal officer); courses for gas officers and gas NCOs (conducted by the corps antigas officer); courses for the communication service between ground and air forces (conducted by the air force liaison officer); courses for ammunition and equipment experts (conducted by the corps ordnance officer). Other courses for specialists were ordered by the corps headquarters when necessary, and were held at one of the divisions under the supervision of corps headquarters. If necessary, additional instructors were provided by the other divisions. These courses consisted of instructions for stable sergeants or ferriers (held at a veterinary company of a division by the corps veterinary service); courses for drivers (held at the workshop company and directed by the chief of the corps engineers); and special conferences for medical officers (held at a field hospital by the chief medical officer of the corps).

---

*For purpose and organization of these schools, see appendixes 16 and 17.

e. Division

The division, because of its composition and resources, received broader and more comprehensive training than any other formation in the army. This training varied, naturally, according to the nature of the employment of a unit at the time. Thus, training could ordinarily be held only on quiet sectors of the front. Training installations had to be established outside the division sectors, where they would be out of range of the fighting. Because of its composition, its material means, and its vital interest in the training, the division was one of the most important agencies for maintaining and promoting the standard of training. Because of this, it received considerable support in training matters from the higher formations. The creation of the field replacement battalion was one of the most effective innovations. The main reason for their establishment was to relieve the regiments, independent battalions, and batteries, which were primarily concerned with their own operational commitments, from routine training matters.

At the beginning of the war only the Regular (peacetime) army divisions had their own field replacement battalion. As these battalions proved of great value, they were eventually established in all field divisions. These battalions were established only for infantry and engineer replacements. All other division replacements, such as artillery, went directly to their units in the field since it was impossible to take from the field units the weapons and equipment necessary to establish such schools behind the lines. Uniform training of the entire division was thereby guaranteed, and the procurement of instructors could be worked out more evenly when the training was at division level.

The division commander supervised the field replacement battalion. The commander of the field replacement battalion was usually a battalion officer with an especially good record. This appointment was changed from time to time. Front-line soldiers with superior records were chosen as instructors. Units encouraged the choice of their men as instructors to serve their own training interests.

Toward the end of the war, the field reserve battalions were often brought into action, although this was not intended originally.

The functions of the field replacement battalions were as follows:

Absorption of all replacements from the Replacement Army or from the field training division and the ascertainment of their current state of training

Intensified training of the replacements

Training in the use of up-to-date weapons and equipment.

Apart from the division replacement battalion, the division had a division combat school to take care of the training that was not carried out by the replacement battalion. This school was controlled by the commander of the replacement training battalion and was established within the division command.

In these schools, the courses were held for NCOs and potential NCOs of infantry and engineer units within the division. Participants from other arms of the service could be included.

Training students in the use of their own weapons, as well as complete knowledge of supporting arms was insured. NCOs of heavy weapons units were especially trained in fire control and fire coordination. NCOs of rifle companies were taught the proper use of fire application.

Potential platoon and squad leaders were taught the technical handling of weapons and equipment as well as close combat and antitank combat, and were drilled in the method of giving commands. They also received instructions in the training of subordinates.

On the basis of these training tasks, the following categories were trained:

Particularly qualified NCOs, as platoon leaders

Young, inexperienced NCOs and older, experienced men, as squad leaders

Young, inexperienced NCOs of machine gun, infantry gun, and antitank companies, to command gun crews or sections and squads.

The training subjects were adapted to meet the requirements of the theater of operations. Consequently, subjects which seemed superfluous, such as attacking while on the march, pursuit, etc., were discontinued in the latter part of the war.

The length of the training course was four weeks.*

The necessity for continuous training, on the one hand, and the impossibility of withdrawing many soldiers from the front for training in the division replacement battalion resulted in training in front-line positions even during combat.

The various kinds of training in the positions on quiet sectors of the front were as follows:

(1) Utilizing a normal day's work with training (target designation, observation duty, weapon training of the individual rifleman, etc.)
(2) Utilization of normal reconnaissance and fighting patrols, firing and defense charts, and construction of field positions for training purposes. All actual problems were worked out in advance of their execution either on a sand table or behind the front lines.

Details of this training are laid down in the instructional pamphlet "Suggestions for Training Positions."** This instructional pamphlet was distributed to all units down to the company and battery.

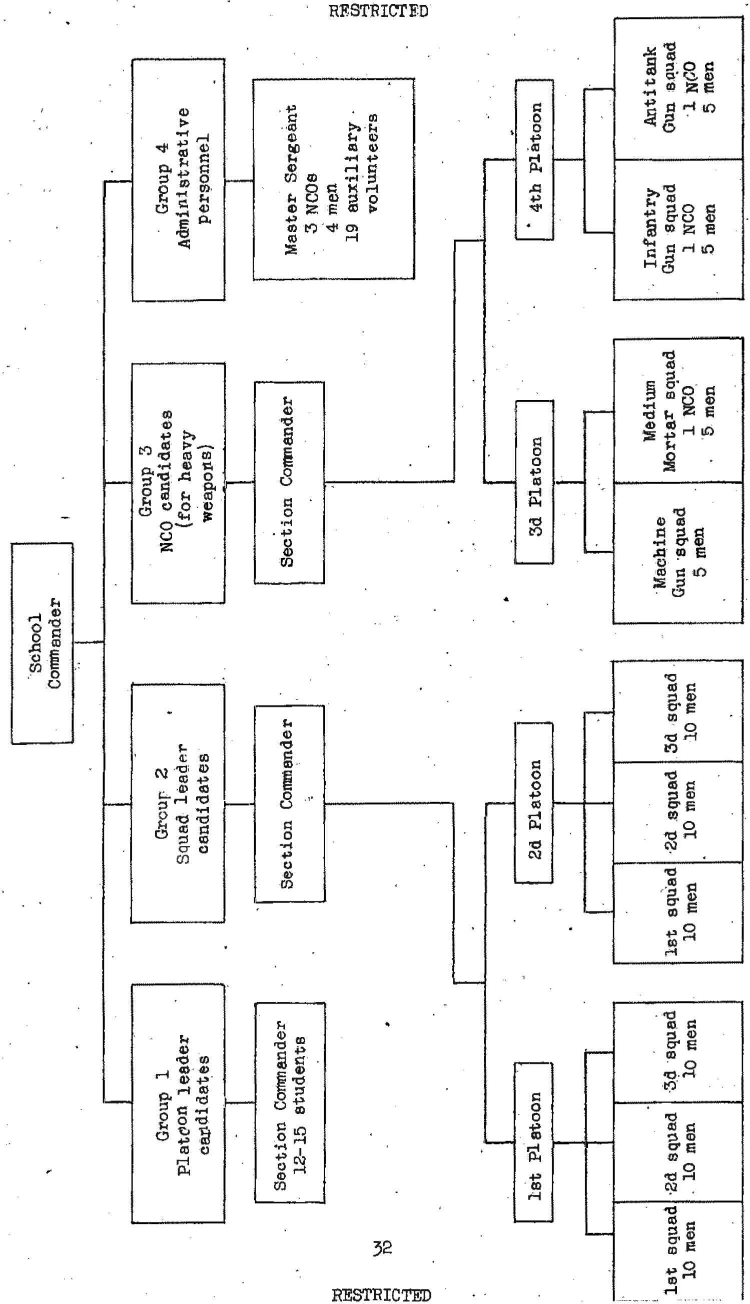
2. Replacement Army Training

---

*For a complete translated study of the Division Combat Schools, including training syllabi, duties of instructors, etc., see appendix 15.

**For sample pamphlet, see appendix 2.

DIVISION COMBAT SCHOOL


School Commander
Group 1 Platoon leader candidates
Group 2 Squad leader candidates
Group 3 NCO candidates (for heavy weapons)
Group 4 Administrative personnel
Section Commander 12-15 students
Section Commander
Section Commander
Master Sergeant 3 NCOs 4 men 19 auxiliary volunteers
1st Platoon
2d Platoon
3d Platoon
4th Platoon
1st squad 10 men
2d squad 10 men
3d squad 10 men
1st squad 10 men
2d squad 10 men
3d squad 10 men
Machine Gun squad 5 men
Medium Mortar squad 1 NCO 5 men
Infantry Gun squad 1 NCO 5 men
Antitank Gun squad 1 NCO 5 men

Remarks: The commander of the division combat school was also the commanding officer of the division field replacement battalion

a. General

Training in the Replacement Army was organized as follows:

(1) Basic training for recruits and further training which took place in the training companies or batteries
(2) Recapitulatory training for:
Soldiers who were trained in the army at one time released for essential industry, and redrafted
Soldiers who had been transferred from one branch of the service (air force, signal corps, etc.) to another (infantry, artillery, etc.)
Soldiers fully recovered from wounds or sickness. This training was carried out in specially designated training companies or batteries
(3) Convalescent training in the convalescent companies or batteries
(4) The training of officers, specialists, potential officers, and NCOs in training company or battalion schools and courses
(5) Training of regional defense units (Landesschützen Verbände) in the regional defense companies.

The training referred to in (1), (2), (3), and partly in (4) was carried out at the replacement and training battalions.

The training period depended on the requirements of the Field Army in accordance with the amount of material to be covered and on the number of reserves required. It generally lasted from 12 to 16 weeks. During the last year of war, the military situation demanded that replacements be transferred to the Field Army after 8 to 12 weeks of training. The general directives laid down for training and the weekly schedules issued with them were guided by these demands.

The training was given according to the training directives of the various branches of the service.*

As already mentioned, it was continuously supplemented by the "Regulations for Training in the Replacement Army" (divided according to the various branches of the service) and "Remarks on Training by the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army," by extract orders, instructional pamphlets, instructional films, and lantern slides.

b. Basic military training

The training period for recruits (basic training) was extremely short -- 12 to 16 weeks. It was evident that complete training was not possible, and the essence of the training was to enable the soldier to operate as an independent fighter or as an efficient member of his squad, gun crew, etc. The premilitary training knowledge, which the recruit had acquired in the Hitler Youth Organization, German Labor Service, Storm Troops, etc. was of great aid in this training period.

Because of the lack of time, weapons, and ammunition in the Replacement Army, it was impossible to give combined-arms training within the platoon, company, etc.

In contrast to the policy in force in other countries, including the United States, the recruits were immediately introduced to their weapons and were not given a basic training common to all arms and services. For instance, an artillery or signal corps recruit went directly to his own arm or service and began training with his own weapons and equipment. This measure proved satisfactory, since the recruit became fully acquainted from the very beginning with the weapon he would later use in combat. It also resulted in a great saving of time.

---

*For sample pamphlet, see appendixes 18 and 40.

The basic training was divided into two periods. During the first period (1 to 12 weeks), the recruit was trained to operate within the smallest units, including the platoon.

During these training periods, recruits in the various branches of the service were expected to master not only their particular weapon, but also other subjects which would aid them in carrying out their main duties. Thus, for example, every artillery gunner was able to defend his battery by infantry combat methods. The infantryman was able to detect antitank mines and remove them. Every soldier had to be trained in close combat of all kinds.

The short period of training could be successful only if the recruits were taught the bare essentials of combat. Everything that was not absolutely necessary, such as drill exercises, rifle drill, and goose stepping, was prohibited in the Replacement Army.

Most of the recruits, particularly the younger age groups, had already received premilitary training in the Hitler Youth Organization or the German Labor Service. The subjects covered may be compared with the elementary recruit training of other countries. When the recruit entered the army, he produced a training certificate in which the Hitler Youth and German Labor Service administrative centers had recorded the level of premilitary training which the recruit had attained. With this information, the Replacement Army could determine the length of training the recruit would need before he was shipped to the front.

War experience has shown that, on the whole, the young soldier found it difficult to put up with the primitive living conditions of war; he was too urbanized. It was found necessary to develop his initiative and to toughen him. This need for toughening the recruit was filled by giving him one-third to one-half of his basic training in the field. The recruits and training staff slept in tents or selfconstructed shelters and became accustomed to life in the field. In addition, much time was saved since the troops did not have to go to and from the place of work; the instructors were always on hand at all times; and the hampering effect of air raids was minimized.

During the first year of the war, which was characterized by the use of heavy technical weapons, the importance of giving the individual rifleman firing training had been partly underestimated. The training had been conducted according to obsolete firing manuals. These were first supplemented by instructional pamphlets and then replaced by the new Field Firing Manual (WAR), 1944 (Kriegs-Schiessvorschrift).*

c. Further training

In general, the basic training was concluded after 12 or 16 weeks. If the recruits were not sent to the front directly, they were given advanced training until they were needed. The object of this advanced training was to intensify and increase the knowledge the recruit had already acquired during basic training.

Exercises with other elements of the same arm or service (rifle company with heavy weapons company, etc.) were held in order to acquaint the recruit with his tasks and the effect of the weapons with which he would come in contact at the front. In addition, the training of specialists was increased (machine gunners, snipers, etc.) at the conclusion of which, the soldiers were put in replacement transfer units and sent to the Field Army.

d. Recapitulatory training

The object of recapitulatory training was to consolidate and intensify the knowledge and skill of troops who had received basic training a year or more ago and to prepare them for front-line service. This training usually lasted six weeks; from the first, it was a policy to build up the knowledge previously acquired. Emphasis in training was on new weapons and equipment.

The main object of recapitulatory training was to develop potential NCOs and specialists.* At the end of the course, the troops were sent to replacement transfer or rehabilitation units, which were then assigned to the Field Army.

e. Convalescent training

All soldiers who had recovered from their wounds or illnesses at hospitals, but were not yet fit for front-line service, were sent to convalescent units. Experience showed that most convalescents, who had been at the hospital for a long time, were in need of the guiding influence of officers, so they might become useful and disciplined soldiers again. Because the morale of wounded veterans was low, they were considered a source of discontentment. Furthermore, they were not always up to date on their training.

The task of these rehabilitation units was to retrain and re-educate their personnel until they were fit for front-line duty. In addition, they were responsible for the selection, instruction, and training of potential instructors or specialists.

The training of convalescents deserves special consideration since the army surgeons' treatment for walking cases formed part of it. The duration of training depended on the length of time required for the soldiers recovery. When the troops were fit for front-line duty, they were transferred to the training units for special designation or to potential NCO companies.

If soldiers were too badly injured to return to front-line duty, they were either discharged or trained to become clerks, drivers, locksmiths, mechanics, or to work in an administrative capacity.

f. Training of regional defense units

Regional defense units were usually made up from men of older age classes who were unsuited for front-line duty but could be used as prison guards, guards on bridges, occupational troops, and for defense against partisan activities.

Their training was adapted to these requirements, and usually lasted from 6 to 10 weeks.

g. Political indoctrination

The basic German concept was that ideally, "A company or a battery needs no special political education, if its leader shares his men's good and bad fortune, is always the first to get at the enemy, has regard for each individual, discusses their personal troubles, and tells them what they are fighting for." The length of the war and the resulting inevitable deterioration in quality of leadership demanded that increased attention should be paid to this essential element. This quality of leadership, which was demanded as a matter of course from the German Regular Army officer, had become increasingly rare.

---

*For outline of this manual, see appendix 19.

*For sample training plan, see appendix 20.

For the same reason, Ludendorff had demanded political officers as early as 1917, but his request had been ignored. During this war, too, the idea of creating these officers had been conceived too late (1943-44). It was not until the importance of the Russian Army commissars was recognized, that Germany came to create her National Socialist guidance officers. The guiding principle behind this was that this important training method should not be in the hands of civilians, but of widely experienced combat soldiers (if possible, highly decorated and many times wounded) who could speak to the troops in their own language.

Every division or higher headquarters in both the Field Army and the Replacement Army had one National Socialist guidance officer on the tables of organization, whose duty it was to supervise all National Socialist teachings within their unit. At lower headquarters, an officer was selected from among the unit officers to supervise the indoctrination. These officers received their material and instructions from the next higher National Socialist guidance officer and had to report to him on their activities and the general attitude of the troops.

In the Field Army, political education could be restricted substantially to the personal requirements of the individual and to the question "What is the German soldier fighting for?" The Replacement Army, however, dealt with this question more exhaustively.

There were three categories of political education in the Replacement Army: political instruction, ceremonial hours, and cultural training.

During the political education, the recruit was systematically taught what he was fighting for. This political instruction was not to be restricted to periodic classes only, but was to be given on every occasion that offered itself both during and after duty hours, and it included philosophical, current, and political instruction. The book "What Are We Fighting For?" published by the Army Personnel Office together with other pamphlets, such as the current monthly subjects published each month giving suitable topics for discussion, formed a basis for these instructions. Units also received information pamphlets or made use of the daily press, high command reports, etc.* At least three hours were set aside every week to deal with these topics.

The political instructions were completed by special lectures given by speakers of the party and government, or by highly qualified soldiers, professional party leaders, etc., by literary lectures, musical recitals, and films. Special ceremonial hours were held on such occasion as the admittance of the recruits into the army, first issue of arms (recognition of the sacredness of the weapon), swearing-in, and departure of soldiers for the front. Cultural hours consisted of festive hours on special occasions (30th of January, the Führer's birthday, Hero's Remembrance Day).

h. Training personnel

All training officers of the Replacement Army, including the unit commanders, were experienced combat officers and included both Regular and Reserve officers. They were usually officers who had previously been wounded or invalided out of the Field Army. Once having been selected for training duties in the Replacement Army, they were compelled to serve as such for a period of at least one year, even though their medical category was raised to combat grade during that period. After these officers had served as instructors or unit commanders for one year and had regained physical fitness, they were returned to the front.

---

*For principles guiding the National Socialist guidance officer, see appendix 21.

In order not to drain the Replacement Army of all good training officers at any one time, no unit could send away too many of their instructor personnel at once. This was done in order to insure continuity of training at all times. The standard of the Replacement Army depended on the company and battery commanders who were responsible for the instruction and training of officers, NCOs, and potential officers and NCOs acting as instructors under their command.

Although unit commanders were required to be present frequently during the training, it was not to be interrupted or changed in the event of visits from high ranking officers.

In view of the increasing shortage of equipment and material as the war progressed, unit commanders and officer instructors found it more and more difficult to carry out training according to syllabi. Recruits had to be trained with whatever equipment was available, and this led to an all-time high in improvisation. Modern weapons were practically nonexistent. In 1944, for instance, each training company had only one machine gun for approximately 700 recruits; each artillery replacement and training battalion possessed only five guns, which, moreover, were captured guns. Attempts were made to alleviate this shortage. First step was to institute a more practical organization of the system of training, such as the county fair system in which one platoon has combat training while another, by concentrating on the machine guns at its disposal, has weapons training, a third has rifle training, while still another has engineer training. After one period, all platoons changed around. Secondly, all forms of improvisation were tried, such as concrete hand grenades, practice machine guns of sheet steel, or obsolete and unserviceable machine guns, etc. For this purpose, the Technical Army Bulletins (Ht.V.Blatt) supplied up-to-date hints for the making of makeshift appliances of this kind. It was the duty of all officers to insure that their subordinate instructors did not give drill and lectures only.

The training personnel of a unit consisted of the unit commander, the recruit training officer, NCOs, and certain enlisted men acting as assistant instructors. The NCOs, like the officers, were experienced combat soldiers wounded or invalided out of the Field Army. Often they had little ability as instructors, and required constant supervision from the training officers. They were returned to the Field Army on recovery and at such time as their return would not interfere with the table of organization of instructor personnel.

Assistant instructors were chosen from among potential officers and NCOs as well as intelligent recruits. These assistants were used as instructors only when this did not interfere with their normal training or wherever the two could be combined. In view of the decline in quality of instructors (both officers and NCOs) with the progress of the war, it became necessary for unit commanders and recruit training officers to conduct special classes for the instructors.

The commanding officer of a unit discussed the weekly training schedule with the whole instruction staff as a preparation for their work. Furthermore, either he or the recruit training officer had to discuss plans of work for the next day with the instructors, (e.g., combat training at the location where it was to be held or at the sand table). At the same time, subordinate commanders up to the infantry section and platoon commanders received constant training in field exercises without troops, conferences, sand table problems, training in the use of weapons, etc.

To make the task of the often unskilled instructors easier, sample problems for all the various kinds of combat were issued to all units. In this manner, the commanding officer could be certain that the training was carried out as he desired.

It was further required that the instructors should prepare themselves for the duties of the next day, and have all their material and equipment ready in good time.

The instructor was required not only to lecture, supervise, and criticize, but to cooperate personally with the students and to demonstrate. Special stress was laid on the ability of instructors to pick out defects in training and correct them. Finally, recruits were to be trained to act independently and not as puppets obeying the orders of an instructor.

i. Training installations and areas

Garrison training and troop training areas were used for training purposes by German Army units.

Garrison training areas were located throughout Germany near towns and cities in which the population was more than 10,000. Here the army trained its recruits in the replacement and training units.

For field training, the units used these areas, generally located near the barracks. The training capacity of such an area was sufficient only for exercises of company size. There were no facilities for field problems requiring live ammunition.

A garrison training area contained a large system of fortified positions with heavy weapons positions, bunkers, rifle positions, firing and communication trenches, and aiming practice areas. This section served for training in trench warfare. A part of the basic training period (two to three weeks) was spent living in these trench positions.

Other sections were used for village and woods fighting, close combat, aiming practice, and mine, gas, and camouflage instruction.

Aiming practice areas were enlarged, and sand boxes were erected outdoors. Here the recruit learned target observation, target designation, and practised laying and aiming exercises of all kinds, as well as the giving of brief fire orders.

Mine instruction sections demonstrated to the recruit the difference between correct and incorrect methods of mine laying.

Gas instruction areas were used to demonstrate the effect of gas on vegetation, etc., and methods of identification.

Camouflage areas were used to demonstrate correct and incorrect methods of camouflage.

Indoor and outdoor riding areas and buildings for the presentation of training films were available.

Practice with live ammunition was conducted on the rifle range, which was another essential training installation, but seldom located within the garrison training area. There the recruit learned range and combat firing methods.

Engineer units had special engineer training areas in addition to the normal garrison training areas. Usually these consisted of a land training area and a water training area. The former was used for demolition, mine training, etc., while the latter was used for the training of assault boat units and bridging units.

The troop training areas were considerably larger than the garrison training areas, and units above battalion size could be trained with full use of live ammunition.

Each service command had one or two troop training areas. During peacetime, each regiment was sent to a maneuver area for four to six weeks, usually in the summer, to complete its unit training. Barracks for quarters, hospitals, swimming pools, churches, theaters, and canteens were available.

Here the soldier had an opportunity to apply to combat conditions, everything he had learned in the garrison training area. Combat practice exercises were carried out usually with live ammunition for the heavy weapons and artillery.

The size of the smaller training areas averaged 35 square miles; while the largest areas were about 1,100 square miles in size. They were located normally in an agriculturally poor section of each service command.

A troop training area commander (general) was subordinate to the commander of the service command. He controlled all administrative functions (food, quarters, etc.), allocated training areas to the various units, and furnished civilian personnel for the erection of targets and for telephone communications. In addition, he determined the danger areas on the various ranges, and had the necessary restrictions published in the local newspapers. The commander was responsible for the administration and maintenance of all training area installations and of forests within these areas.

Maneuver areas were cultivated to a great extent during the war. In addition to partially alleviating the serious food problem within Germany, the cultivated fields were also used to assist in more realistic training. Tenant farmers could rent this land at an extremely low price, but in return had to take into account possible damage to crops for which no reimbursement was granted.

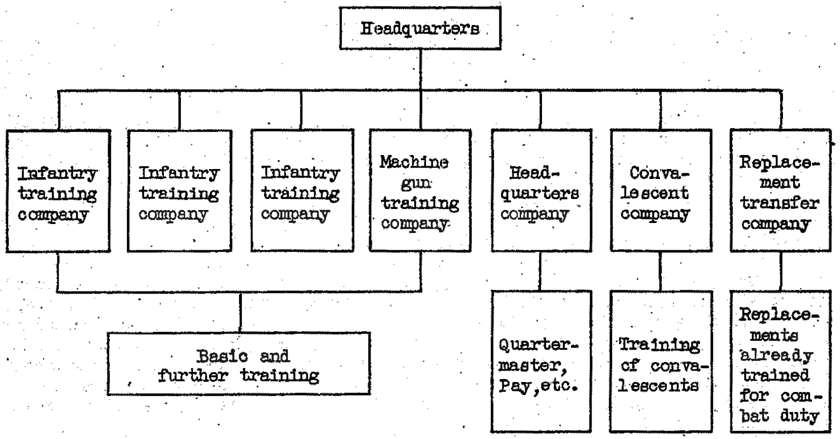
During the war, training areas were used almost exclusively for establishing and training new divisions. As a result, training units from various garrisons could not always be sent to the training areas. This was not so important since these training units trained individuals, rather than whole units. Only the infantry heavy weapons and artillery units were sent to the training areas for short periods, to complete their firing practice. The mountain infantry units were trained at mountain training areas similar to the troop training areas.

Large scale maneuvers were carried out in approximately division, corps, and army strength. These maneuvers were always held in the fall to avoid damage to crops and to allow more freedom of movement. The locations were changed yearly depending on the size and purpose of the maneuvers.

j. organization of training units in the Replacement Army

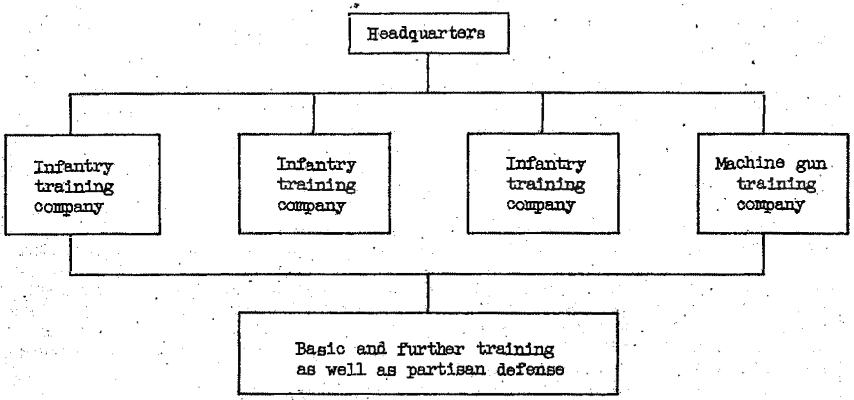
The organization of replacement and training units of the Replacement Army changed several times during the war. As a rule, a replacement division consisted of three infantry replacement regiments, one artillery replacement regiment, one engineer replacement battalion, and one signal replacement battalion. Up to 1942, the infantry replacement regiment consisted of three infantry replacement training battalions, one infantry gun and howitzer company, one antitank company, and one signal company. The artillery replacement regiment normally had two light and one heavy artillery replacement training battalions.

Organization of an Infantry Replacement
Training Battalion (until 1942)

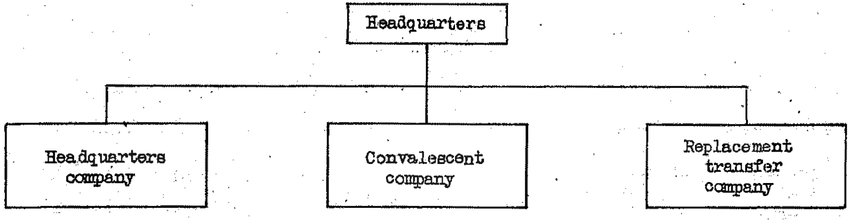

Headquarters
Infantry training company
Infantry training company
Infantry training company
Machine gun training company
Head-quarters company
Conva-lescent company
Replace-ment transfer company
Basic and further training
Quarter-master, Pay, etc.
Training of conva-lescents
Replace-ments already trained for com-bat duty

There were no troops in the occupied territory because of the rapid advance of front-line troops in the Russian and other campaigns. In order to eliminate the danger and hazards of partisan activities in the rear areas, it was decided to station basic training divisions in these territories. Some of the replacement units were separated from the training units, as replacement units had to maintain and adhere to their main function.

Organization of an Infantry Training
Battalion in Occupied Territory


Headquarters
Infantry training company
Infantry training company
Infantry training company
Machine gun training company
Basic and further training as well as partisan defense

Organization of an Infantry Replacement
Battalion in Germany

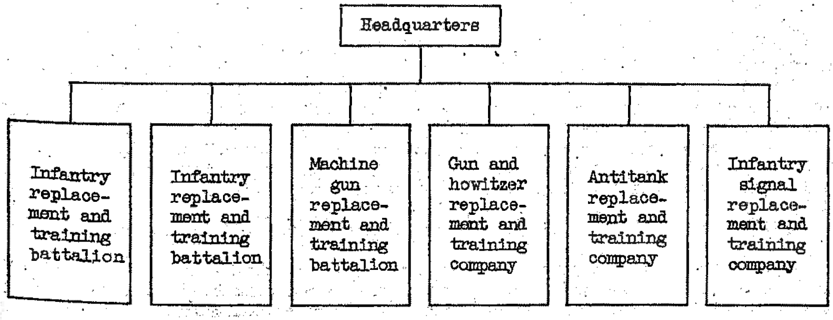

Headquarters
Headquarters company
Convalescent company
Replacement transfer company

The recruit was attached first to a headquarters company. Here he received a preliminary training of about 10 days including the issue of clothing and equipment, interviews, administrative details, and physical examination. During these 10 days, he became familiar only with the rifle. Then he was assigned to a training company of an infantry training battalion. After completing basic training, he received some further training, altogether about 12 to 14 weeks. He was then returned to his original replacement battalion and assigned to the replacement transfer company. Here he was granted a brief furlough, and upon return was sent to the Field Army.

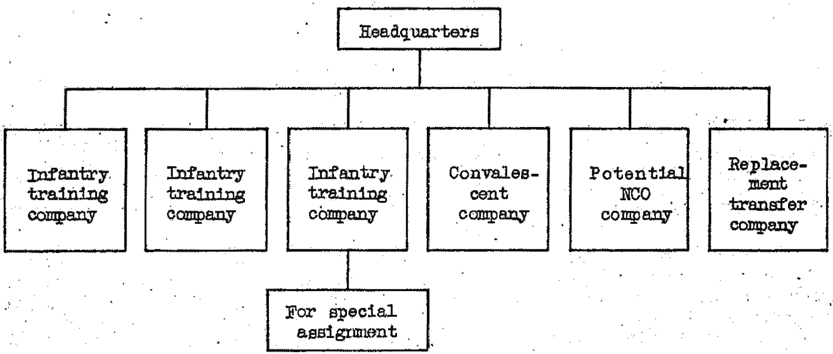
In 1943, all training divisions of the Replacement Army stationed in occupied territories were attached to the Field Army as field training divisions (about 15 divisions). These divisions stopped training recruits at this time, and concentrated on the training of replacements who had already had some previous training.

The transfer of the training divisions to the Field Army necessitated a reorganization of the replacement units at home. The separation of replacement and training units had not proved successful since replacement units were often called upon to carry out further training of redrafted personnel. For this reason, they lacked both equipment and instructors. The result was a merger, once again, of the replacement and training units.

Organization of an Infantry
Replacement Regiment


Headquarters
Infantry replace-ment and training battalion
Infantry replace-ment and training battalion
Machine gun replace-ment and training battalion
Gun and howitzer replace-ment and training company
Antitank replace-ment and training company
Infantry signal replace-ment and training company

Organization of an Infantry Replacement and Training Battalion


Headquarters
Infantry training company
Infantry training company
Infantry training company
Convalescent company
Potential NCO company
Replacement transfer company
For special assignment

This organization was similar to that of other branches, such as artillery, etc. The reorganization was intended to provide a better utilization of weapons and a more efficient supervision of training. Disadvantages resulting from this new organization, such as lack of training with supporting arms, were considered, but could not be avoided.

In 1944, the recruit went through a 12-week period of basic training in an infantry training company. Upon completion, he received further training up to 14 days in the same unit while awaiting transfer. He was then transferred to a replacement transfer company and sent to an army group of the Field Army. The commander of the army group decided whether or not the replacements were to undergo further training with the field training divisions. His decision was based, first, on the overall tactical situation, and second, on the state of training of the new replacements. Replacements were transferred to divisions of the Field Army according to the need of combat units. These divisions again tested newly arrived replacements and familiarized them with weapons and methods of combat in a particular theater of operations. This was carried out by the field replacement battalions. After these preliminary steps had been taken, the replacement soldiers were sent out to the various combat units.

If a soldier was wounded, he was hospitalized, and upon discharge from the hospital was transferred to a convalescent company of an infantry replacement and training battalion. If the soldier was earmarked as a potential NCO, he was assigned to a potential NCO company after complete recovery. If he was not considered NCO material, he was assigned to a training company for special assignment and took a refresher course of about six weeks. Upon completion he was reassigned to the Field Army. As a member of a replacement transfer company, he was sent with this unit directly to the Field Army and attached to a field replacement battalion. The soldier was subsequently assigned for duty in a combat unit.

C. Training in Schools and Courses in the Field Army and the Replacement Army

In peacetime, much army training was carried out in schools and courses. This system of training proved so satisfactory that it was not only retained in wartime but was extended and expanded. It was found that these establishments were the

surest and quickest means of providing the troops with a uniform study of weapons, equipment, and combat methods.

The number of courses given by the Field Army and the Replacement Army was very high. Units which were required to send their officers and men to these courses objected strenuously to the large numbers involved, since too many of their best officers and men were away at one time. In an attempt to remedy this situation, the Army High Command, in 1943, proposed that all units submit suggestions as to the number and size of courses to be held. The Army High Command hoped, in this way, to get a more comprehensive idea of the needs of the field and replacement units. On the basis of these suggestions, a series of courses and schools were established which would cover all phases of training and satisfy both the Field Army and the Replacement Army. It is interesting to note that the number of courses proposed by the units far exceeded the number already established.

1. Schools and Courses in the Field Army

The majority of courses for the Field Army was given in the arm and service schools of the Replacement Army. Since the capacity of these schools was limited, it was necessary to establish training facilities in the Field Army. The advantage of these courses was that the students could be returned to their field unit rapidly, should the situation at the front make it necessary, and they would not be forced to spend the time journeying between the front line and Germany. Besides the army arm and service school and the division combat school (see chapter III), the following courses were established in the Field Army to train officers, NCOs, and specialists.

Army School I was established for battalion commanders of all arms and services. The training within the school was identical to the battalion commanders course of the Replacement Army. This school was controlled directly by the training branch of the General Staff. The Chiefs of Arms and Services could, at the same time, issue directives regarding the training of their arm or service. This school was established in the vicinity of General Staff Headquarters (eastern front) although a part of the training was carried out on the western front.

Army School II, also established in the vicinity of the General Staff Headquarters, conducted courses for company commanders of the infantry only. Partisan warfare was the subject most stressed at this school. The school was controlled by the Branch Foreign Armies East of the General Staff. The Chief of Infantry, however, directed the training insofar as it concerned his branch.

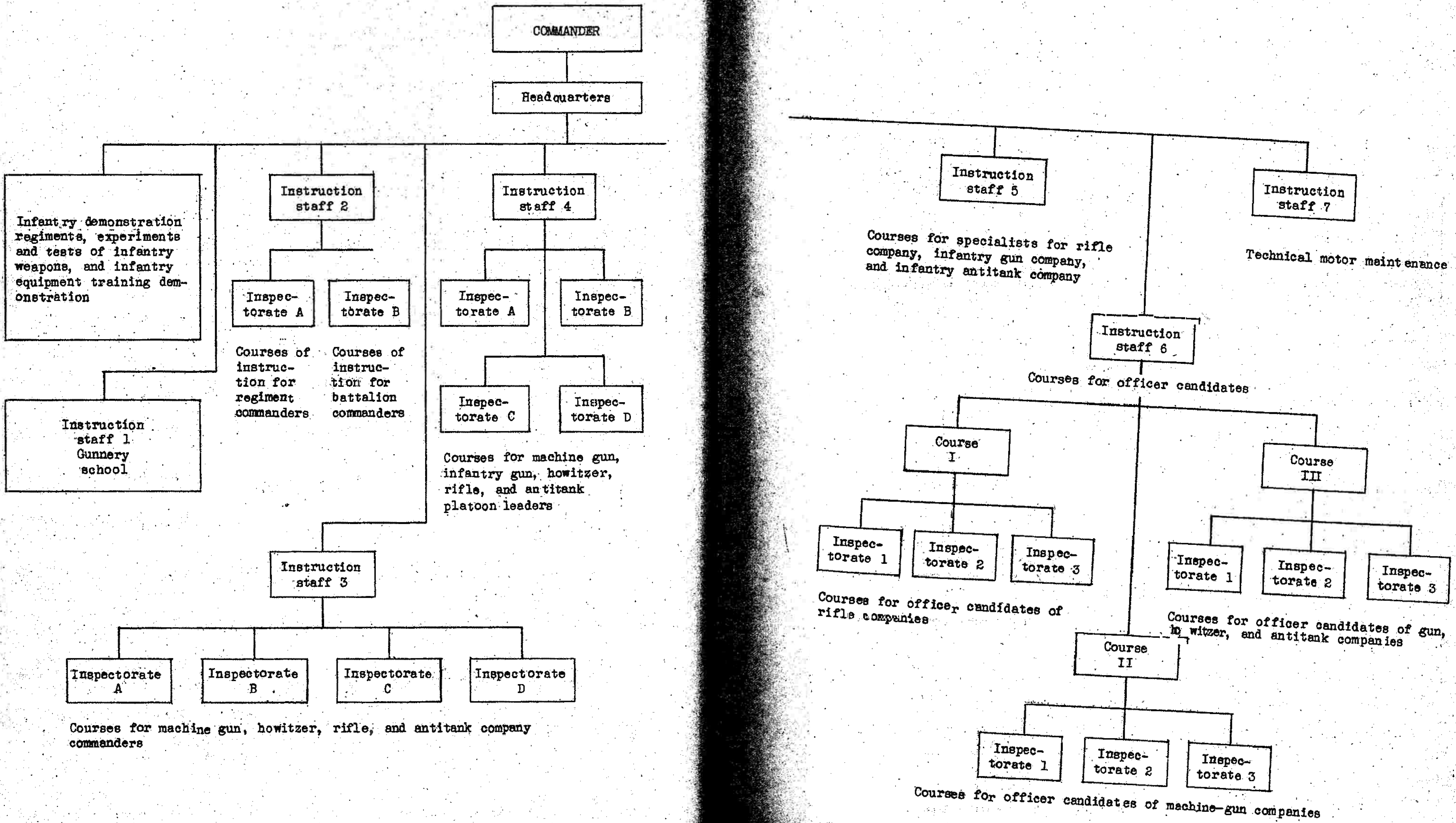
A course for snipers was established at each army of the Field Army. At first, these courses were held in accordance with the requirements of the field units. The courses, proving successful, were eventually given a definite table of organization and became an integral part of each army. These courses were established at the army supply center and were controlled by the army commander.

The best riflemen of the field units attended these courses and were equipped by the supply center. The snipers retained their weapons and equipment at all times even if they were returned to the Replacement Army as casualties.

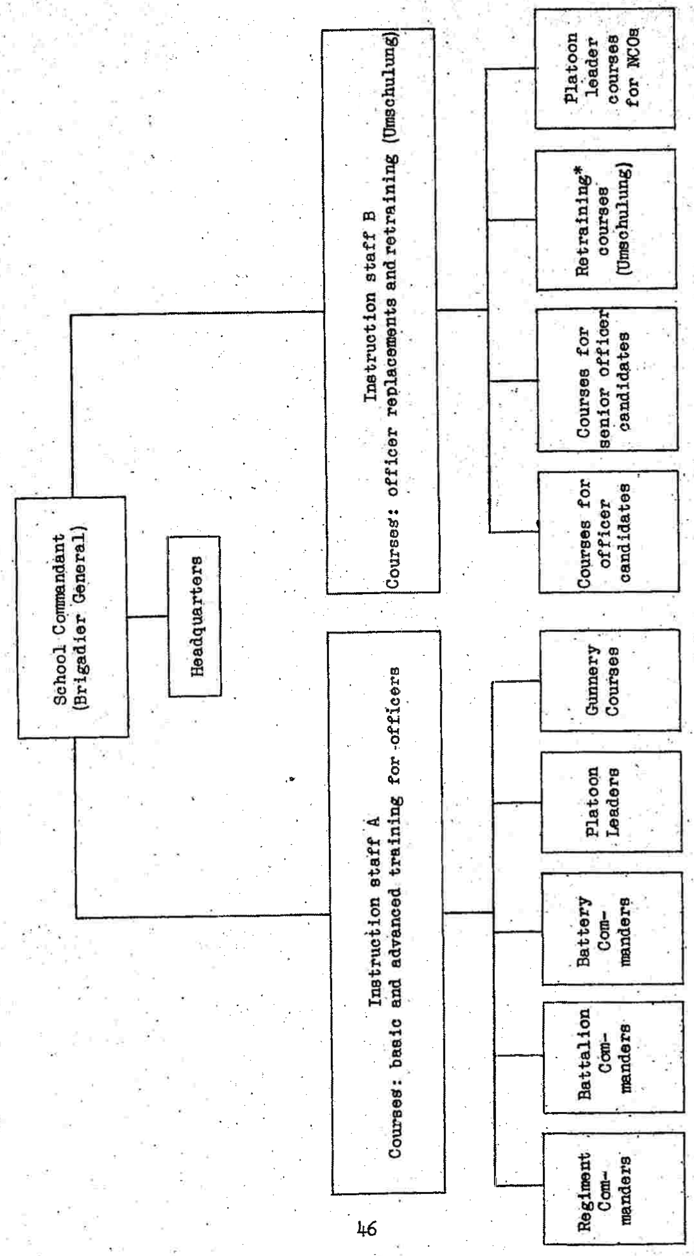
To train sufficient interpreters for the requirements of the Field Army, the Branch Foreign Armies East established two interpreter schools and the Branch Foreign Armies West established one. The students were chosen from linguists, who were given further training in military phraseology, translation, and technique of interrogation.

Engineer schools were established by and in the vicinity of each army group headquarters. They were controlled directly by the General of Engineers of the army

ORGANIZATION OF THE INFANTRY SCHOOL


COMMANDER
Headquarters
Infantry demonstration regiments, experiments and tests of infantry weapons, and infantry equipment training demonstration
Instruction staff 1 Gunnery school
Instruction staff 2
Inspectorate A
Inspectorate B
Courses of instruction for regiment commanders
Courses of instruction for battalion commanders
Instruction staff 4
Inspectorate A
Inspectorate B
Inspectorate C
Inspectorate D
Courses for machine gun, infantry gun, howitzer, rifle, and antitank platoon leaders
Instruction staff 3
Inspectorate A
Inspectorate B
Inspectorate C
Inspectorate D
Courses for machine gun, howitzer, rifle, and antitank company commanders
Instruction staff 5
Courses for specialists for rifle company, infantry gun company, and infantry antitank company
Instruction staff 7
Technical motor maintenance
Instruction staff 6
Courses for officer candidates
Course I
Inspectorate 1
Inspectorate 2
Inspectorate 3
Courses for officer candidates of rifle companies
Course III
Inspectorate 1
Inspectorate 2
Inspectorate 3
Courses for officer candidates of gun, howitzer, and antitank companies
Course II
Inspectorate 1
Inspectorate 2
Inspectorate 3
Courses for officer candidates of machine-gun companies

ORGANIZATION OF THE CHEMICAL WARFARE SCHOOL


School Commandant (Brigadier General)
Headquarters
Instruction staff B
Courses: officer replacements and retraining (Umschulung)
Platoon leader courses for NCOs
Retraining* courses (Umschulung)
Courses for senior officer candidates
Courses for officer candidates
Instruction staff A
Courses: basic and advanced training for officers
Gunnery Courses
Platoon Leaders
Battery Commanders
Battalion Commanders
Regiment Commanders

* Officers transferred into the chemical warfare service from other branches.

group, and were primarily concerned with training potential engineer company commanders. In addition, officers, NCOs, and men were trained in the use of new weapons, equipment, and combat methods. Furthermore, instruction was received in such specialized methods of combat as, for example, the construction of bridges and improvised methods of tank ferrying. These methods were revived with a view to the ultimate withdrawal on the Russian front, and the fact that they had been used rarely in the position warfare which existed at that time. Demonstration units were created from engineer battalions which were at rest in rear areas or had been withdrawn from the front to be reinforced and re-equipped.

In addition to the army group engineer schools, the Western Theater Commander established special engineer schools for potential company commanders as well as for company commanders. The special company commanders courses were attended by officers who had commanded units on the eastern front, and who had been transferred, with their units, to the western front. At these courses the Officers were acquainted with the equipment and combat methods which were in use on the western front and with which many of them were unfamiliar.

2. Schools and Courses in the Replacement Army

While basic training of recruits was primarily a responsibility of the replacement and training units of the Replacement Army, the arm and service schools were responsible for the training of officers, officer candidates, NCOs, NCO candidates, and specialists of commissioned and noncommissioned grades for both the Field Army and the Replacement Army.

The arm and service schools conducted courses for regiment, battalion, and company or battery commanders, as well as for platoon leaders. There were also courses for commissioned and noncommissioned specialists. In addition, the arm and service schools conducted courses for officer candidates. Besides the normal officer candidate courses, the main arms, infantry and artillery, established special officer candidate courses to cope with the ever increasing demands.

As an aid to training, each arm and service school had at its disposal a demonstration unit. These units demonstrated methods to the student body, made tests of all new equipment, and worked out new combat methods. The demonstration units were directly under the school commander (colonel or general). All members of the units were required to have field experience, and from time to time, the units themselves were sent to the front for short periods to gain further experience. Toward the end of the war, the units were committed to action in various sectors of the front, and eventually the schools themselves were committed.

The arm and service schools, including courses and demonstration units, are listed as follows:

School	Courses	Demonstration Unit
INFANTRY		
Infantry School	Officers Officer candidates Gunnery Regiment, battalion, and company commanders	1 infantry regiment

School	Courses	Demonstration Unit
Mountain Infantry School	Mountain gunnery Mountain combat Officers Officer candidates and NCOs	1 mountain infantry battalion
Infantry Antiaircraft School	Divisional antiaircraft units Infantry unit officers	1 antiaircraft battalion
Winter Combat School	Officers and NCOs Skiing (summer and winter) Fighting on skis Construction of winter positions	2 special infantry companies
CAVALRY		
Reconnaissance and Cavalry School	Battalion, company, and platoon commanders Officer candidates Cavalry tactics	1 reconnaissance battalion
Army Riding and Driving School	Supply technicians Instructional officers in riding and driving Saddlers	
ARTILLERY		
Artillery School I	Artillery commanders and artillery staff officers Artillery regimental commanders Captains and first lieutenants (being trained as battalion commanders or for special appointments on the staffs of senior artillery commanders)	None
Artillery School II	Officer candidates observation and meteorological subjects (officers) Surveying and mapping Gunnery (battalion and battery commanders)	
Artillery School III	Officer candidates	5 artillery regiments (horse and motor drawn) were usually divided between Artillery School II and III
Mountain Artillery School	Officers Officer candidates Gunnery Regimental, battalion, and battery commanders	1 mountain artillery battalion

School	Courses	Demonstration Unit
Army Coast Artillery School	Officers Officer candidates Regiment, battalion, and battery commanders	1 coast artillery battalion
Assault Gun School	Officers Officer candidates Battalion and battery commanders	1 assault gun battalion
ENGINEERS		
Engineer School I	Officers Officer candidates	4 engineer battalions
Engineer School II (heavy bridge construction)	Officers Officer candidates Technical, official, and supply technicians of the engineers	1 engineer battalion
Fortress Engineer School	Officers Technical officials of the fortress engineers	1 fortress engineer battalion
Railway Engineers School	Officers Officer candidates Specialists Cable railway	3 railway engineer companies
Technical Troop	Technical specialists for the operation of factories and other installations	
SIGNAL		
Army Signal School I	Officers Officer candidates Officers of signal troops Officers of other arms and services	1 signal regiment
Army Signal School II	Technical officials of the signal branch Signal supply technicians	
SUPPLY		
Army Supply Troop School	Officers Officer candidates	2 supply troop companies
TRANSPORTATION		
Motor Transport School	Officers Officer candidates	None

School	Courses	Demonstration Unit
Motor Maintenance School	Officers Officials Specialists	
CHEMICAL WARFARE		
Chemical Warfare School (for chemical warfare troops only)	Officers Officer candidates Supply technicians	2 chemical warfare regiments
Gas Decontamination Schools I and II (for all other arms and services)	Officers and NCOs	
Army Air Defense Schools	Officers and specialists of all arms	

From 1939 to 1942, the arm and service schools, together with their demonstration units, were subordinate to the General Army Office. In 1942, the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army assumed this responsibility. With the reorganization in February 1945, all these schools were directly subordinate to the Inspectors of Arms and Services. The only exception was the Railway Engineer School which came under the immediate command of the Commander of the Replacement Army, since an inspector of railway engineers was contemplated only in the final days of the war.

Officer candidate and NCO schools were directly subordinate to the Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs. The courses for officer candidates at the arm or service schools were the responsibility of the school commandant, but were supervised by the Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs. Before 1944, supervision was carried out by the Inspector for Training and Education.

In addition to the arm and service schools described above, the service command of the Replacement Army controlled the following schools:*

Army Blacksmith Schools	(Responsible directly to the service command, but ultimately to the German High Command)
Army Cook Schools	(Responsible directly to the service command, but ultimately to the German High Command)

Service Command Schools of Cookery

Service Command Riding and Driving Schools

Apart from these courses established by the General Staff of the army, further short courses were held within the units of both the Field Army and the Replacement Army. These courses included the training of certain specialists such as sergeants major, pay sergeants, stable masters, weapons training NCOs, snipers, cooks, etc.

---

*Appendix 22 shows the courses conducted in all arm and service schools of the Replacement Army during the first six months of 1945. Also indicated are the purpose and length of each course and the grades of the students.

These specialists were trained in order to supplement any casualties in the field units or to form part of newly created units in the Replacement Army.

3. Special Officer Courses in the Field Army and the Replacement Army.

a. Courses for division, regiment, and battalion commanders of the Replacement Army

On the basis of new experiences, short courses were held from time to time for all unit commanders in the Replacement Army. These courses were conducted by the Chief of Training assisted by the Inspectors of Arms and Services, and lasted from one to two weeks. The object of these courses was to acquaint the officers with the functions and duties of the Replacement Army, to give instructions on new equipment, weapons, and tactics, and to aid the officers in carrying out their duties either with the equipment and facilities which would be available to them or by improvisation. Division commanders attended lectures and demonstrations by representatives of the different Inspectors of Arms and Services with the intention of offering them some insight into the training methods used by the various arms and services. Regiment and battalion commanders received instructions and lectures only in their particular arm or service.

b. Courses for convalescent officers in the Replacement Army

Each service command established three-week courses for those officers who were returning to their field or replacement units following hospitalization for wounds or sickness. These courses reviewed the officers' training and, in addition, gave instruction on new weapons and new tactics which may have appeared since the officer became a casualty. The convalescent officers themselves formed the instructor personnel for these courses. The courses were controlled by the service command and commanded by a senior convalescent officer.

These establishments were also carried out for convalescent NCOs and enlisted men in a similar manner and were called convalescent companies.

c. Courses for division and corps commanders of the Field Army

Courses for division and corps commanders took place for the first time during the summer of 1942 and for army commanders in 1943. These courses were established for the following reasons:

Officers often became division and corps commanders without undergoing General Staff training. It was found necessary to add to their tactical studies

Potential unit commanders with General Staff training in staff assignments needed a more practical study in leadership, training, and organization of larger units

These courses seemed to be the only way of disseminating the knowledge gained from experiences in the different theaters of war. The experiences would generally cover leadership, training, organization, and improvisation

These courses gave the respective unit commanders an insight into problems affecting the troops under their control.

These studies principally concerned corps and division. Questions on war organization and economics were answered in lectures given by specialists in the different fields, e.g., Chief of Organizational Section (Chef Organisationsabteilung) and Chief of Army Equipment (Chef Wehrmachtruestung). Inspection trips to defense plants were also included. Training methods were explained by visits to the various schools and courses.

d. Training of potential General Staff officers

In peacetime, General Staff training took place at the War Academy. The courses lasted for a period of two years during which the courses were periodically interrupted by practical tours. These tours consisted of attachments to the different arms and services in order to acquaint students with their functions. The training of General Staff officers during the war was considerably shortened because of the increasing demand for such officers by the formation of new units.

During the war, outstanding officers in field units were selected and recommended by their division commanders to the Army Personnel Office by which they were accepted and sent for training. Up to 1944, only Regular Army officers were allowed to become General Staff officers.

The program of training which lasted about 17 months was as follows:

First, a five-month period of practical training in staff service was given in the Field Army. Three months of this period were spent with a division staff, where the training consisted of two months with operations and intelligence, and one month with supply. The following two months were spent with a corps or army staff, preferably army, during which the studies were along the same lines as the first three months but with emphasis on intelligence. During both of these periods, actual operational problems were left in the hands of the students, particularly when the front was quiet or when the superior officers were away.

After this period, the students went on a six-week tour of arm and service schools of the Replacement Army. This tour was carried out to acquaint the students with the various branches. The schools involved in these tours were infantry, artillery, Panzer troops, engineer, signal, and chemical warfare service. The tour at the infantry, artillery and Panzer troops schools lasted about two weeks; the other schools were visited only for two or three days. These periods, however, varied according to the arm or service to which the officer belonged, and students were not attached to a school of their own arm or service. Here the students received a general background on organization, equipment, and cooperation of the different arms and their uses.

It was the original intention of the German High Command to have this arm and service training carried out with units of the Field Army. This did not materialize because of the uncertain military situation on the eastern front.

Following the tour of the arm and service schools of the Replacement Army, the potential staff officers were sent to the General Staff course. In these courses the students received a complete theoretical training covering all phases of the practical experiences and work which they had just completed, as well as a further theoretical study of all functions required of a General Staff officer.

At the beginning of the war, the General Staff courses were discontinued. Courses I and II, each of nine weeks, were established in Dresden on 15 January 1940, and completed on 14 July 1940. After a break of three months, the courses were again resumed in Berlin. Courses III and IV, also of nine weeks, were covered during the period 14 October 1940 to 15 March 1941. During this stage of the war, there was no great need for an increase in General Staff officers and no courses were held until after the sixth month of the war with Russia, when the shortage of General Staff officers first became apparent. Up to 20 February 1943, four more courses on General Staff training took place (V to VIII), each of nine-weeks duration. In each of the eight courses there were approximately 60 officers who were normally placed into four lecture groups.

On 1 January 1943, the General Staff course was once again given its prewar title, War Academy (Kriegsakademie). At this time, the attempt was made to increase the courses to six months, but it was not until Course XIII that this was achieved. At the same time, the student body was to be increased from 60 to 150 officers, but this again was not achieved until Course XI. From this time on, the shortage of General Staff officers was alarming. This was caused by deaths and discharges because of wounds or other reasons, and also by the fact that General Staff officers were being used with all the new types of formations that were being activated. This led to the establishment of double courses which overlapped, one course starting three months after the first one had begun. Limiting of these courses in November 1944 to 20 weeks and later to 16 weeks, was due only to the critical war situation.

In the early part of August 1943, the War Academy was moved from Berlin to Bad Salzbrunn. This change was due to the continued heavy air raids on Berlin. In October 1943, the school was moved to Hirschberg. Following the completion of Course XV, the War Academy was again moved to Bad Kissingen. This was brought about by the Russian offensive in late January 1945. From this time on, no more courses were held and the school was kept in name only and run by a small staff. A final move took place at the end of March 1945, when the school was moved to Lenggries following the western offensive.

The War Academy commander was a major general, and like the officer instructors, approximately 16, (lieutenant colonels or colonels), was a General Staff officer. The students were in the 25 to 30-year age group; the majority were captains, the rest majors. The peacetime training, which took place at the War Academy and lasted for two years, was a complete and thorough study of all General Staff assignments and duties. In contrast to these, the wartime courses trained the students to command combined arms and services, and gave them the necessary knowledge of the individual branches of the service. At the end of their course, the students were expected to be able to work efficiently on lower General Staff assignments under the control and guidance of their superior officers, with the object of becoming, as soon as possible, division operations officers. Because of the short duration of the courses, it was not possible to obtain the same breadth and thoroughness in all branches of training as in peacetime. It was obvious that a systematic conception of tactics could not be so thoroughly accomplished in 10 weeks as in the two years of the peacetime courses. Military history had to be omitted altogether and was not resumed until Course X. On the other hand, in contrast to the theoretical peacetime training, the students were able to hear lectures given by General Staff officers with wide combat experience; hence, it was possible, in these short courses, to train them sufficiently to carry out the duties of junior staff officer appointments up to and including a division operations officer.

Primary stress was laid on training in commanding and issuing orders with the division, i.e., infantry division, motorized division, Panzer division, light infantry division, and mountain division. In Course XI, a one-month course dealing with the regiment was initiated. Toward the end of every course, emphasis was laid on operational reviews of tactical exercises which were being carried out on a corps level. The chief object of the exercises was to teach the students to make judgments and decisions according to the situation and to train them in issuing orders. The tactics instructors were drawn from especially highly qualified and battle-experienced General Staff officers, who had served for at least one year as division staff officer at the front and had been trained at the academy in peacetime.

Training in the organization, function, and issuance of orders in the supply service of a division was carried out in conjunction with the tactical lessons.

Army and corps supply systems, insofar as they concerned the divisions, were also taught. An introduction into the organization and function of the entire supply system and into matters relating to military administration was given by means of special lectures. The instructors on these aspects of supply service were widely experienced General Staff officers who had served as army, corps, or division supply officers.

The students were given a general review of duties, organization and performance of the railways, and the transportation system for an infantry division, as well as an introduction into the principles of truck transportation. General Staff officers, who had had experience as chief transport officer at army, were used as instructors.

Chain of command, organization, and duties of the air force, and a technical introduction into the performance and tasks of the various types of aircraft were included in the course Cooperation between army and air force reconnaissance and combat was also discussed, and teachers were provided by the General Staff of the Air Force. Special letures on military and national history, and economic and political questions were given by experts in these fields. These included high ranking officers, university professors, industrialists, and leaders of the party and state.

The course at the War Academy closed with a 10-day tactical tour, which usually took place in Mecklenburg (northern Germany). It was designed to give the students a practical method of making use of the theoretical studies covered at the War Academy. This was in the form of tactical exercises without troops. Tactical and supply problems were realistically presented to the students in which all phases of major military operations were carried out. These problems were devoted mainly to infantry and Panzer divisions, and the students were taken into those areas in which the tactical exercises took place.

Following this, the students returned to the War Academy for promotion to major of the General Staff, and were then sent to the Field Army in the capacity of either supply or operations General Staff officer of a division.

For complete information on General Staff training, see the study The German General Staff.

e. Courses for senior adjutants

At the beginning of the war, nearly all establishments for senior adjutant (adjutants of divisions and higher units) were filled by Regular Army officers. The length of the war and the shortage of battalion and regiment commanders, positions which were being filled by senior adjutants, resulted in the replacement of Regular Army senior adjutants by older Reserve officers. This policy, however, was not particularly profitable, because these officers frequently did not possess the necessary vigor and initiative, which resulted in a lack of general care for the officer corps -- promotions, decorations, etc. For this reason, in the fall of 1942, younger, battle-experienced Regular Army officers were again used to fill these posts. At the same time, a number of the senior adjutants were for the first time detailed to attend senior adjutant courses of three weeks duration in Berlin. These courses were restricted, and conveyed to the students the ideas and principles of the Army Personnel Office on promotions, exchange of officers, potential officers, decorations, etc. by means of lectures from experts of the Army Personnel Office. In July 1943, these courses were extended to nine weeks. In contrast to the three-week courses, the officers detailed to attend these courses were chosen from potential senior adjutants. The courses were under the immediate control of the Army Personnel Office. The commander of the course was a senior adjutant with wide military experience in both peacetime and wartime. He had at his disposal one or two older officers, who had special experience in this field. The student body consisted, at first, of 40 officers for each course, and was later increased to 80 officers.

The aim of the nine-week course was to give the student a systematic training in his future type of work. The following subjects were dealt with:

Instruction on all relevant orders, regulations, etc. relating to the personnel section, such as promotions (especially preferential promotion), potential officers and their training, exchange of officers, education of officers, decorations, and casualties etc.

Keeping of personnel index files

Appointment of officers

Cooperation between the senior adjutant (IIa) with the operations officer (Ia) of the division or with the chiefs of staff of higher headquarters in personnel matters

Keeping of aptitude lists (Eignungslisten) for battalion, regiment, and division commanders.

In addition, lectures were given by officers of the Army Personnel Office and the high commands of the three services on general military questions, and by government, economic, and party representatives on their respective subjects. As the officers detailed to these courses were later to be re-employed as troop commanders, they were given further regiment and division training in tactical exercises without troops. The instructors for this training were drawn from the War Academy, or from the courses for regiment commanders. This training was further amplified by visiting the arm and service schools, courses, demonstration performances, and by trying out new weapons.

After passing the course, officers were posted as adjutant (IIa) of a division of the Field Army if they were fit for active service, or assigned to an appropriate command headquarters in the Replacement Army.

4. Training of Potential Line Officer Candidates

a. General

In the German Army, special attention was given to the training of potential officers even before the war. The training was carried out in the field units and in schools by specially selected and trained personnel. This principle was maintained up to the end of the war. In spite of the frequently inadequate supply of officer reserves, the training time for officer candidates was never shortened, but rather extended as the war progressed. Until the end of 1944, the time of training was roughly two years from the time a man was inducted until he was commissioned.

The Commander in Chief of the Army controlled training and education of officers in peacetime as well as during wartime. In peacetime, the office responsible to him was the Inspector of Officer Candidate Schools (Inspektion der Kriegschulen). This was changed at the beginning of the war into the office of the Inspector of Army Training and Education, which was further changed at the beginning of 1944 to the Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs in the Army.

The Army Personnel Office of the Army High Command controlled personnel matters, announced promotions, and determined assignments of officer candidates.

b. Peacetime training

(1) Regular officer candidates

The peacetime potential candidate made application to a regiment of his own choice in the Regular Army. He must have fulfilled the requirements for university entrance. Before being accepted, he had to meet the physical and mental requirements as laid down by the psychological testing branch of the Army.* Having passed all tests, he was accepted as a potential candidate, and entered the regiment as an officer candidate. The potential candidates were incorporated into a company of the regiment and trained independently, but were given the same basic training as all other army recruits. This basic training lasted for six months, at the end of which the potential candidate was promoted to lance corporal.

Assuming the potential candidate belonged to the infantry, he was first trained in a rifle company. In the following six months, he continued his training in the rifle company but spent short periods with the heavy weapons companies (machine gun, infantry howitzer, and antitank). During this time, he was trained as a squad leader in the rifle company. Should the potential candidate be in another arm or service, the training parallel was the same. Following this six-month period, the potential candidate was promoted to corporal. The regiment commander was responsible for the potential candidates' training, and he selected an officer (second lieutenant) to supervise their training and education, and to advise them.

This training was followed by a nine-month assignment to a military officer candidate school. The principal subjects taught in this school were tactics, general military knowledge, weapons training, and engineering. Secondary subjects were signal, motor transport, medical, and veterinary services. These subjects were taught by officers of the various arms and services. Furthermore, organization, equipment, and operation of the armored forces and air forces were dealt with. Practical training was given in infantry combat training, during which officer candidates commanded squads or platoons. Target practice was continued with rifle, light machine gun, and pistol. Furthermore, sports, riding, and motoring were practiced. Above and beyond these subjects, the general view was widened by lectures on military history, by informative trips within Germany lasting several weeks, by inspection trips to industrial plants and battle fields, and by instructive demonstrations by the navy and air force. In tactics, only basic principles were taught. Terrain analysis and the ability to command were developed by problems with infantry battalions, together with heavy weapons units. Besides these purely tactical lessons, simulated combat problems and sand table exercises were held. During these problems and exercises the cadets were assigned as battalion or company commanders or adjutants, issuing and executing orders as if in actual command of troops.

In the fifth month of training at this school, the potential officer candidate was promoted to officer candidate, and at the end of an additional four months, to senior officer candidate. After graduation from officer training school, the candidate was assigned to a two-month course at his arm or service school (infantry, artillery, engineering, etc.) There he continued an intensive training period as platoon leader in his particular arm or service, and was prepared to assume his responsibility as basic training instructor. After this the candidate was returned to his regiment for a one to two-month period as a platoon commander, and was then promoted to second lieutenant.**

---

*For a sample of the psychological examination, see appendix 23.
**For an outline of a Regular officer candidate's career in peacetime, see appendix 25.

(2) Reserve officer candidates

The selection of Reserve officer candidates in peacetime was made from two categories of drafted or volunteer personnel.

The first category consisted of those men who were normally drafted into the army for two years. These soldiers underwent their normal basic training for a period of six months. Any soldiers, regardless of education, who showed special aptitude as possible Reserve officers were selected by the company commander and recommended to the regiment commander as such. When accepted by the regiment commander, they received the title of potential Reserve officer candidates (no promotion). In the following six months, they continued their unit training as all other soldiers but took part in the NCO schooling of the company. At the end of their first year, they were promoted to lance corporal, and in the remaining year of their service were used as assistant NCO instructors and as squad leaders. At the end of their compulsory service time (two years), the more talented were promoted to corporal, but all were discharged from the army.

The second category consisted of personnel of the older age groups, who were not obliged to serve a two-year compulsory service time but only two months. Soldiers selected from this group had to serve an additional two months and received a promotion to lance corporal. They were also designated potential Reserve officer candidates.

With the discharge of both these groups, additional Reserve officer candidate training* was carried out over the next years in the form of three Reserve officer exercises. These Reserve officer candidates were periodically recalled from civilian life to rejoin their original regiments for short periods to carry out these exercises.

During the first period, which lasted four weeks, the Reserve officer candidate was trained as a squad leader and, if not already a corporal, was promoted to corporal.

During the second period, which lasted six weeks, he was trained as a platoon leader, and the period ended with his promotion to sergeant of the Reserve.

The third period lasted four weeks and continued the training of the Reserve officer candidate as platoon leader. Following this final period, he was recommended to the Army Personnel Office for promotion to second lieutenant of the Reserve.

c. Wartime training

(1) Regular officer candidates

At the beginning of the war, the officer candidate training periods were shortened to allow for a numerically larger officer corps.

From 1939 to 1942, the volunteer recruit made application before enlisting at the officer candidate selection centers, which were located in all service commands of the Replacement Army. The requirements were slightly lower than those required in peacetime. Upon enlistment, the potential candidate was assigned to a replacement and training unit of the Replacement Army. The basic training took three months, and was referred to as the first training period. The second training period, which also lasted three months, was devoted to NCO training as squad or equivalent unit leader. At the end of the second training period, the potential officer candidate was promoted to lance corporal. Following the above period, which now covered a total time of six months, the potential officer candidate was sent to the Field Army on his front trial (Frontbewährung), where he acted as squad leader for a period of two months. The front trial was considered the deciding factor for granting the commission. Front trial did not necessarily mean actual combat, and duty with a rear echelon was accepted as long as the possibility of exercising leadership ability was given. Having proved capable, the potential officer candidate was promoted to officer candidate and sent back to the Replacement Army to attend an officer candidate course. These courses took place at an arm or service school and lasted from three to four months. (The military officer candidate schools which lasted for nine months were abolished at the beginning of the war.) These courses primarily taught the necessary requirements for officers in wartime.*

---

*For outline of Reserve officer career in peacetime, see appendix 26.

Beside actual weapon training, an essential part of the officer candidate courses was to furnish a foundation of military knowledge and to educate the candidate. Every arm and service conducted its tactical and combat training primarily within the limits of its own arm and service, i.e., the infantry carried out tactical problems within the framework of a reinforced infantry battalion; the armored troops limited themselves to a unit of an armored formation (armored battalion or armored infantry battalion). Artillery, engineers, and signal units had a special program of training according to whether or not they were horse-drawn or motorized. Thus it can be said that training at an officers school in peacetime was comprehensive. The officer candidate school courses originally ended with the promotion to staff sergeant. The promotion to lieutenant took place immediately following the officer candidate course.**

From 1942 to the end of the war, basic training and advanced training changed.

The first and second training periods now became four months each, but the training schedule was maintained as before. A third training period was added which lasted for two months and in which the potential candidate acted as a NCO squad leader.***

From 1943 on, four months of the second and third periods of training were carried out at the Army NCO schools of the Replacement Army. The main stress was placed on training as squad and equivalent unit leaders.

The front trial period remained the same until 1944, after which the time was continuously shortened to 10 days. Attempts at heroics by young officers proved too costly and the time was cut down to stop the unnecessary loss of life. Following the front trial, the candidate returned to the Replacement Army and entered the officer candidate course of his arm or service school. The infantry and artillery had, at this time, established their own officer candidate schools, as the Regular arm and service schools could neither accommodate nor train sufficient candidates to meet Field Army requirements. The time and training at these schools and courses remained the same as before.

To amplify the Regular Army officer candidate training, an additional course was added for senior officer candidates. This course lasted for three months, and took place at both the arm and service schools, and officer candidate schools. These

---

*For a sample outline of officer candidate school courses, see appendix 27.

**For training schedule for potential Regular line officer candidates (1939 to March 1942), see appendix 28.

***For training schedule for potential Regular line officers in wartime, see appendix 29.

additional courses gave intensified training for platoon leaders and incorporated, in detail, the special duties of adjutants, company commanders, etc. Commissioning, under this new organization, came after the completion of the senior officer candidate course.

(2) Reserve officer candidates

At the beginning of the war, a change took place in the selection of Reserve officer candidates. The potential candidate could only be selected after he had proved himself in the Field Army. No thought was given to the selection of Reserve officer candidates in the Replacement Army. All soldiers underwent the normal basic training in the Replacement Army, and were sent to the Field Army under the regular replacement system. After having served with the field units for some time, specially qualified soldiers were selected as potential officer candidates. These soldiers were recommended by the company commanders to their regiment commanders, who in turn promoted them to corporals and Reserve officer candidates. The candidates were then sent to attend an officer candidate course at the same arm or service school as was attended by the Regular officer candidates in the Replacement Army. From this period on, the Reserve officer candidate training was the same as the Regular officer candidate.*

With the progress of the war (1942), the need for an increasing number of officer replacements for the Field Army, as well as for many newly activated units, made it necessary to increase recruiting of officer material from the ranks and to give these men a more intensive training.** Thus, Reserve officer candidates were no longer selected from the Field Army alone, but were chosen from soldiers who, while still in the Replacement Army, embarked directly on this potential officer candidate training. In 1943, Reserves as well as Regulars could enlist with the privilege of being considered officer candidates from the outset.

The training of Reserve officer candidates was practically the same as that of Regular officer candidates. The main difference was that, during the second and third training periods, the Reserve remained with his replacement and training unit and received the NCO training in the unit. The Regular officer candidate, on the other hand, received his NCO training during this same period, but at an Army NCO school. The Army NCO school, whose capacities were limited, could not accomodate all NCOs. An advantage in this arrangement could be seen, for the replacement and training unit now had an abundance of NCO instructional personnel at their disposal for the normal training of other recruits.

Following the NCO training, the potential Regular and Reserve officer candidate went to the Field Army for the front trial. Reserve candidates were then promoted to Reserve officer candidates and sent back to the Replacement Army to take part in an officer candidate course for three or four months. In addition, the senior Reserve officer candidate course, lasting three months, was added to the training of the Reserves. This course was carried out by the service commands in their own establishments, but was supervised by the Inspector General of Potential Officers and NCOs in the army. Promotion to second lieutenant followed the return of the candidate to his field unit.

During the course of the war, it was found that the officer candidate courses could not accommodate sufficient personnel to meet the demands of the Field Army.

---

*For stages of training for potential Reserve line officers (1939 to March 1942), see appendix 30.

**For states of training for potential Reserve line officers (1942 to 1945), see see appendix 31.

To remedy this stiuation, the courses were enlarged and new courses were continuously established.* For example, in January 1942, the infantry had only one officer candidate course, at Doeberitz, which accommodated 1,500 students. In November 1944, there were 11 officer candidate courses for the infantry with a total of 18,000 students.

d. Special regulations

Beyond this normal officer candidate training plan, there were special arrangements whereby those who were not candidates could become officers. At the beginning of the war, for example, Regular Army NCOs with more than five years of service could be promoted automatically to officers without having attended any course. Furthermore, in 1943, veterans of World War I who had obtained NCO grade, were commissioned in the Replacement Army after a four-week course without a previous trial period at the front. They were exclusively used in regional defense units or as administrative officers in the zone of the interior.

In 1944, an attempt was made to alleviate the officer shortage by promoting Reserve sergeants to commissioned grade. Only such sergeants who were acting platoon commanders were selected, and only two courses of four weeks each were held. The entire attempt was dropped thereafter as it was found that the candidates could not learn the expected amount in so short a time.

In retrospect, it can be said that the German Army training authorities were satisfied with their system of officer training, incorporating ten months basic training in the Replacement Army, a short trial period as NCO at the front, and finally, eight months at an officer candidate and post officer candidate course. The time allotted for training was probably the most that could be allowed under the pressure of war. The importance attached to officer procurement is demonstrated by the fact that this length of training was maintained until February 1945, in spite of the urgent demands of the front. It was just prior to this time that the Office of Chief of Training was abolished, and all training duties were taken over by the Commander of the Replacement Army. The duties of educating and training all officer candidates was now intrusted to the newly created Inspector for Officer Candidates of the Army. This office was immediately subordinate to the Commander of the Replacement Army but maintained close and direct liaison with the Army Personnel Office. The decline in selection and training standards occasioned during the war,** despite efforts to maintain the peacetime level, can be traced in no small measure to the shortage of good instructive potential officer material. Furthermore, much good personnel was taken away to enlarge the SS and other branches of service. Another important factor was the lack of weapons for training purposes.

Although the training received by officer candidates deteriorated as the war progressed, the spirit of the German Army leaders was still a substantial weapon in itself, as shown when entire officer candidate schools were committed as units in the later stages of the war.

5. Training of Specialist Officer Candidates

a. Peacetime

In the German Army, a definite distinction was made between specialist officers and line officers. Specialist officers were primarily responsible for technical tasks and only secondarily in command of units of enlisted men who aided in the accomplishment of their technical tasks. Among the specialist categories were medical, veterinary, ordnance, specialist engineering, and later, during the war, supply administrative, and judicial officers. Line officers included those who were in actual command of field or training units and also those charged with staff functions. Line officers were expected to alternate frequently between command and staff assignments, whereas specialist officers were expected to function only within the technical limits of their own particular specialty.

Before the war, direct enlistment as specialist officer candidate was possible only for those three specialist courses which required university training, i.e., medicine, veterinary, and engineering. For these courses, men could enlist immediately after graduation from high school; whereas several years service as a Regular Army NCO in ordnance or artillery was required in order for a man to qualify for the ordnance officer candidate course which was not given at a university.

The candidates for these academic officer courses first received six months basic training with a field unit. As a rule, the candidates were assigned to the following branches for their basic training: medical corps candidates to the infantry; veterinary candidates to horse-drawn or mounted units; and specialist engineers to the armored forces.

After six months of training, preferably in common with the line officer candidates, they were sent to their special officer candidate school with rank of private first class and began their studies. Their studies were of the same duration, followed the same regulations, and were given at the same universities as civilian students. All exams had to be taken at the regular time, and the cost of studies had to be paid for by the officer candidate himself, although this was easily covered by his pay. Besides these academic specialist courses, there was also an ordnance officer candidate career. Men could not enter this course as officer candidates directly from civilian life. Instead, they were recruited from the professional ordnance NCOs who had proved themselves efficient and capable officer material.

(1) Regular officer candidates

Following six months basic training with a troop unit, medical officer candidates were sent to officer candidate school with the rank of private first class in the medical corps, and transferred to the Military Medical Academy in Berlin. During their time of study, the officer candidates were supervised and further educated by an especially capable senior officer of the Military Medical Academy. This officer guided the education of one annual class of medical corps candidates from the time of their assignment to the Military Medical Academy until their promotion to senior medical officer candidate (Unterarzt). Between terms, the candidates continued weapons training with their original unit.

After a training time of 10 months, candidates were promoted to corporal. Upon the successful completion of the National Medical Examinations, i.e., after the eleventh school term, they were promoted to the grade of senior medical officer candidate. Some were immediately transferred to a medical unit or a troop unit, while others remained with the Military Medical Academy until their promotion to medical lieutenant (Assistenzarzt), and were meanwhile employed at a university hospital.

Veterinary officer candidates received basic training for a period of six months in a mounted or horse-drawn unit, after which they were transferred to the Military Veterinary Academy at Hannover, where they attended the Veterinary College of Hannover. For administration and military training during vacations, the same provisions applied as for medical candidates. The promotions corresponded to those of the medical officer candidates.

---

*For a survey of officer candidate courses, see appendix 32.

**For general comments on requirements for specialist commissions, see appendixes 34 and 35.

After their National Veterinary Examination (usually after the tenth semester), they received three months training in the inspection of meat and foodstuffs, then six months training at an army smithy and a veterinary examination station. After a final probationary period of at least two months in a mounted or horse-drawn unit, they were promoted to lieutenants (veterinary).

Regular Army officer candidates for the branch of specialist engineers were selected from among students such as machinists, motor mechanics, electricians, architects, and surveyors. These officer candidates received six months basic training in an armored unit, and then were transferred to the academy for specialist engineer officers in Stuttgart, where they attended the Technical College. For military training and administration, the same provisions as given for medical candidates applied. Between terms, they were given practical work in factories or received military training in their original unit. They were promoted to senior officer candidates (specialist engineers) after successfully passing their examinations (Diplom-Hauptrüfung), and to engineer lieutenants after passing the State examinations.

In peacetime, soldiers could, if they so desired, make application to become potential Regular ordnance officer candidates. This application was made at the induction center where they were given, and were required to pass, the potential officer candidate physical and psychological examination. The applicants were expected to have completed their high school education.

Having been accepted as potential officer candidates, the soldiers were assigned to an artillery regiment for one year of basic training. The basic training was the same as that given to all artillery recruits.

After completing their basic training, the potential candidates were promoted to the grade of lance corporal and sent to an Army Ordnance School. During the two-year training period at the school, the potential candidates received practical instruction in all German ammunition, weapons, and equipment. After successful completion of this training, the potential candidates were promoted to corporals and assigned to an artillery regiment or an ordnance depot for an indefinite time. At this time, they were employed as ordnance NCOs, and after a short probationary period, were promoted to ordnance technicians (sergeants). If the potential candidates proved that they possessed the necessary officer qualifications insofar as it concerned leadership, ability, and knowledge, they were again sent to the Army Ordnance School for further ordnance training for a period of one year. During this period, they received advanced instruction in the handling and examining of ammunition, weapons, and equipment in addition to instruction as to the duties of ordnance unit commanders. On completion of the course at the Army Ordnance School, the potential officer candidates qualified as ordnance officer candidates and were assigned to an ordnance depot for two more years. During these two years, the officer candidates filled the position of an officer on the tables of organization, and were promoted to senior ordnance technician during this period. At the end of this period, they were promoted to second lieutenant by the Army Personnel Office on recommendation of the director of ordnance stores. A minimum of six years was required for a potential candidate to qualify for, and be promoted to, second lieutenant in ordnance. During this time, he received a complete and thorough training in the supply and handling of all ammunition, weapons, and equipment within the German Army. A qualified second lieutenant was able to command an ordnance unit or occupy a position on the staff of a field formation headquarters.

Potential Reserve ordnance officer candidates were selected from artillery recruits who were serving their two year compulsory service and who, during their six months basic training, applied to become ordnance officers. On recommendation of their regiment commander and after having completed their basic training, they were sent to the Army Ordnance School to complete their two years' training. The training at the school was identical with that given to Regular potential officer candidates except that the time was cut from two years to one and one-half years. Despite this shorter period of training, the ordnance training in such matters as ammunition, weapons, and equipment was not reduced, but drill, sports, and riding were partially eliminated.

Having completed their training at the school, the recruits were promoted to the grade of Reserve corporal in the ordnance branch and discharged from the army.

Potential Reserve ordnance officer candidates, like all other potential Reserve officer candidates, had to complete their training after their discharge. In contrast to potential candidates of other arms and services who attended three maneuver periods to complete their training, the potential ordnance candidates attended the Army Ordnance School for a period of four to six months. This training was carried out at one time. Although the recruits were assigned to the Army Ordnance School, the actual training was given either at an ordnance depot or an army ammunition depot. During this training period, which consisted of advanced training in ammunition, weapons, and equipment, the recruits were promoted to Reserve ordnance technicians (sergeants) and recommended as Reserve ordnance officer candidates. On completion of the four to six months training, they were further promoted to Reserve senior ordnance technicians and again discharged. On recommendation by the Director of Ordnance Stores, the candidates were promoted to Reserve ordnance officers with the grade of second lieutenant. This was done through the Army Personnel Office.

(2) Reserve officer candidates

In peacetime, all Reserve officer candidates for medical, veterinary, and special engineer branches were procured through voluntary enlistment. This fact alone was responsible for an insufficient supply of Reserve officers in these fields. During the war, this failure became increasingly marked as the demand often exceeded the supply of available Reserve officer specialists.

The careers of Reserve officer candidates for medical, veterinary, and special engineer branches were divided into two categories. The first category consisted of personnel serving their two-year compulsory service, regardless of arm or service. These recruits had as yet no special school qualification for their intended career. During these two years, their training consisted of the normal training prescribed for all troops. In order for these recruits to continue their Reserve officer career, it was necessary that they be recommended as officer candidates in the arm or service in which they were serving their two-year term. If they were not recommended as officer candidates in their arm or service they could not continue their career as specialist candidates after discharge. If they were recommended, they received their discharge as officer candidates in their present arm of service and, as civilians, began the studies required for specialist officers.

During their university studies, Reserve officer candidates were compelled to attend the annual fall maneuvers conducted for all reserve personnel. During these maneuvers, which were usually held during school holidays, the medical students were attached to infantry units; veterinary students, to mounted or horse-drawn units; and special engineer students, to armored troops. During these maneuvers, the students, now Reserve officer candidates, were employed as assistants to the unit specialist officers. Occasionally, however, a candidate might be attached to a unit of his special branch. Thus a medical officer candidate could be attached to a division medical unit. These candidates were compelled to attend three maneuvers the same as the Reserve line officer candidate* and received corresponding promotions during this time.

Upon completion of the third maneuver period, the candidates were recommended as Reserve officers in their special branch. This recommendation was made by the unit specialist officer to the Army Personnel Office.

The second category consisted of personnel who had graduated from their civilian profession prior to the introduction of two year compulsory service (1936). This personnel (age group 1913 or older) was compelled, according to the compulsory service regulations, to serve eight weeks with a troop unit. If, during this period, one volunteered as Reserve officer candidate in his special field, and if he was considered acceptable, he had to complete a second period of training of eight weeks. On conclusion of the second eight-week training period, he was promoted to Reserve officer candidate in his special branch and was discharged. From this time on the career of this second category of Reserve officer candidate was identical with that of the first category in that he served during three fall maneuvers and was then recommended for promotion to second lieutenant in his special branch.

b. Wartime

(1) Regular officer candidate

The beginning of the war and the enlargement of the German Army brought about several important changes in the selection and training of specialist officer candidates. The specialist training at universities remained the same as in peacetime, although it was found necessary, in 1944, to shorten this period of training as well. The regulations laid down in 1939 applied equally to medical, veterinary, and specialist engineer officer and candidates, and they received their military specialist training with the same arm and service and at the same universities as in peacetime.

Medical officer candidates were selected from medical students or from potential medical students. These students, while still at school, reported to their induction center and applied for enlistment as potential officer candidates in the medical branch. Each service command had a joint induction center for officer candidates of all arms and services. After the students had passed a medical and psychological examination at the induction center, they were recommended for induction as potential officer candidates. Shortly after the examination, normally at the end of the present school term, the students were called up and assigned to an infantry training and replacement battalion. The potential officer candidates received a three-month period of basic training followed by an additional three-month training period as squad leader. In 1943, this period was increased to include a two-month period of training as a platoon leader. After this six-month training period in the Replacement Army, the potential officer candidates were promoted to lance corporals and assigned to an infantry battalion of the Field Army to complete a three-month front trial. This front trial period was shortened as the war progressed, and at the end of the war a 10-day front trial was sufficient. At the end of this period the potential officer candidates were promoted to the grade of corporal and approved by the regiment commander as an officer candidate. If, at any time during the training with either the Replacement Army or the Field Army, the potential candidates were found unsuitable as future officers, the regiment commander could recommend to the Army Personnel Office that the potential candidates be taken off the list. In this case, the potential candidates continued to serve as infantry troops with the rank of lance corporal, but in special border line cases they could be given a further training period in the Field Army.

---

*For outline of Reserve officer candidates in peacetime, see appendix 26.

Officer candidates, upon successfully completing their military training were transferred to the Military Medical Academy in Berlin and continued their medical career at the Berlin University. After a minimum of three months at the academy, officer candidates were promoted to officer candidate sergeants. On completion of the first semester and after having passed successfully their first medical examination, they were promoted to senior medical candidates.

A complete medical course consisted of eleven semesters, or five and one-half years, at the end of which, the students were promoted to second lieutenants in the medical branch. This period was shortened to nine semesters in 1944, and the senior officer candidates were sent, as such, to the front. They could not, however, be employed as doctors in hospitals. They received their commissions in due course.

The training periods for potential veterinary and specialist engineer candidates were the same as for potential medical candidates. Potential veterinary candidates received their training with mounted or horse-drawn units, and potential specialist engineer candidates received theirs with armored troops. The length of special training in universities for veterinary and specialist engineer candidates was shorter than that of medical candidates, as their studies were limited in scope Because of the shortage of line officers, the specialist engineer officer candidate training was discontinued in January 1943, and except for those candidates who were about to take their government examination, all candidates were transferred to line officer candidate schools. A small portion was taken over into the newly formed motor maintenance troops.

Potential Regular ordnance officer candidates were selected from Regular ordnance technicians (sergeants) with more than five years service, and from volunteers.

As all Regular ordnance technicians in order to attain their present grade, had already attended the Army ordnance school for a period of two years and had also served with an ordnance depot, their necessary qualifications consisted of two months front-line service with ordnance or artillery units and the essential physical and mental qualifications required of all potential officer candidates.

Having been selected as potential officer candidates, and after the two-month front-line service, the ordnance technicians were again sent to the Army Ordnance School.

The training at the school consisted entirely of ordnance subjects and was in reality a shortened version of the one-year peacetime course. Upon completion of the course, the potential candidates were promoted to senior ordnance technicians and appointed ordnance officer candidates. They were then assigned to an ordnance depot or unit of either the Field Army or Replacement Army and, after an additional two months of duty as an officer, they were promoted to second lieutenant (ordnance).

Recruits could also apply to become potential ordnance officer candidates either upon enlistment or during their military career with their arm or service. Volunteers, who passed their physical and psychological examination upon enlistment, were assigned to the artillery for both their basic and field training. Volunteers from other arms and services completed their basic and field training with their own arm or service. In either case, the potential candidates were compelled to serve one year, including a minimum of two months at the front, before they received any specialist training. Having completed a minimum of one year service, the potential candiates were assigned to the Army Ordnance School for a period of four months. Here they received practical instruction in ammunition, weapons, and equipment. Next they were sent to an army ammunition depot for one month, where advanced training in the handling and care of all German ammunition was given. A further one-month period of training at an army ordnance depot was required before the potential officer candidates were promoted to ordnance technicians and returned to the Field Army. At the ordnance depot, they were taught army organization and supply systems as well as the directing and loading of supply columns. In the Field Army, the ordnance technicians were employed for two months in field ordnance units and again returned to the Army Ordnance School. Here they attended a three-month course on advanced ordnance subjects, and upon successful completion were promoted to senior ordnance technicians, and appointed ordnance officer candidates.

As senior ordnance technicians, the candidates were sent to the Field Arm where they performed the duties of an officer with ordnance or at a unit headquarters. After two months as such, the candidates were promoted to second lieutenants (ordnance).

(2) Reserve officer candidates

With the war, the total of Reserve officers for specialist services was greatly increased. In addition, Reserve officers for ordnance were established. This did not exist in peacetime.

The length of training for potential medical, veterinary, and specialist engineer Reserve officer candidates* varied according to their age group and according to whether or not they had completed previous military training. The age groups were subdivided into those potential candidates who were graduates, those who were students in their specialist branches, and those who had not yet begun their specialist studies.

Whereas in peacetime, all potential Reserve officer candidates of the medical, veterinary, and specialist engineer branches were compelled to serve two eight-week periods with a troop unit, in wartime, they had to serve a one to three-month period in the Replacement Army and, according to the age group, a further two to six-month period in the Field Army. This training, like that of the Regular potential officer candidates, was carried out with infantry units for medical candidates, with mounted or horse-drawn units for veterinary candidates, and with armored troops for specialist engineer candidates.

After this military training, potential candidates who had already graduated from their studies were sent to a unit of their own branch. Potential candidates, who had partially completed their studies, were transferred to the Military Medical Academy and continued their studies at the Berlin University. Upon graduation, and after three months probation as a senior officer candidate, they were promoted to second lieutenant.

During the war, Reserve ordnance officers originated from one of three different categories.

The first category consisted of fully-trained ordnance technicians who had been discharged after serving the 12-year period in the Regular army. These technicians had already completed the training at the Army Ordnance School, as well as the required period at ordnance and ammunition depots. At the beginning of the war, this category of personnel was recalled and directly promoted to second lieutenant (in the Reserve) by the Army Personnel Office without any further training.

The second category consisted of those who, after serving the two-year compulsory peacetime service, had been discharged as Reserve ordnance technicians. This category had, during their two years service, received 6 months of artillery basic training and 18 months training at the Army Ordnance School.

These ordnance technicians were called up immediately after the outbreak of war, and assigned to a field artillery unit or an ordnance depot for a period of two months. This period allowed the technicians, now potential Reserve ordnance officer candidates, to become acquainted with front-line conditions and methods, as well as to review the training they had received in peacetime. Upon successful completion of the two-months front trial, the potential candidates were promoted to Reserve ordnance officer candidates and assigned to an officer vacancy in the ordnance corps. After a short probationary period they were promoted to Reserve second lieutenants (ordnance).

The third category consisted of volunteers of any arm or service, preferably artillery, who desired to become Reserve ordnance officers. Men could volunteer in this category at any time during their basic training or while with their unit in the field. They received their technical training in the same manner and for the same duration as that given to potential Regular ordnance officer candidates during the war.

6. Training of Potential Officers for Motor Maintenance Troops

Motor maintenance troops (Kraftfahrparktruppen) were established and became a part of the German Army organization in 1943. This establishment was brought about by the ever increasing difficulties which were being encountered in the army supply system because of insufficient vehicle maintenance.

In peacetime, each barracks had its own motor maintenance shop to repair the few vehicles on hand. During maneuvers, vehicles were repaired at the nearest barracks or at civilian shops.

With the beginning of the war and the creation of supply columns, barrack maintenance shops were reorganized into repair companies and work shop platoons. The personnel of these companies and platoons was a mixture of all arms and services who had a knowledge of motor maintenance. The officers commanding these small units were Reserve officers, who had civilian experience in repair and maintenance of vehicles. These small units were attached to the divisions of the Field Army.

In order to train and supply a sufficient number of personnel for these, and newly created units, it was found necessary to combine them under one central command. This was done in 1943; the combined units were known as motor maintenance troops. The Chief of Motorization was created in the Army General Staff to supervise and control the training within the Field Army.*

Training within the Replacement Army was the responsibility of the Senior Motor Transport Officer, who was directly subordinate to the Chief of Motorization in all technical matters, and he was subordinate to the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army in matters of training.

The Regular officer candidates were selected from former motor maintenance sergeants from field units with a minimum of nine years service. After appointment as candidates, they were assigned to a three to four-month officer candidate course. These courses were held in the former Engineer Officers School at Stuttgart, the name of which had been altered to the Motor Maintenance School. The main emphasis on training in the Motor Maintenance School was laid on commanding a unit of motor maintenance troops. At the same time, technical training in motor maintenance formed a large part of the training syllabus. After this course, the candidates were commissioned second lieutenant by the Army Personnel Office on recommendation of the school commander.

---

*For outline of training of officer candidates in specialist categories, see appendixes 36, 37, and 38.

*For regulations covering the Senior Motor Transport Officer, see appendix 8.

The replacements for Reserve motor maintenance officers were men with graduation certificates from technical institutions, who, prior to this, had been line officer candidates. After attending a candidate course at their own arm and service schools, they were transferred to the motor maintenance troops and promoted to senior officer candidate. Before they were given their commission, they attended a special course of one to two months at the Motor Maintenance School. Candidates were also picked from the ranks of the motor transport troops. After four months service in field units, they were sent to the officer candidate course and commissioned upon graduation. In 1945, the activity of maintenance officer candidate courses became limited, as men of 40 years of age or younger were forced to transfer to line officer candidate schools because of the ever increasing shortage of line officers.

7. Training of Potential NCOs in Schools and Courses

The NCO corps of the German Army was, together with the officer corps, the backbone of the army. The NCO was the assistant to the officer in training and educating the German soldier. As leader of smaller combat units, he supported the officer in his command functions. The initial training and further development as well as the actual procurement of suitable potential NCOs was considered especially important. This task was the responsibility of the Inspector of Army Training and Education for Potential Officers and NCOs. He was also in command of all NCO schools and NCO preparatory schools. In order to assure central administration of all matters of replacement, promotion, and supply of the NCO corps, a special NCO section was created in the General Army Office.

a Peacetime Training

The peacetime Regular NCO corps was composed of volunteer soldiers who were required to enlist for a period of 12 years. A soldier who enlisted with the intention of becoming a Regular NCO was sent, upon enlistment, to the Army NCO School. These NCO schools existed only for the infantry, artillery, engineers, motorized infantry, and signal troops. Here the recruit received the same training as was given to recruits in the troop units. In addition he was given such training as would prepare him to be an NCO. This training took place over a period of two years. At the end of the first year, the recruit was promoted to lance corporal and, upon successful completion, was transferred to a unit with the rank of corporal.

The majority of regular NCOs, however, consisted of those soldiers who, during their two years of compulsory service, volunteered to become NCOs in the Regular Army. When, upon volunteering, the recruits were accepted, they were required to enlist for an additional period of 10 years. Upon completion of the two years of service, and, at the most, an additional period of one year, the recruits were promoted to the grade of corporal. The special NCO training required by these potential NCOs was given during the second and third year of training by the company commander.

Soldiers, who received their discharge at the end of their two year compulsory service and who had shown exceptional ability, were discharged as corporals or potential NCOs in the Reserve Army.

Soldiers of the older age group, who were serving their eight-week compulsory service, could apply to be NCOs in the Reserve Army. If accepted, they were given a further eight-week period of training and discharged with the rank of lance

corporal and recommended to be potential corporals.

b. Wartime Training

(1) Field Army

NCOs of the Field Army were selected from soldiers of field units who showed exceptional ability and leadership, and also from NCOs of the Replacement Army.

Soldiers of the Field Army who applied to be NCOs in the Regular Army, and having been accepted, were given a further two-week training period at a field NCO school. This training could take place either before or after the applicants were promoted to the grade of corporal. There were two NCO schools in the Field Army, one for infantry and one for artillery, which were directly under command of the Chief of Infantry and Chief of Artillery respectively.

At these schools, especially capable corporals were given training as platoon leaders; other corporals and capable privates were given training as squad or section leaders. In this training, special stress was laid on the ability of the students to act as leaders of fighting units. NCOs returning from these schools were expected to be the best material available. Through them the required standard and uniformity of training as well as training in the latest methods and new weapons and equipment was assured.

Potential NCOs, and NCOs of the infantry and engineers, took their training at the infantry field NCO school while only artillery personnel attended the artillery field NCO school. The remaining arms and services trained their potential NCOs within the field units themselves or returned them to the Replacement Army for their NCO training.

The majority of NCOs in the Field Army consisted of Reserve NCOs. These were men who were promoted because of their outstanding ability, but who did not wish to become Regular NCOs. They were not given any further training prior to their promotions. These NCOs often did not possess any instructional ability. Consequently, they were unable to impart adequately their knowledge and experiences to the men under their command, when the units were taken out of the line for rest and training. The same deficiency was apparent when wounded NCOs of this kind were sent to the Replacement Army for a tour of instructional duty during their recuperation.

(2) Replacement Army

Soldiers, enlisting with the intention of serving a 12 year period with the Regular Army, could make application at the induction center to be enlisted as potential NCOs. These soldiers were given a physical and psychological examination similar to officer applicants although the standard of the test was much lower. Upon being accepted as potential NCOs, they were immediately sent to the Army NCO schools if accomodations were available. Here they received a three to four-month basic training identical with that given in the Replacement Army. Following the basic training, the potential NCOs received a 10 to 12-week NCO course at the same school. The purpose of this course was to train the potential NCOs as squad leaders, recruit instructors, and as capable lecturers on subjects pertaining to recruit training.

The instructor personnel at these schools were especially capable officers and NCOs with combat experience. Furthermore, these schools received more and better weapons and equipment than did the replacement and training units of the Replacement Army. Consequently, the training was more complete and of a higher standard. Upon completion of the NCO course, the potential NCOs were transferred to the Field Army with the grade of lance corporal. Promotion to corporal followed after the individual had proved his efficiency at the front and in accordance with the unit's table of organization.

Soldiers, who, during their basic training, applied to become Regular NCOs, completed their basic training with the replacement and training unit. Upon completion of their basic training, the potential NCOs received a 10-week period of NCO training at either the service command NCO course or the army NCO school. Transfer to the Field Army and further promotion followed after successful completion of the NCO course.

Soldiers, who, having been wounded in the Field Army, applied to be NCOs either during their convalescent period or while in the Replacement Army were given a 10-week NCO training at the army NCO school or the service command NCO course and were then returned to the Field Army with the grade of lance corporal.

Reserve potential NCOs from the Replacement Army did not apply to become NCOs, but were chosen by the company commanders from capable and efficient recruits. These potential NCOs received their NCO training either by attending the service command NCO course for a period of 10 weeks or at the NCO company of the replacement and training battalions.* The course at the latter was given over a period of six weeks. Upon the successful completion of the NCO course, the potential NCOs were promoted to lance corporal and transferred to the Field Army.

Another source of potential Reserve NCOs was the convalescent company of the Replacement Army. These companies were composed of personnel from the Field Army who, having been wounded, were discharged from the hospital for further training. Suitable potential NCOs, including lance corporals, were selected from these companies and given a six-week NCO course at the NCO company of the replacement and training battalions. After successfully completing the NCO training course, they were transferred according to their suitability, either to the Field Army or to the Replacement Army.

---

*For short-term training plan in rifle company, see appendix 20.

Chapter 4

THE WAFFEN-SS

A. General

The Waffen-SS had its origin in the days of the Weimar Republic as the elite of Hitler's private army. When the Nazis came to power in Germany in 1933, the Waffen-SS already numbered 52,000 men and became one of the strongest units in the German police organization.

With the seizure of Czechoslovakia and Poland, the first real military use of the Waffen-SS in conjunction with the German Army emerged. About 1939 also the distinction between General and Waffen-SS became significant. The General SS, with a strength of about 200,000 continued to function as police units within German and occupied territories, whereas the Waffen-SS, which grew from 30,000 men in 1939 to 830,000 in 1945 were given the status of field units and were committed as such. Toward the end of the war, the Waffen-SS maintained at least 13 corps, consisting of 31 divisions, at the fronts.

The small group of Waffen-SS (four regiments) which existed before the war had not originally been intended for combat duty but rather for show and had, therefore, not been trained for front-line duty. With the outbreak of war, however, the Waffen-SS felt that some front-line duty was needed to maintain its prestige. The consequent front-line experience in Poland was not very successful for the Waffen-SS because of the lack of field training.

This situation was quickly corrected, however, and the Waffen-SS, consisting of the cream of German manpower, became a crack combat organization since it was predominantly motorized and armored.

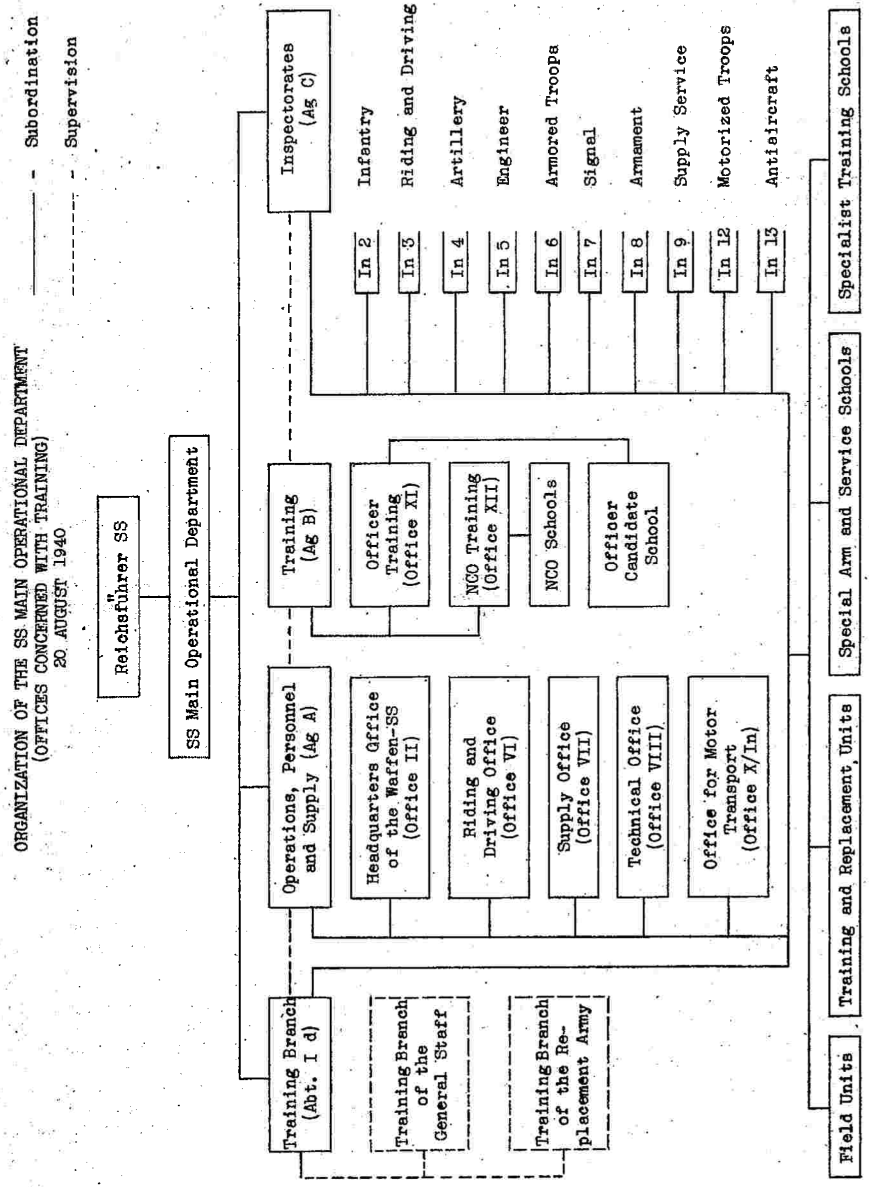
B. Training High Command of the Waffen-SS

A principle distinguishing feature of the Waffen-SS was the concept of the Waffen-SS man not only as a fighting man, but rather more as a political soldier. This role of the Waffen-SS as a political fighting unit was reflected even in the top echelons of its training organization.

Two top offices controlled training in the Waffen-SS. The Waffen-SS Central Department administered the political and physical training, whereas all the actual military training was under the Waffen-SS Main Operational Department. The two offices were on an equal administrative level, although the mission of the latter was much more complex and required a larger staff.

The Training Branch (Id) of the Main Operational Department was the office which actually directed military training in the Waffen-SS, compiled the basic training directives, and evaluated front-line experience.

Since the military training of the Waffen-SS was modeled very closely on that of the army, the principal task of this office was to maintain liaison with the principal training organizations of the army, i.e., Training Branch of the General Staff, Chief of Training of the Replacement Army, the Inspector General of the Armored Forces, and the Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs. This branch also maintained liaison with other training agencies within the Waffen-SS itself; namely, the Inspectorates of Arms and Services, and Group B (officer and NCO training).


Subordination
Supervision
Reichsführer SS
SS Main Operational Department
Inspectorates (Ag C)
Infantry
Riding and Driving
Artillery
Engineer
Armored Troops
Signal
Armament
Supply Service
Motorized Troops
Antiaircraft
In 2
In 3
In 4
In 5
In 6
In 7
In 8
In 9
In 12
In 13
Training (Ag B)
Officer Training (Office XI)
NCO Training (Office XII)
NCO Schools
Officer Candidate School
Operations, Personnel and Supply (Ag A)
Headquarters Office of the Waffen-SS (Office II)
Riding and Driving Office (Office VI)
Supply Office (Office VII)
Technical Office (Office VIII)
Office for Motor Transport (Office X/In)
Training Branch (Abt. I d)
Training Branch of the General Staff
Training Branch of the Replacement Army
Specialist Training Schools
Special Arm and Service Schools
Training and Replacement Units
Field Units

ORGANIZATION OF THE SS MAIN OPERATIONAL DEPARTMENT
(OFFICES CONCERNED WITH TRAINING)
20 AUGUST 1940

The headquarters office of the Waffen-SS, in conjunction with the training branch, integrated into the training of Waffen-SS, such political directives as were issued by the Waffen-SS Central Department. This office, furthermore, established tables of organization for schools and replacement units.

Section VI of the Waffen-SS Main Operational Department administered the training of mounted and motorized units; section VIII, the administrative and technical personnel; section XI, the officer replacements; and section XIII, the training of NCO replacements.

C. Conduct and Procedure of Training

1. Field Army

The training of the Waffen-SS was very similar to that of the Field Army. There was no Waffen-SS training carried out at army group or army level; nor were there any Waffen-SS field training divisions.

2. Replacement Army

In the Replacement Army also, Waffen-SS training followed that of the Regular Army. While refresher training was not conducted, basic, advanced, and convalescent training followed the Army pattern. Since political training in the Waffen-SS was on a level with military training, there were no special political indoctrination officers in Waffen-SS training units as in Army training units. Rather, there were separate full-time political training courses.

Insofar as training installations and equipment were concerned, the Waffen-SS received preferential treatment in comparison with Army units. Waffen-SS replacement training units were not short of weapons, ammunition, and equipment but, in fact, had the newest models of everything. Simulated weapons widely used for training in the Army were unknown in the Waffen-SS.

D. Training in Schools and Courses of the Field and Replacement Waffen-SS

1. Training of Officer Replacements in Troop Units and in Schools

a. Regular Army officers

(1) General

In time of peace and in the early stages of war, training of the potential officers of the Waffen-SS was under the control of the Waffen-SS Operational Department in the Waffen-SS Central Department.

Up to 1940, the Inspector of Waffen-SS Officer Candidate Schools was responsible to the Waffen-SS Operational Department for this training.

On 20 August 1940, the Waffen-SS Operational Department was detached from the Waffen-SS Central Department and reorganized into the Waffen-SS Main Operational Department. The department of the Inspector of the Waffen-SS Officer Candidate Schools was fused with Group B (training) of the newly formed Waffen-SS Main Operational Department and was called Office XI (training of officers). This office issued directives for the training of officer replacements. It exercised control over the personnel and determined their careers. If promotions were not given by troop units themselves, they were issued upon recommendations of the schools by the Waffen-SS Department for Personnel. After the reorganization of the Waffen-SS Central Department, the Waffen-SS Main Department for Personnel, Group II, was responsible for promotions

In replacement units selection and training as well as general care for officer replacements (potential officers) were controlled by the battalion commander. In field troop units, however, this responsibility rested with the regiment commander or the division adjutant.

(2) Peacetime (1933 to 1939)

The career of officer replacements in the Waffen-SS differed considerably from that of the officer replacements in the Army. A man could enter the Waffen-SS as a potential officer candidate but was required to serve at least one year (one to three years normally) before he could submit an application to be sent to a Waffen-SS officer candidate school. After 1939 these courses were held at the Waffen-SS Junker Schools of Toelz and Brunswick. Selections were made by regiment commanders. There was no previous schooling of the applicants. Only after all selections had been made, were accepted officer applicants assembled in four to six-week courses with the regiment. The purpose of these courses was the elimination of any training deficiencies. Immediately following this training the candidate was attached to a Waffen-SS officer candidate school for a period of one month.

Training at the Waffen-SS officer candidate schools was the same as that at officer candidate schools of the Army. The only difference was that, in addition to tactics, political indoctrination was introduced as a main subject of instruction. Whereas in the Army an officer candidate was assigned to duty at a special arm and service school immediately upon graduation from officer candidate school, the Waffen-SS officer candidate was assigned to a course for platoon leaders at a maneuver area. The training corresponded to training in the Army.

Upon termination of this course, the officer applicants, now promoted to the rank of Waffen-SS senior officer candidate, returned to a unit for duty as platoon leader. On the following 20 April or 9 November they were presented to Adolf Hitler who promoted them to the rank of second lieutenant.

(3) Wartime

During the war, training periods for potential Waffen-SS officer candidates changed frequently. With continuously increasing casualties at the front it became imperative to send more officers than formerly to combat units. Consequently, it became necessary to curtail the training period for both Regular and Reserve officers. The replacement method for the officers corps was placed on an entirely new basis.

In addition to voluntary applications, the following personnel were to be called up for training as potential officers if qualified:

Political officers
Officers of the General-SS
Officers of the SA (Storm Troops) and NSKK (National Socialist Motor Corps)
Certain members of the RAD (German Labor Service)
Officers of the HJ (Hitler Youth)
Students at universities and colleges (including students without degrees)
Graduates from National Political Educational Institutes and from Adolf Hitler Schools
Graduates from 8th-grade high schools (this included graduates from Teachers' Educational Institutes).

In 1942, the officer training program was divided into a number of definite training stages. Completion of all was required for commissioning but if a man stopped after any period, he could achieve the rank commensurate with the stage of training completed.

Training Period A

Basic training, aim: The Waffen-SS soldier fully trained for combat. Duration: Regulars and Reserves -- four months.

Training Period B

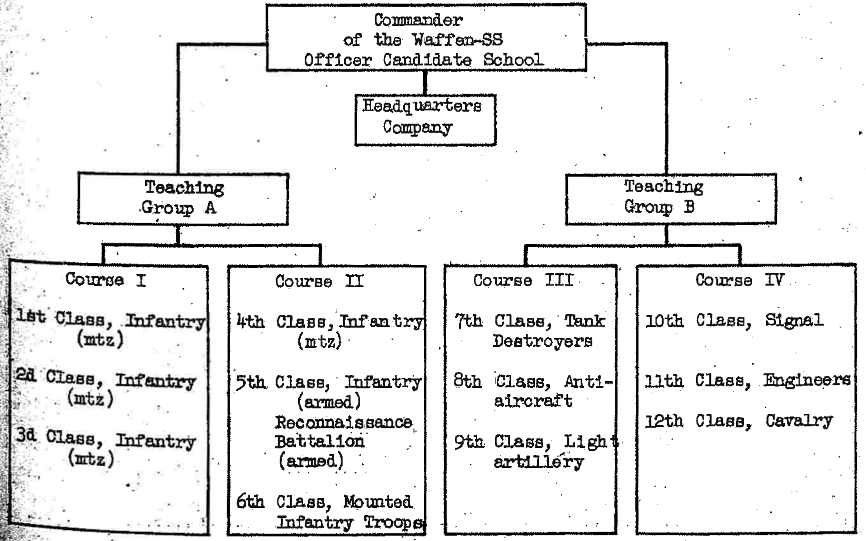
Employment in a combat unit, aim: The potential Waffen-SS officer was to acquire combat experience from the point of view of the enlisted man and to collect experiences which were essential for his subsequent employment as an NCO. He was to be given an opportunity to prove himself as an individual fighter and as a leader of a small unit. In case of last sons of a family, training period B was omitted. Duration: Regulars -- five months, Reserves -- nine months. During this period Waffen-SS soldiers were promoted to the rank of lance corporal.

Training Period C

A preparatory course followed for assignment to an officer candidate school, or an NCO school, or to a replacement unit in the zone of the interior, aim: To qualify the man for combat duty as an NCO in his branch of service; to intensify practical experience gained in combat; gradual introduction into the scientific subjects of the officer candidate schools and the course for reserve officer candidates. Duration: Regulars and Reserves -- two months.

Training Period D

Training at Waffen-SS officer candidate schools in wartime remained essentially the same as in peacetime. The period was fixed at six months for Regulars and four months for Reserve candidates. The Waffen-SS officer candidate schools were normally organized as follows:


Commander of the Waffen-SS Officer Candidate School
Headquarters Company
Teaching Group A
Teaching Group B
Course I
1st Class, Infantry (mtz)
2d Class, Infantry (mtz)
3d Class, Infantry (mtz)
Course II
4th Class, Infantry (mtz)
5th Class, Infantry (armed) Reconnaissance Battalion (armed)
6th Class, Mounted Infantry Troops
Course III
7th Class, Tank Destroyers
8th Class, Anti-aircraft
9th Class, Light artillery
Course IV
10th Class, Signal
11th Class, Engineers
12th Class, Cavalry

Strength of the classes

At the beginning of a course	40 to 50 officer candidates
At the end of a course	30 officer candidates (approximately)

Training Period E

Upon graduation from the officer candidates school, the Regular Waffen-SS senior officer candidates received an assignment to a special arm and service school of their particular branch. Training at these schools lasted eight to 12 weeks. Reserve candidates did not need to attend these schools. Aim of training at these schools was to qualify platoon leaders of all arms and services for employment in field or replacement units. Upon termination of the course the candidates were promoted to the rank of second lieutenant. Reserve officer candidates were commissioned when they had proved themselves after three months of active duty with a unit. Battlefield commissions were given to qualified NCOs.

E. Summary

The consensus of opinion regarding the Waffen-SS units was that they were excellent fighting troops. Driven by an almost fanatical spirit of attack, they were employed mostly in frontal assaults which they executed very well. They were, however, not so successful in carrying out more difficult tactical problems.

Training up to the company level was as good as or better than that of the Army since the members of the Waffen-SS were in the best physical condition and were very enthusiastic about the training.

Their field grade and general officers, however, did not have the military background required for such commands.

Chapter 5

SUMMARY

On 1 September 1939 the German High Command sent forth on a series of conquests the best-equipped and finest-trained army that the world had ever seen. On 8 May 1945 General Jodl, as Chief of the Armed Forces Operations Staff, surrendered the remnants of that once great war machine. The German Army was no more.

The high state of efficiency attained by the German soldier was a direct result of years of experiments and changes in training. The lowest state was a direct result of circumstances.

The German High Command believed in a strong, unified, and highly trained officer corps; in an NCO corps which would at all times be the backbone of the Army; and in a uniformly instructed body of skilled fighters.

In the years prior to and during World War II the German Army training system underwent a great number of changes. In 1938 Hitler, as Führer, Chancellor, and Supreme Commander of Armed Forces, dismissed the Commander in Chief of Armed Forces. He then controlled directly the Commanders in Chief of the Army, Navy, and Air Force.

At this time all Army training was controlled and supervised by the Training Branch of the Army General Staff. This was considered essential for the creation of a modern army, and the system was followed throughout the war.

With the outbreak of war in 1939, the German Army was divided into a Field Army and a Replacement Army. The German General Staff still supervised all training but controlled directly only the training in the Field Army. The Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army was created to control, among other things, the functions of the Training Branch of the Replacement Army. The pattern of training in the Replacement Army was still laid down by the Army General Staff. This pattern was designed to assure uniform training in the Replacement Army to meet the requirements of the Field Army. The four Chiefs of Arms and Services (infantry, artillery, engineers, chemical warfare service) remained with the Army General Staff.

This training organization proved adequate until the replacement and training problem became imperiled through severe losses.

In 1942 the training organization in the Replacement Army was severely reorganized.* A Chief of Training was established to control and supervise all training in the Replacement Army. He was subordinate to the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army and controlled all Inspectors of Arms and Services, schools, and courses. At this time no changes took place in the Field Army. In early 1945 the Office of the Chief of Training was dissolved and all training functions were taken over by Himmler who assumed command of the Replacement Army. At the same time, the Chiefs of Arms and Services, now became subordinate to Himmler as well as to the Army General Staff.

From 1939 to 1942 all training of potential officers and NCOs was controlled by the Inspector of Training and Education. During this period he was subordinate directly to the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army. In 1942 this office came under the control of the Chief of Training. In 1944 the office of Inspector of Training and Education was renamed the Inspector General of

---

*See letter of General Fromm to the Chief of the Army General Staff, General Halder, at the end of this summary for an inside view of the training situation at that time.

Potential Officers and NCOs and again came under the direct command of the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army.

The changes in organization concerning training were made with the intention of coordinating the various types of training under the command of one central office. All reorganizations which were carried out during the war -- especially those within the office of the Chief of the Replacement Army brought about improvements; however, including the final reorganization, they did not prove sufficient for the demands of the war. They lacked comprehensive and uniform alignment of training in the Field Army and the Replacement Army. This deficiency was based on the absence of a Commander in Chief of the Army, whose responsibility it would have been to supervise and direct the training in the Army, or the absence of an Inspector General for Training.

The training itself also underwent many changes during the war years.

The Army General Staff originally intended that additional training should be carried out by the Field Army. Schools and courses were established in both army areas and division areas for this purpose. These establishments were a success but were seriously hampered by the continued commitment of the front-line units. To remedy this, exercises and problems were given the troops directly in the line.

In the Replacement Army basic training was given considerable attention and changes did occur. These changes were mainly due to circumstances. In 1939, it was considered that 12 weeks were sufficient to train recruits. The ever-increasing technical developments of the war together with the poor showing of replacements sent to the Field Army, in particular on the Russian front, proved this to be insufficient. As a result the training was increased to 16 weeks in September 1943. It was impossible to maintain this 16-week training period longer than one year in view of the severe losses. In 1944 it was consequently shortened officially to the original 12 weeks although in reality eight weeks of training were a maximum.

The German High Command considered any basic training period of less than 12 weeks as criminal. During the later years of the war, training suffered still further from lack of efficient instructor personnel, lack of equipment, Allied air raids together with salvage details, and the great need for replacements by the Field Army.

All other training carried out in units of the Replacement Army seemed to have served their purpose. Special attention could be drawn to the convalescent training for both officers and men as it had great success in fulfilling its intended policy. The schools and courses in both the Field Army and the Replacement Army could be ranked as standard. The courses for unit commanders, from company to corps, aided greatly in preparing the new and inexperienced commanders to assume their new responsibilities.

The training periods of potential officers and NCOs, considered of vital importance, were never shortened but rather increased as the war progressed. Every attempt was made to keep the standards of both on a high level. Of main importance in the selection of officer candidates was the front trial period. In 1944 and 1945 the German Army had difficulty in filling its officer replacement requirements because of the high mortality rate among the young officers and the reluctance of many unit commanders to release their key men to attend candidate schools. In addition, enlisted personnel did not respond too willingly, and not until a general order was issued demanding each unit to submit a list of potential candidates, did any improvement take place. The shortage during this period was, however, never really alleviated. The program of training for all officer candidates was well-organized and proved even under severe circumstances to be of great value.

In all Waffen-SS training a direct parallel can be drawn with the normal Army training.

Letter to the Chief of the Army General Staff from the Commander of the Replacement Army

Chief of Army Equipment and
Commander of the Replacement Army
Berlin, 27 April 1942

SECRET

To: The Chief of the Army General Staff

During the past months a number of suggestions and complaints from the Field Army have reached my desk. Although I am well aware that there is justification for submitting these suggestions, I am, however, unable to comply with all of them. I feel assured that many of the complaints are justified and am not inclined to consider as irrelevant any positive statements made by the Field Army, in fact I am trying constantly to take corrective action on all grievances as rapidly as possible. It is, however, my belief that not all departments of the Field Army concerned have as yet fully realized the great difficulties the Replacement Army has to contend with or the limits of its capacity.

The following discussion describes the present position of the Replacement Army. It is the purpose of this discussion to further and broaden the existing relations between the Replacement Army and the Field Army.

I would appreciate it if all commanders of the Field Army were informed about the contents of the following discussion so that they might better realize and understand the work and responsibilities of the Replacement Army.

Fromm

Training

Training in the Replacement Army is conducted in accordance with Training Directives for the Replacement Army. These directives have been issued on the basis of experiences gained in the Russian campaign and in accordance with requirements on the conduct of training by the Army General Staff.

In spite of ever-increasing difficulties, Replacement Army units endeavor with all means at their command to take into account all requirements of training of replacements as laid down by the Field Army. It is the final aim of this training to supply the Field Army with soldiers fit for combat duty. It is, however, impossible to train soldiers mentally and physically to the extent that they can be considered "perfect fighters" in the brief period of time allotted for this training. In addition to the fact that the time for training was cut down to 12 weeks during wartime while two years were allotted in peace, it must also be noted that the quality of men the Army has at its disposal now proves considerably inferior to the quality of young men who were available before the war. The reason for the lowering of the standard can be found in various causes brought about by the war. In spite of their willingness, older men especially display a lack of enthusiasm for their duties and are not anxious to be committed to combat. The final results of training prove these observations to be correct. The critical situation at the front plus the requirements for rapid replacement of combat casualties made it necessary to induct hitherto deferred men on short notice. These men had to be clothed and equipped as rapidly as possible and were sent into combat without the benefit of any refresher training. These replacements cannot be expected to be thoroughly familiar with the use of modern weapons nor do they possess any experience of combat methods as applied in the Russian campaign. As they were trained prior to the outbreak of the war the majority are familiar only with the machine gun 08/15 or the field howitzer 16. By authorization of the Army General Staff, members of regional defense units had to be used to fill up replacement transfer units.

The training standard of these men who previously had been assigned duties such as guarding of prisoners of war, bridges, etc., was naturally below par.

Lately, the execution of training has been considerably hampered by the transfer of entire instruction units out of the Replacement Army. Because of the critical personnel and material situation, these units could not be replaced until recently. (The aforementioned units were used to form the Walküre Division.) Consequently, the remaining replacement units are overstaffed to the extent that companies of 300 to 400 recruits are no rarety. The constant urgent need of the Field Army for replacements makes it impossible to call up recruits only after the termination of each three-months training cycle. Since November 1941 recruits have had to be inducted every month. Consequently, this arrangement has brought about a situation where various instruction units are carrying out four to five different stages of training. Even though training in these units was planned and scheduled accordingly, it meant increasing difficulties in the procedure of instruction for training personnel. In addition it must be noted that the supply of weapons and equipment is hardly sufficient for training purposes. The supply situation plays a very important part in training in the Replacement Army for gaps caused by the activation of the Walküre Division could not be entirely closed as yet. Only one light machine gun is usually available for instruction of 50 to 60 men. Some other weapons such as bazookas and machine-pistols are available to training units in such small quantities that instruction in them can be carried out only to a very limited extent. Furthermore, weapons available for basic training are subject to wear and tear, and reconditioning them means their non-availability for training purposes for a considerable length of time. Armored vehicles are available for instructional purposes in very small numbers only and their quality has suffered markedly by too frequent employment. The situation in other special weapons is similar. Training in throwing of hand grenades can not be conducted sufficiently as each recruit is allotted only two practice grenades. On account of the critical gasoline situation driving schools can conduct their instruction only by cutting down on the previously allotted mileage. There is not sufficient gas at hand to conduct driving instruction under combat conditions. Because of the constant employment of the vehicles for instructional purposes their wear and tear is above average and many vehicles become completely unfit for use. An improvement of this critical material situation in the Replacement Army is not to be expected as the demand of the Field Army for weapons and equipment has to be filled first. Furthermore, the entire situation with regard to raw materials and production does not indicate such an improvement. Consequently the Replacement Army endeavors to counteract these difficulties by all kinds of auxiliary ways and means, especially by making fullest use of the allotted training time.

In order to train men with regard to the requirements of the front and to make fullest use of new experience gained, the Replacement Army has suggested an exchange of training personnel with the Field Army. An inter-change of division and regiment commanders will now be inaugurated.

PART II

GERMAN PARAMILITARY TRAINING

Chapter 6

SCOPE AND PURPOSE OF PREMILITARY TRAINING OF GERMAN YOUTH

The restrictions imposed on the German Armed Forces by the Treaty of Versailles made anything in the nature of premilitary training impossible for over a decade. Nevertheless, just before World War II, when the need for some sort of military preparation of German youth began to be openly expressed, the foundation was already laid. German youth had gradually been organized and, from the middle thirties on, was centralized under the Hitler Youth. It was a relatively simple matter to take over and slightly remodel a training which already had certain semimilitary characteristics. The youth organization was gradually organized and developed to produce an ever-increasing reserve of young men physically and morally ready for rigorous military training. Initially, the existence of this trained reserve of youth meant that the continuously increasing number of finished soldiers, discharged after their Armed Forces training was a more thoroughly trained group.

The nature of the training given the youth was carefully adapted to the needs of the services in which they were later to serve. Although physical preparation was stressed, consisting largely of gymnastics, games, outdoor exercises, overnight marches, and field, naval, and aerial sports, the mental and moral aspects were never forgotten. Body and spirit, they felt, must be educated side by side. Only complete coordination and discipline--physical and mental--could produce the fighting spirit demanded of the young soldier. Therefore, the educational program rigorously fostered nationalism and love of the fatherland and taught young men to appreciate organization, discipline, good leadership, and the team spirit they produced. Morale, as the Germans had learned in the war, was the most important single factor in military operations, and they were determined to achieve the best possible morale by starting to develop it in the youth.

This was the nature of the premilitary training. It was military in form, well-organized, disciplined, but there was little drill or ceremonial marching, nor did the boys handle the implements of war until the later war years. They were conditioned gradually, so that when the time came for them to take up arms and learn to use them they would do it easily and with high spirit, soon to become efficient cogs in the German fighting machine.

In Nazi Germany, after 1933, the premilitary training of the youth was executed by two large organizations: the Hitler Youth (Hitlerjugend) and the German Labor Service (Reichsarbeitsdienst).

Chapter 7

PREMILITARY TRAINING IN THE HITLER YOUTH

A. General

The Treaty of Versailles forbade the establishment of any organization in Germany which dealt with conditioning of youth for military training. German leaders claim, however, that the younger generation in Germany craved, as in all other countries, an organization wherein they could gain broadening experience and a clearer conception of the world. Out of this desire, youth organizations of many different kinds arose, such as the Wandervögel, Bündische Jugend, and a great many others, some partially religious and others merely to satisfy the innate desire for organized recreation. These groups, numerous and varied as they were (about 700 in all), had originally no central control or supervision. By 1929, the most powerful youth organization, and the one with the most far reaching aims, was the Hitler Youth. It planned to assume, eventually, the task of educating German youth - outside of home and school - physically, mentally, and morally, to serve the people and develop the communal spirit according to the doctrines of National Socialism.

Before dealing with the conditioning to military service in the Hitler Youth, it is necessary to explain in brief the other phases of the work. It must be understood that actual premilitary training of the youth did not begin until just before the war.

The Hitler Youth had political, national, social, and cultural aims. National education was supposed to increase the love for the German homeland and German art. Knowledge of German history, the lives and aspirations of famous Germans were dealt with. In the realm of social education, the youth was to be educated to respect work as a basic virtue. Other points were the elimination of class prejudices, vocational guidance, and education (boys without means were shown how to better themselves and perhaps to enter the higher professions), warning against youthful self-abuse, hygiene training, instruction on the bad influences of smoking, drinking, night-life, etc. Cultural education was intended to teach the German youth to love and appreciate German ways, German character, and German art. This was achieved by means of orchestras, theater-groups, movies, festive hours, folk-dances, and songs. They felt that these were subjects which could not be sufficiently covered by the schools.

In certain areas and under certain especially fanatical leaders there was inculcated into the training a hatred of existing traditions, of family ties, and even of the Church. Under these leaders, devotion to the Führer was the keynote, and betrayal of one's own family was not too high a price to pay to prove that creed. On the whole, though, this state of affairs did not color, to any large extent, the training of the Hitler Youth.

The Youth Hostel Organization (Jugendherbergswerk) created attractive hostels for German youth in all regions of the country. The youths could thus become independent of hotels and restaurants when traveling and learn to shift for themselves.

In addition to the above, there was physical education. From the very beginning, certain formalities were emphasized, which seemed militaristic. The excuse given, however, was that these methods were applied simply to assure proper conduct and appearance.

On 1 December 1936, the Hitler Youth became a national institution. From then on, "Hitler Youth" referred to all German youths but still was used to designate the

14 to 18 year olds. (The latter group will be called "Hitlerjugend" in this study.) By the same legislation, membership became compulsory.

B. Organization of the Hitler Youth

The Hitler Youth, in the larger sense, was made up of five sections:

Deutsches Jungvolk or DJ (German Youth), for boys of 10 to 14
Hitlerjugend or HJ (Hitler Youth), for boys of 14 to 18
Young Girls' League (Jungmädelbund - JM), for girls of 10 to 14
League of German Girls (Bund Deutscher Madel - BdM), for girls 14 to 17
"Faith and Beauty" Society of the League of German Girls (BdM-Werk "Glaube und Schönheit"), for girls of 17 to 21

C. Organization, Structure, and Responsibilities of the Hitlerjugend and the Deutsches Jungvolk

1. Organization and Structure (See chart on following page)

2. Responsibilities

a. The Reich Directorate of German Youth (Reichsjugendführung)
It was headed by the Reich Youth Leader (Reichsjugendführer)*. His deputy was an administrative officer who was simultaneously in charge of the Directorate staff. The Directorate, as the highest office of the Hitler Youth, issued orders, circulars, and directions, effective throughout Germany, and supervised their proper execution. This command was responsible for the uniform education of all the youth. The Reich Leader Schools (Reichsführerschulen) and Reich Specialist Schools (Reichsfachschulen) were under the direction of the Reich Directorate of German Youth. The Directorate maintained contact with the Party, various ministries, and the Armed Forces.

D. Education and Training in the Deutsches Jungvolk (DJ)

1. In Peacetime

The boy joined the Jungvolk at the age of 10. This was, thus, the beginning of the third stage of his education, following home and school. Service in the Jungvolk was calculated to awaken and develop his natural talents. After a medical examination, and having passed a test, he became a cub (Pimpf). Requirements of the cub test were:

Running: 60 meters in 12 seconds
Broad jump: 2.75 meters
Handball throwing: 25 meters
Knowledge of some songs

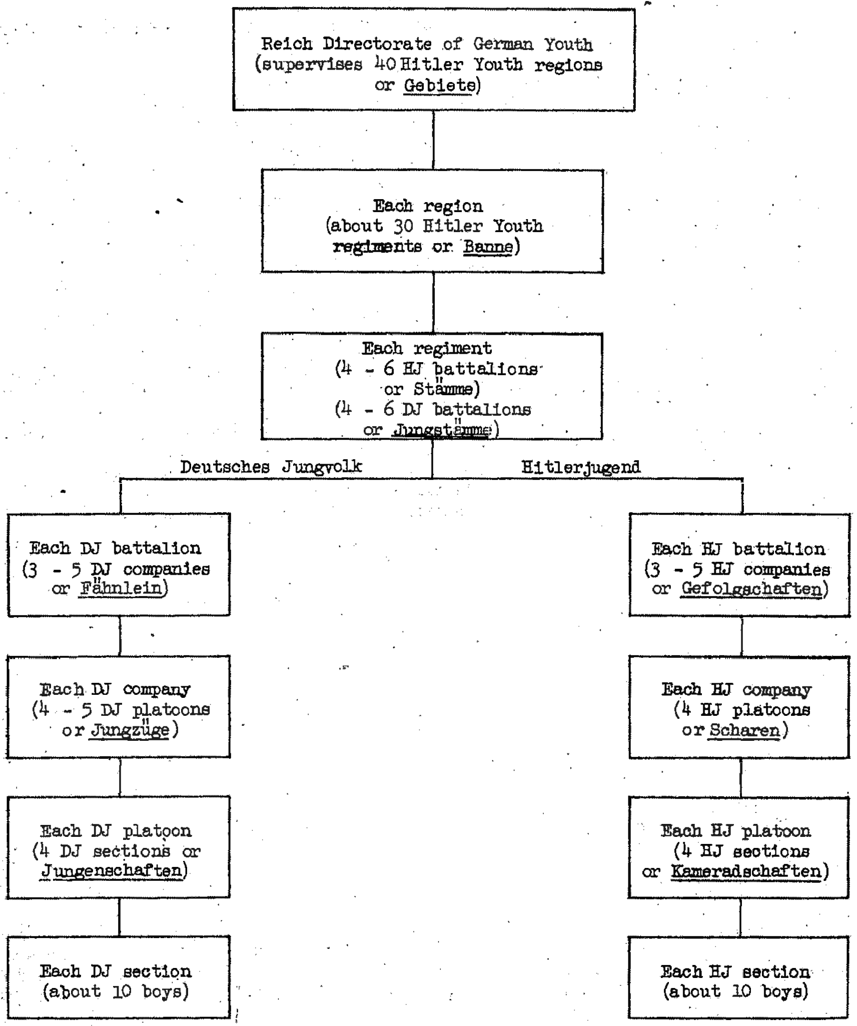
The balance of time was filled chiefly with games and sports which satisfied the boy's natural inclination for rough and tumble.

Education and training of the Jungvolk was laid down in the training manuals for the Hitler Youth. These manuals contained detailed directions for the leaders, including practical examples. They were usually subdivided into classroom periods for indoctrination, afternoon meetings indoors, sports, field training, marches, and manual training.

---

*From 1936 to 1940, Baldur von Schirach, followed by Arthur Axmann.

ORGANIZATION AND STRUCTURE OF THE HITLERJUGEND AND THE DEUTSCHES JUNGVOLK


Reich Directorate of German Youth (supervises 40 Hitler Youth regions or Gebiete)
Each region (about 30 Hitler Youth regiments or Banne)
Each regiment (4 - 6 HJ battalions or Stämme) (4 - 6 DJ battalions or Jungstämme)
Deutsches Jungvolk
Hitlerjugend
Each DJ battalion (3 - 5 DJ companies or Fähnlein)
Each DJ company (4 - 5 DJ platoons or Jungzüge)
Each DJ platoon (4 DJ sections or Jungenschaften)
Each DJ section (about 10 boys)
Each HJ battalion (3 - 5 HJ companies or Gefolgschaften)
Each HJ company (4 HJ platoons or Scharen)
Each HJ platoon (4 HJ sections or Kameradschaften)
Each HJ section (about 10 boys)

Indoctrination periods were to give an introduction to the organization and structure of the Jungvolk. According to the principles of this body, the boys were educated as National Socialists in conduct and outlook.

The afternoon meetings were dedicated to the development of National Socialist outlook. They also tried to arouse youthful enthusiasm for the great Germans, past and present, men on whose lives they should model their own.

Sports developed health and strength, personal courage, and self-confidence.

Field or outdoor training developed the body, the alertness of senses, and the ability to depend on instinct.

Marches (always in daylight) were not to exceed 10 kilometers. On these outings the boys became better acquainted with their country. They also carried out certain field exercises.

Manual training was used to train the youthful inclination to tinker, to awaken manual skill and pleasure in creative activity. Educational and training of the older groups of the Jungvolk were conducted along the same lines, based on the experiences of the preceding years.

Education and training in the Jungvolk culminated in a physical test for the Jungvolk Efficiency Badge. Standards required for this award were:

Running: 60 meters in 11 seconds
Broad jump: 3 meters
Handball throwing: 30 meters
Somersaults: twice forward and twice backward
Swimming: 100 meters in $3\frac{1}{2}$ minutes, or endurance swimming for 5 minutes
One-day march: 15 kilometers without pack
Participation in a field exercise
Air-rifle marksmanship: at 8 meters, with sighting practice device, 12-ring target -- score of 20 with 5 rounds
Throwing handball (alternative to air-rifle marksmanship)

2. In Wartime

Education and training of the Jungvolk did not vary at all in wartime. No training specifically for future military service was carried out. The boys were employed for harvesting, for street collections, collections of used material and books, or winter charity work. Air-rifle marksmanship was encouraged when rifles were available, instructors for this subject being furnished by the National Socialist Reich Veteran Association. When the boy reached to age of 14, he was transferred to the Hitlerjugend.

E. Education and Training in the Hitlerjugend

1. In Peacetime

a. General service in the Hitlerjugend

The Hitlerjugend continued with the 14 to 18-year olds the education and training which had begun in the Jungvolk. Now that they were older, however, a higher physical standard was expected. At the evening meetings which took place once a week, the subject was ideological training. On long marches and in camps, the youth learned to know his country; by trips to the frontiers and into foreign countries, his political and international outlook was broadened. This political indoctrination was coordinated with physical and premilitary training. The latter was intensified from year to year. This training was based, in general, on the principles outlined in the first few pages of this study.

The entire education and training in the Hitlerjugend was laid down in the *Training Regulations of the Hitlerjugend*, which were, from time to time, supplemented by special regulations. The final goal for the youth in this phase of his training was the competition of the Efficiency Badge of the Hitlerjugend (of three grades: iron, bronze, and silver). Peacetime requirements for these were the same as during wartime. Requirements necessary for the silver badge are given as an example:

- Athletics
  - Running: 100 meters in 14.5 seconds; 3000 meters in 14½ minutes
  - Broad jump: 4 meters
  - Throwing of dummy potato-masher grenades: 30 meters
  - Shot-putting (5 kilos): 7 meters
  - Pull-ups: three
  - Long-distance swimming: 300 meters in 12 minutes
  - or endurance swimming: 15 minutes
  - or cycling: 20 kilometers in 60 minutes
- Premilitary conditioning
  - Small-caliber target practice: 5 rounds, prone without rest — no score less than 5, or 5 hits with a score of 30
  - Precision throwing of a dummy potato-masher grenade
  - March exercises: 20 kilometers, in 4 to 4½ hours, without packs
  - Map reading: marking, on a 1:100,000 map, two features visible on the ground
  - Designation of targets: correct designation of two clearly visible targets and two more difficult ones at ranges not to exceed 300 meters
  - Range estimation: at 3 ranges between 50 to 500 meters
  - Message comminication: delivering at a distance of 300 meters, an oral message containing an account of time, place, and strength of the enemy observad
  - Camouflage: complete blending with surroundings in open country
  - Concealment: creeping up to a point at least 200 meters away in area assumed to be under enemy observation
- Ideological examination
  - Description of a politico-racial measures of the State; explanation of its significance
  - Importance and responsibilities of German peasantry
  - Rules to be observed in daily life to retain health and efficiency
  - Discussion of some recent political events
  - Grounds on which the country can demand that everybody be ready to fight and sacrifice even his life, if need be, for his people
  - For what reasons all men and women in Germany are obliged to serve their country in war, even beyond the duty of serving in the Armed Forces
  - Reasons why duty in the German Labor Service is a prerequisite for active military service

At the age of 18, the members of the Hitlerjugend were taken over by the German Labor Service or the Party organization -- Storm Troops (SA), SS, National Socialist Motor Corps (NSKK), National Socialist Aviation Corps (NSFK).

b. Special units in the Hitlerjugend

(1) General

In addition to the principle task of the National Socialist education of German youth, the Hitlerjugend also gave its members special training in various branches.

This training was meant to equip the youths with the basic knowledge of their chosen arm and to prepare them for military service. The following units existed:

Hitlerjugend Naval Branch
Hitlerjugend Motor Branch
Hitlerjugend Aviation Branch
Hitlerjugend Signal Branch
Hitlerjugend Patrol Service
Band Units of the Hitlerjugend
First-Aid Units of the Hitlerjugend

In the Hitler Youth regions, experts in the various branches were employed to interpret the instructions of the Reich Directorate and to supervise their execution. These experts in the special units were called regional inspectors. The unit actually responsible for special training was the Hitler Youth regiment. All special units were subordinate to it. Within the regiment were special HJ battalions, companies, and platoons, whose size depended on local conditions and strength. The various branches of special training normally worked in close cooperation with the various Party organizations such as the National Socialist Motor Corps (NSKK), National Socialist Flying Corps (NSFK). The latter supported the special units by supplying them with instructors, training material, and classrooms.

(2) Hitlerjugend Naval Branch

Youths who intended eventually to join the Merchant Marine or Navy, had a chance to prepare themselves for it in the Hitlerjugend Naval Branch. There they became acquainted with naval traditions and outlook, and were introduced to the Navy's methods.

Ideological and physical education and training developed the youths so that they would adapt themselves quickly to the life of a sailor with its mental, political, and physical peculiarities. In addition to sports, they were given training in semaphore and Morse Code, sailing, rowing, knotting, and splicing. Potential leaders were trained at separate sea-sport schools (Seemoos on the Bodensee and Prieros, Mark). As reward for this attainment in the Hitlerjugend Naval Branch, the young man was awarded the Sea-Sport Badge instead of the Hitlerjugend Efficiency Badge with the exception of the premilitary conditioning group. A member of the Hitlerjugend Naval Branch was tested for premilitary conditioning in approximately the following manner:

- Small-bore marksmanship: 5 rounds, prone without rest -- no score below 5 or score of 30 with 5 hits.
- Handling of small boats: knowledge of handling of small boats and proper execution of various rowing commands, rowing over 1000 meters in cutter, correct behavior in boats, maintenance of boats
- Signal: semaphore: 90 letters in 2 minutes 45 seconds; Morse code: 90 letters in 8 minutes
- Seamanship: knots and other manual work; throwing a line 15 meters in a lane 5 meters wide

(3) Hitlerjugend Motor Branch

This branch of the Hitlerjugend was concerned with the training of boys as motor mechanics.

The boys in this category were also given some physical training in addition to their technical training. Technical perfection, however, was particularly stressed. For instance, in order to qualify for the Hitlerjugend Efficiency Badge, the members of the Hitlerjugend Motor Branch were also required to pass the special test of the Hitlerjugend Motor Branch. For this, they had to be thoroughly familiar with the theory of internal combustion engines; they had to be proficient mechanics (within limits), and had to be well-versed in traffic laws as well as traffic and driving problems.

The Hitlerjugend Motor Branch worked in close cooperation with the National Socialist Motor Corps (Nationalsozialistisches Kraftfahr-Korps - NSKK) which provided instructors, workshops, classrooms, and drill fields. Ultimately, the Motor Corps drew all its replacements from the Hitlerjugend Motor Branch.

(4) Hitlerjugend Aviation Branch

All members of the Hitlerjugend who intended to join the Air Force, or become civilian pilots, received their training in this special unit. They were first taught how to construct model airplanes and were given basic training in glider flights. The construction of model airplanes introduced the boys to the problems of aviation and gave them a knowledge of aerodynamics.

This training was given in close conjunction with the National Socialist Flying Corps (Nationalsozialistisches Flieger-Korps - NSFK), which furnished the necessary instructors, machines, tools, and workshops.

(5) Hitlerjugend Signal Branch

The boys of the special signal units that made up this branch were trained in all types of signal and communications work. Morse code transmission received the most emphasis. It was not the aim of this training, however, to produce expert telegraph operators. The boys were to be furnished with the necessary general and technical knowledge for their later service in the signal corps. In addition to the Morse code training, the boys in this category were instructed in the maintenance of communications.

The special signal units had their own particular duties to perform during field exercises and bivouacs. They had to be able to lay and remove wire rapidly in the field. In larger bivouacs they were responsible for setting up end maintaining telephone, public address, lighting, and searchlight installations.

(6) Band units of the Hitlerjugend

These were special organizations responsible for any work of a cultural nature in the Hitler Youth. They were responsible for arranging festivals, informal evening gatherings, military band concerts, broadcasts, literary evenings, etc. At the same time, it devolved upon them to train replacements for the bands of the Armed Forces, the German Labor Service, and the Party, as well as for professional orchestras and choirs.

One band unit, consisting of a band, drum and bugle platoon, string orchestra, choir, voluntary musical group, etc., was assigned to each regiment. The chief function of the band unit was the arranging of cultural activities for the regiment.

Service in the band units generally lasted two years, At the end of this period, the boys returned to their original units where they could make use of the knowledge acquired in the band units.

(7) Hitlerjugend Patrol Service

The main duty of this organization was to supervise the conduct of the members of the Hitler Youth in regard to such matters as general appearance, uniform, and

behavior in public places. Additional duties of the Patrol Service were insurance of a high standard of cleanliness and order in the Hitler Youth quarters, police duties at crowded assemblies, bivouac guard duty, convoy duty, search for missing persons, and investigations and inquiry in the case of punishable offenses and breaches of discipline. It also fell to the Patrol Service to advise and assist members of the Hitler Youth on outings, to help on railway station duty, to protect the younger generation against criminal elements, to fight juvenile delinquency, to protect public property against damage by Hitler Youth hiking groups, and so forth.

The Hitlerjugend Patrol Service received its orders from the Reich Youth Leader All members of the Hitler Youth were obliged to obey any command given by the Patrol Service.

The Hitlerjugend Patrol Service was the replacement unit for the SS. Admission into the Patrol Service depended on a medical examination which was given by SS doctors.

(8) First-aid units of the Hitlerjugend

The training of the first-aid units took place through the country. It was the duty of these units to train their members in medical service. One or two first-aiders were allotted to each HJ platoon. In the larger cities the trained first-aid units supplied medical service during concentrations, approach marches, bivouacs, etc.

c. Additional special training in the Hitlerjugend

(1) Riding training for the Hitlerjugend

An arrangement existed with the National Socialist Riding Corps, whereby the latter undertook to provide the necessary instruction to any member of the Hitler Youth interested in horseback riding. The goal of this training was acquisition of the Riding Certificate (Reiterschein), which demanded not only equestrian skill but also efficient care and handling of horses. Holders of these riding licenses were later given preference for admission to the mounted units of the Army, where they could make use of their precious training.

(2) Civilian air-raid defense (Ziviler Luftschutz)

With the closest cooperation of the National Socialist Air Defense Organization (Reichsluftschutzbund), all German youth was given a thorough and extensive training in air-raid defense.

2. In Wartime

The Hitler Youth, having confined itself in peacetime to activities of a semi-military nature, was forced, with the advent of World War II, to take over some military duties. These, however, affected only the older groups (the 16 to 18-year olds). Military training was still forbidden for 14 and 15-year olds as well as for the Deutsches Jungvolk.

a. General service in the Hitlerjugend

The aims of physical training in the Hitlerjugend during World War II were primarily to maintain a high standard of health and to further the training of th 16 to 18-year olds in outdoor exercises and sports. The boys in this age group were given 12 months of firing instruction and general field training, as preparation by the Armed Forces. In addition, special instructors were supplied by the Armed Forces, the German Veterans, and other organizations.

The training unit was the HJ platoon, or, in exceptional cases, such as in thinly populated rural areas, the HJ section.

Training manuals used were The Hitler Youth on Active Duty (HJ im Dienst) and Outline of Military Training in Firing and Field Activities for the Hitlerjugend (Richtlinien für die Kriegsausbildung in Schiess-und Geländedienst in der Hitler-Jugend).

By means of this all-round training and education, the Hitlerjugend aimed at preparing its members both physically and mentally, to take up their duties with the Armed Forces. The firing instruction and field training for the elder boys was a necessary and logical continuation and development of the general physical training. The object of the firing instruction was to attain maximum efficiency in the handling and maintenance of a small rifle and a continued improvement in the firing skill of the individual.

The field training aimed at making the boys fully acquainted with terrain so that they could carry out any given exercises correctly. They had to be able to judge and make the fullest use of any type of terrain and had to learn camouflage and methods of deceiving the enemy. They were trained to observe and designate a target, and to transmit messages accurately. In this way, members of the Hitler Youth were to be made to realize that proper use of terrain would increase the effectiveness of their weapons and obviate losses hard to replace. They were trained to perform all movements in the field mechanically and learned to do them correctly by force of habit.

These 12-month courses, for which the Hitlerjugend Military Certificate was awarded as proof of completion of their firing and field training, comprised a total of 162 hours of instruction and training (four hours a day and 24 Sundays, with an additional three hours on one Sunday of each month, and two hours of instruction a day on 24 weekdays).

b. Training procedure

Military training in firing and general field activities comprised parade-ground drill, small-rifle instruction, and theoretical and applied field training.

(1) Parade-ground drill

This type of drill served to mould the bearing of the individual and to teach him to give commands on the parade-ground himself. It also aimed at training the Hitlerjugend in discipline, obedience, and subordination. A minimum of parade-ground drill was incorporated in the curriculum.

(2) Small-caliber firing instruction (.22 caliber)

The experiences of the war showed once again the necessity -- in spite of modern automatic weapons -- of training the German soldier to be a good rifleman. For this reason, before their induction into the Army, members of the Hitlerjugend were taught the rudiments of good marksmanship by means of training in small-caliber firing. The small-caliber (.22) rifle was used at a range of 50 meters. In the rifle instruction periods, the function, maintenance, and cleaning of this rifle were dealt with. In the firing instruction periods, the firing mechanism of the weapon, the trajectory of the projectile, the cone of fire, etc. were explained.

The boys learned the following firing positions: prone with rest, prone without rest, kneeling without rest (later forbidden). They were divided into three firing classes: basic, advanced, and special.

The following were the firing requirements for these classes (12-ring target, 5 rounds).

Firing position	Compulsory		
	Basic	Advanced	Special
Prone, with rest	No shot under 4, or a score of 25 with 4 hits	No shot under 6, or a score of 35 with 5 hits	No shot under 8, or a score of 45 with 5 hits
Prone, without rest	No shot under 3, or a score of 20 with 5 hits	No shot under 5, or a score of 30, with 5 hits	No shot under 7, or a score of 30 with 5 hits

Target-practice at every range was preceded by at least one trial practice. On attaining the required score in one firing class, a boy was transferred to the next class. In addition to this, firing contests on the range were organized.

Those of the Hitlerjugend who reached the required standard in all three classes received the Hitlerjugend Firing Award. They were also eligible for the Hitlerjugend Marksmanship Award, the requirements for which were as follows:

10 rounds, prone, with rest -- score of 100
10 rounds, prone, without rest -- score of 95
10 rounds, standing, without rest -- score of 65
5 round each, prone, kneeling, standing, all without rest -- score of 130
3 rounds, prone without rest, rapid fire in one minute -- 3 hits in the bull's-eye
5 rounds, prone, without rest, at a figure target -- 3 hits in the scoring area

(3) Field training

All field exercises had to be preceded by a preparatory instruction period at the sand table. The subject matter and the schedule and timing of the exercise were discussed. A sector of terrain was selected to demonstrate correct and incorrect methods, and to bring out mistakes most frequently made and methods of correcting them. If no suitable terrain was found, an imaginary area would be adopted.

Terrain analyses formed a further part of outdoor training. The boys were taught to describe a given sector in concise, correct and well-constructed sentences. Preparatory training for this was given at the sand table.

In map intelligence, the boys were taught how to understand and read a map in detail. They were expected to be able to find their way quickly in any given area with the aid of a map. Special exercises to develop their powers of observation were used, and members of the Hitlerjugend learned to observe and designate targets.

The boys were also taught methods of determining distances in the field.

Experiences at the front continually had shown the importance of improving terrain and developing natural fortifications. Training in this could be accomplished by insuring that use be made of camouflage and dummy emplacements, and that the boys dug in. Particularly during the last part of the war, special attention was given to these training matters in order to relieve the Armed Forces of some of the training work.

Communications training (Meldewesen) was also given in the Hitlerjugend. The boys had to be able to transmit a message either in writing or verbally, and had to be able to supplement written messages with sketches.

The course was ended with the so-called applied field training, in which, both in daytime and at night, the group performed everything that had been practiced previously.

At the end of 1942, Hitlerjugend military conditioning camps were set up with the cooperation of the Armed Forces. The training there usually lasted about three weeks and was directed by Hitler Youth leaders. Each camp had young officers and a few NCOs (mostly disabled) as instructors, aided by some enlisted men. The soldiers gave the boys a condensed form of military training which qualified them for the Hitlerjugend Military Certificate. The boys were usually trained in handling carbines, hand grenades, and later also the recoilless antitank grenade launcher (Panzerfaust). Toward the end of the war, special stress was laid on patrol activity and antitank combat.

At the end of their training, those who had met the requirements were assembled in units up to brigade strength.

The members of the special units were also sent to these military conditioning camps.

c. Training of the special units in wartime

The securing and training of replacements for the Air Force, the Navy, the motorized combat elements, and the signal corps in the Army and Air Force, assumed a greater importance during the war than in peacetime. This is one of the reasons why training of the special units was continued during the war and even extended, to some degree. In the physical training schedule for 16 to 18-year olds in the special units, thorough firing and field training was included. The ultimate aim of this training, too, was qualification for the Hitlerjugend Military Certificate. Calisthenics was dropped from the syllabus.

The 14 and 15-year olds in the Hitlerjugend special units were given training for two hours a week in basic physical training. Because of lack of time and instructors, the boys could not be given any firing instruction or field training.

(1) Hitlerjugend Naval Branch

The service routine in the Hitlerjugend Naval Branch adapted itself to wartime conditions. The 14 and 15-year olds of the Naval Branch were given two hours training a week in basic physical training and, in addition, two hours on two Sundays each month. Special training took place on a weekday (two hours) and on one Sunday (three hours). The 16 to 18-year olds in the Naval Branch were given firing instruction and field training on one weekday (two hours) and on three Sundays each month. Special training took place on one weekday (two hours) and on one Sunday (four hours) in the month. The ultimate aim of this training was to qualify the 14 and 15-year olds for the Sea-Sport Award. In the case of the 16 to 18-year olds, it aimed at bringing them up to the required standard of marksmanship for the Hitlerjugend Military Certificate.

The outdoor training was cut down somewhat in favor of training in routine maritime duties.

(2) Hitlerjugend Motor Branch

Training in the Motor Branch was continued and extended during the war in cooperation with the National Socialist Motor Corps (NSKK). Technical and trade training received the main stress. The work schedule was as follows: 14 and 15-year olds, basic physical training, two hours every week, one hour a day on two Sundays in the month; technical training, two hours every two weeks. Sixteen to 18-year olds, theoretical exercises in field training and firing, two hours per week; practical firing instruction and field training, three Sundays in the month; technical and workshop training, two hours a week; driving school and tests for driving licenses twice a month.

(3) Hitlerjugend Aviation Branch

Physical training for 14 and 15-year old boys in this category included the following: basic physical training, two hours a week and two hours on two Sundays in the month; aircraft construction or aeronautical instruction, two or three hours a week; flying practice, one Sunday in the month up to ten hours on two Sundays in March and April respectively. Physical training for the 16 to 18-year olds included the following: theoretical in the field training and firing instruction, two hours a week; practical firing instruction and field training, three Sundays a month; aircraft construction or aeronautical instruction, two to three hours a week; flying practice, one Sunday in the month up to 10 hours on two Sundays in March and April respectively. The aircraft construction periods aimed at teaching the boys to build and repair gliders. Aeronautical instruction included history of aviation, organization of the German Air Force, air traffic, aeronautics, meteorology, and aerial geography. In addition, the activity of the German Air Force in the various theaters of war was discussed. The flying practice periods prepared the boys in the Aviation Branch for test A, or gave them further training according to the standard they had already attained. During the war, as in peacetime, the National Socialist Flying Corps (NSFK) gave active support to this training scheme by holding courses at glider schools (Segelflugschulen) and technical schools, detaching some of its personnel for instructional duties, etc.

(4) Hitlerjugend Signal Branch

During the war, the physical training schedule for the special units of the signal branch included the following: 14 and 15-year olds -- basic physical training, two hours a week and two hours every Sunday; technical signal instruction, two to three hours a week; field signal training, five hours a month. Sixteen to 18-year olds -- theoretical firing instruction and field training, two hours a week; practical firing instruction and field training, three days a month; technical signal instruction, two to three hours a week; field signal drill, one period a month up to five hours. The technical signal instruction included basic principles of signal communication, Morse code transmission and signal procedure, signal technique and knowledge of equipment, planning and discussion of signal exercises in the field, and repair and maintenance of signal equipment.

(5) Wartime training in the Hitlerjugend Patrol Service, the band units, and the first-aid units was not different from peacetime.

d. Other types of special training of the Hitlerjugend

(1) Riding and driving training

On the basis of an agreement with the National Socialist Riding Corps, any boy who was interested in this type of training could learn to ride and drive. The boys were not assembled in special units. The training aimed at preparing them for duty with the mounted and horse-drawn field units of the Army, and qualified them for the Riding Certificate of the Storm Troops (Reiterschein der SA).

(2) Training of the Hitlerjugend in air-raid protection

As the war progressed, air-raid protection employment for the Hitlerjugend became increasingly important. In time, the forces at the disposal of the fire protection police and of the fire departments -- especially in the larger cities -- became inadequate. As a result, they were reinforced by members of the Hitler Youth, over 15 years of age, who were specially trained in fire fighting. The boys assigned to fire brigade duty were not assembled in special units like the naval or signal branches of the Hitler Youth. For their training in the technicalities of fire-fighting, they were divided into HJ section, platoon, and company. While on duty, they were under the command of the fire protection police.

The technical training consisted of all kinds of exercises and work connected with fire protection. The ultimate aim to train the Hitlerjugend in the use of all fire-protecting equipment and appliances in cooperation with professional firemen. In order to attain the highest standard of training, the Hitlerjugend was supplied, wherever possible, with special fire-fighting equipment and vehicles. As a result, as soon as they had attained a certain standard of training, these units were available for immediate employment on actual fire-fighting work.

The training came under the supervision of the local chief of the fire protection police or the chief of the fire department. The schedule of work was drawn up by the latter in conjunction with the commanders of the local Hitlerjugend units. Training was not supposed to exceed a total of 70 hours per year; this total counted as part of the complete Hitlerjugend training.

(3) Mountain training in the Hitlerjugend

In order to secure necessary replacements with preparatory training for the mountain troops, mountaineering was included in the general physical training program of the Hitlerjugend. This training which, naturally, could take place only if geographical conditions were suitable, was carried out in cooperation with the German Alpine Club (Deutscher Alpenverein).

The timetable provided for two evenings of theoretical instruction and two Sundays of practical mountaineering per month; in addition, a mountain trip (Bergfahrt) lasting about eight days, was scheduled to take place once a year, either in summer or winter.

The theoretical instruction included such topics as alpine equipment, nutrition and physical culture, use of the rope between rocks, on ice, and with skis, alpine map reading, the use of the compass, route sketches, meteorology, information on rocks, glaciers, and avalanches, rules to follow in case of mountain and snow-slide accidents and exposure to frost, organization and carrying out of mountain rescue service, and nature preservation.

The practical work in the mountaineering instruction consisted of the use of the rope, climbing, traversing of steep terrain, whether rocks or ice, rapelling, alpine skiing, use of maps and other methods of orientation, proceeding with the aid of sketches made on the trip, estimation of mountainous terrain, and bivouacking.

F. Training of the Hitler Youth Leaders

Hitler Youth leader replacements were supplemented annually by boys specially selected for their qualities of leadership. Prerequisites for such selection were physical coordination, mental and physical alertness, enthusiasm for duty, absolute reliability of character, natural bent and talents in any direction worthy of develment, and in addition, attendance at secondary school, and prescribed apprenticeship.

The boys who had thus been singled out were assembled for six days at a selection camp. Those who were finally selected underwent preparatory training as subleaders. In towns this was carried out in training units, (these had to be discontinued during the war) and in rural districts by means of schools. The training lasted a year for the Jungvolk and six months for the Hitlerjugend. They were then assigned as leaders of the HJ or DJ sections. As such, they were given further training and were prepared for their subsequent duties as leaders of HJ or DJ platoons. This training was given either at week-end schools or eight-day courses at the Hitler Youth regimental leaders' school (Führerschulen des Bannes). At the Hitler Youth regional leaders' school (Führerschulen des Gebietes), suitable DJ platoon leaders were trained as DJ company leaders; and potential HJ company leaders, returning to the Hitler Youth from the Armed Forces, were trained as company leaders. The training of company headquarters sergeants (Hauptscharführer) also took place at these schools.

At the Reich leader-schools (Reichsführerschulen), refresher courses were held for regiment commanders, as well as special courses.

To deal with the Hitler Youth war program, it was necessary that at least some of its leaders should be given special training in such subjects as marksmanship and field routine. This was done in two-week courses. Training consisted of parade-ground drill (eight hours), marksmanship (31 hours), field training (55 hours), and miscellaneous subjects (25 hours). These courses were held by the Armed Forces within the Hitler Youth region and were attended by the instructors in marksmanship and field training (Kriegsübungsleiter im Schiess- und Geländedienst). The latter were selected according to their teaching ability and their grasp of teaching methods. In addition to these courses, there were others for Hitler Youth marksmanship instructors and their assistants. All the students had to have attained the necessary standard in the training class; they were also required to be efficient teachers. The courses were held at the Hitler Youth Reich Marksmanship School in Suhl (Thuringia).

G. Liaison Between the Hitler Youth and the Armed Forces

1. In Peacetime

From 1933, when the Hitler Youth had become the only large youth organization in Germany, it was inevitable that the Armed Forces should take an interest in it. The Armed Forces very soon realized the value of the preliminary training the Hitler Youth gave for later military service, and attached great importance to close collaboration with it. The High Command of the Armed Forces nominated a special liaison officer to the Reich Directorate of the German Youth whose duty it was to act as adviser to the Directorate in all matters of military education. He assisted the Hitler Youth in carrying out its physical training scheme to the advantage of the Armed Forces. In addition, the liaison officer was expected to try to arouse the interest of the younger generation in the Armed Forces and persuade them to become professional officers or NCOs.

2. In Wartime

Any problem of the Hitler Youth which concerned the Armed Forces was placed before the Armed Forces High Command by the Inspectorate of Education and Training of the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army (Inspektion des Erziehungs-und Ausbildungswesens des Chefs der Heeresrüstung und Befehlshaber des Ersatzheeres) and, from 1943 on, by the Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs (Generalinspekteur für den Führernachwuchs des Heeres):

As in peacetime, his duties were merely of an advisory nature and, again, of encouraging the younger generation to voluntary enlistment in the various branches of the Army or to a career as a Regular officer or NCO. The war training of the Hitler Youth culminated in the establishment of Hitler Youth military training camps toward the end of 1942. As the war progressed, military training in these camps, for which there originally had been no provision as far as the Hitler Youth was concerned, became a matter of increasing importance. From 1 February 1945, the duty of giving advice on all questions relating to military training for the Hitler Youth was taken over by the staff of the Training Department of the Commander in Chief of the Replacement Army. The Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs was concerned only with propaganda and publicity matters. In the case of great opposition, orders were issued to the Reich Directorate of the Hitler Youth by the Army, giving in detail the various aspects of military training that were to be stressed. It was on the basis of the youth training that the German Labor Service and, to a large extent, the Armed Forces themselves were built up.

H. Employment of the Hitler Youth in the Armed Forces in Wartime

1. War Employment

As a means of conserving personnel fit for active duty, the Armed Forces provided all kinds of employment for the Hitler Youth, such as delivery of mobilization orders (Gestellungsbefehlen), courier service, help in loading military transports, commissary service on troop transports, guiding personnel to their destinations in the blackout, etc.

2. Air Force and Navy Auxiliaries (Luftwaffen-und Marinehelfer)

During the last part of the war, in consequence of its length and the resulting shortage of personnel, it became necessary to employ members of the Hitler Youth as auxiliaries in the Navy and Air Force. They were generally assigned to home-based antiaircraft batteries, where they acted as messengers, telephone operators, and ammunition handlers. So that the boys' academic education should not be entirely neglected, complete classes, with one or two leaders, were usually set up in each battery. Time not required for military training was devoted to school work.

3. Army NCO Preparatory Schools

The Army NCO preparatory schools also carried on premilitary training although they did not belong to the Hitler Youth organization. These schools, of which there were about 20, were under the command of the Inspector of Education and Training of the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army. The students were generally war orphans or sons of Regular NCOs, who received their education free of charge. These schools can be described as a kind of welfare institution. The academic education of the boys, whose ages ranged from 14 to 17 years, was continued and they were given military training which approximately complied with the ideas set forth above. This in no way replaced the basic training given to the recruits.

It was the desire of the Armed Forces that the maximum number of these NCO students should later take up the career of the professional NCO, although no compulsion of any kind existed. After the completion of their education at the Army NCO preparatory school, the boys were drafted into the Army as every other German boy was drafted, and were given the same training. Army NCO preparatory schools were dissolved in 1943 on the insistence of the Party.

I. Summary

As far as it is possible to estimate the value of the Hitler Youth, it can be said that, apart from the work done with the direct interest of the Armed Forces in mind, the Hitler Youth complied fully with all the demands made of it, especially during the last few years.

In the field of premilitary youth development, valuable preliminary work was done for the Armed Forces. When the standards did not meet with the requirements of the Armed Forces, the reason for the deficiency was that the Armed Forces played no really decisive part in the military training in the Hitler Youth either before or during the war. Theirs was never more than an advisory function. The higher officials of the Hitler Youth would have resisted strongly any really active intervention on the part of the Armed Forces.

On the other hand, the Hitler Youth leaders responsible for training, who were often inexperienced and too young to hold such posts were apt to draw up schedules for military training which demanded achievement far beyond youthful capabilities. Furthermore, they lacked the necessary experience to carry out these training programs effectively. In consequence, their efforts often resulted in aimless drilling and in playing at soldiers, a state of affairs completely at variance with the ideas of the Armed Forces.

Thus there developed at times rather a strained relationship between the Armed Forces and the Hitler Youth. This affected not only the internal routine of the Hitler Youth but also, and more vitally, the boys themselves when they were finally drafted into the Armed Forces. They started their military careers convinced that they already knew everything required of them, possibly even better than the standards demanded. This, of course, was not the case. It was essential to break down their arrogance, especially in the case of leaders who, while still comparatively young, had occupied high positions often entailing responsibility for thousands of boys. Attempts to do this, however, frequently ended in failure.

Furthermore, complete nation-wide uniformity of training technique or of subjects taught was never quite achieved. The youthful recruits from different areas were apt to be trained in varying degrees because of a shortage of weapons and instructors and the fact that, in the cities, Hitler Youth members were often employed almost continually as air raid wardens, etc.

In spite of these drawbacks, it cannot be denied that -- particularly in the last years of war -- the war training in the Hitler Youth was a good preparation for routine duty in the Armed Forces, especially when work with the special units was concerned. By the time the boys who had passed through this training were drafted into the Armed Forces, they had developed a resistant and hardened physique. Moreover, in certain branches of training, they were so advanced that it was only necessary to give them a short refresher course in these subjects when they entered the Armed Forces (general bearing, discipline, rudiments of outdoor training, map reading, etc.) As a result, a considerable amount of time was saved and the young recruits could be given a more thorough training in other subjects or sent to the front before conclusion of their basic training.

Chapter 8

EDUCATION AND TRAINING IN THE GERMAN LABOR SERVICE

A. General

The idea of a general labor service originated with Hierl who later became German Labor Service leader. He hoped it would form a stop-gap to alleviate the damage caused by unemployment after World War I, and be a kind of substitute for the education which otherwise would have been given by the Armed Forces. It was not intended that this general labor service should be a means of supplying cheap labor for private enterprise, nor, on the other hand, a competitive State enterprise for keeping wages low. It was to be solely for the benefit of the Reich and the people.

The Labor Service was begun in about 1931, at first on a voluntary basis. Within a very short time, it won almost universal approval. The new idea found many supporters, not only in the ranks of what could be called patriotic associations, but also in the ranks of those whose political aims were entirely different.

The service was at first a series of Voluntary Labor Service Unions (Freiwillige Arbeitsdienstvereine) scattered over the country and rather loosely coordinated.

These unions amalgamated in 1934 into the National Socialist Labor Service (Nationalsozialistischer Arbeitsdienst E.V.).

The ultimate aim of Labor Service leaders was the introduction of compulsory labor service for every young German. Already in 1934, any German in search of employment with the government, municipal authorities, or the Party, or even with a private enterprise, was accepted only if he had passed through the Voluntary Labor Service training. In consequence, most of the younger generation was practically compelled to undergo this training. In 1935, general compulsory military service was reintroduced into Germany. The establishment of a universal compulsory labor service followed naturally and almost immediately.

B. Organization of the German Labor Service (RAD)

The German Labor Service was headed by Hierl. Its strength was to be 200,000 men and the period of service was fixed at six months. Many schools were organized.

The national school of the German Labor Service for training senior officers, five first sergeants' schools (Feldmeisterschulen), and 19 corporals' schools (Truppführerschulen), still existed at the end of the war.

All able-bodied men who were liable for labor service were called up under the organization's own replacement registration system. Voluntary enlistment in the German Labor Service was possible at the age of 18.

The work of the German Labor Service was devoted largely to securing, maintaining, and increasing the productivity of the soil, thereby giving substantial aid to agricultural workers. By helping with harvest and by soil and forest conservation etc., the German Labor Service could preserve German national property from destruction. It was also committed for such work as building the Westwall.

C. Duties of the German Labor Service

a. In Peacetime

Aside from actual work, the German Labor Service stressed physical training. This was partly in the form of good working conditions, food, sleep, etc.; on the other hand, there was a good deal of a military type of training which included calisthenics, parade-ground drill, and field training. A certain amount of mental and ideological education also was given. By this, it was hoped to instill in the young man confidence in his leaders, a sense of responsibility toward the community, and a serious conception of work. Political instruction periods aimed at educating the young men in National Socialist doctrines.

b. In Wartime

In addition to its other tasks, the German Labor Service had the duty of organizing construction troops for Army and Air Force. These troops were to be employed for the defense of Germany in the event of national emergency. By making full use of their personnel and equipment, the German Labor Service detachments then in existence (in 1939 there were about 1700 with 360,000 men) could supply the permanent staff and framework for construction units of the Armed Forces. The complement would then be brought up to scale by drawing on the older groups, who had received their training a considerable time before. In the event of large-scale mobilization, it was planned that the entire Labor Service should come under the control of the Armed Forces. This measure took effect at the out-break of World War II. About 300 of the detachments remained at work on the Westwall and under Labor Service command.

In December 1939, the German Labor Service construction detachments which had been placed under the control of the Armed Forces were converted into proper Army units. For this purpose, the younger groups of the German Labor Service were released for military training in the Armed Forces, and German Labor Service leaders were employed on the reconstruction of the organization. The majority of these newly formed Labor Service detachments were then employed within the Armed Forces, although they remained under the leadership of the parent organization. These detachments were used by the Army as supply units, demolition units for dealing with war damage and obstacles, fortifications, bridge and road construction parties, depot administration, survey of captured materiel, salvage, etc. In the Air Force, the Labor Service detachments proved particularly helpful in the construction of airfields in Germany and the occupied countries and the building of roads and cover against observation and enemy bombardment. As the war progressed, they were employed to a larger extent in antiaircraft batteries in the zone of the interior. In the Navy, they were mainly used for construction of coastal fortifications.

D. Military Education and Training

Originally, military conditioning in the German Labor Service was confined solely to calisthenics, parade-ground drill, field training, and military construction work. The administrative office which dealt with this training was the Bureau for Education and Training.

a. Training during employment with the armed forces on the Westwall

In the event of mobilization, it was intended to use a number of the German Labor Service detachments as security units on the Westwall. In actual fact, this measure came into effect in 1938. As such, they came under the control of the Armed Forces and became military units. They were known as companies, and their members were considered soldiers. They wore as insignia a yellow arm band with the inscription "German Armed Forces." The duty of the security units was not the defense of the Westwall, except in case of emergency; it included such things as precautions against reconnaissance patrols and infiltration, armored vehicle obstacles, and the improvement of fields of fire. The units were lightly armed and were primarily concerned with the sectors they had constructed.

To allow these detachments to carry out their work and, if necessary, to put up an effective defense, they were given a short military training. The Army supplied the necessary instructional personnel (training detachments), but the Labor Service had to see that this training was given sufficient time without cutting down too much on regular Labor Service work. The training detachments received their directives from the Training Branch of the Army General Staff, which was responsible for the standard reached.

One Army training detachment was allotted to every security unit. Its personnel consisted of one sergeant, five corporals, and five privates; its equipment consisted of 30 rifles, two light machine guns, one heavy machine gun, 30 dummy hand grenades, 10 gas masks, and telephone equipment. Training with antitank guns was given by special training units. In the beginning, this short military training, which lasted 12 weeks, had as requirements:

For all personnel: firing of the rifle, use of hand grenades and chemical warfare protective equipment; squad, platoon, and company tactics
For all German Labor Service leaders (officers and NCOs) and foremen, and about one-third of the workmen: use of the light machine gun
For a number of Labor Service leaders and workmen: use of antitank gun and heavy machine gun (no indirect laying)
For certain individuals: use of infantry special signal communications equipment.

The members of the Labor Service were to be given sufficient military training over a period of three months to enable them to defend any fortified sector to which they might be assigned for a limited time. The training was to be carried out with regard to this particular purpose only, and all ceremonial training and drill were to be omitted.

The time allotted for training was divided in such a way that the detachment worked three days and spent the rest of the week on military training. The working day lasted eight hours. In the end it became necessary to cut down the time allotted to military training to five hours per day because of the urgency of the work on the Westwall.

As a result of this reduction in time, it was no longer possible to fulfill the original aims of the training. This short military training, therefore, became restricted to that of the squad and the individual soldier. Platoon and company training was generally omitted. The commanders of the service commands also kept an eye on the military training in the German Labor Service.

b. Military training (1940 to 1944)

After the reorganization of the German Labor Service at the beginning of the war, all military training was placed on a different footing. The German Labor Service Leader (Hierl) took the view, as he had in the case of those employed on the Westwall, that military training was necessary only in so far as it enabled a work detachment to defend itself against possible attacks by guerrilla troops. Its members were expected to defend themselves, if necessary, when working with the fighting services. Training with the light machine gun (except for leaders and subleaders), the heavy machine gun, and the antitank gun was omitted.

Because of the length of the war and the losses in battle, the Armed Forces were continually faced with the problem of how to increase the time allotted for training the reserves, especially considering the lack of weapons in the Replacement Army. The Armed Forces took the view that, in total war, an organization like the German Labor Service could not be permitted to waste the time allotted to it for training on drill and marching exercises such as goose-stepping, drill with the spade, etc., which had been abolished in the Armed Forces; however, it failed to eliminate these exercises entirely. Moreover, the German Labor Services leaders, unlike their counterparts in the Hitler Youth, refused to include in the training schedule subjects which could have proved of use in the training routine of the Armed Forces. For this reason, the Armed Forces placed a resolution before the Führer (three times, but in vain) demanding the dissolution of the Labor Service for the duration of the war. Had the resolution been approved, the basic training could have been prolonged. In addition, a considerable number of leaders and subleaders of the German Labor Service, who were excellent material, would have become available for combat duty.

c. Military training after 1944

It was not until the fall of 1944 that the efforts of the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army (Kuntze, General of the Engineers) to persuade the Labor Service to comply with the demands of the Armed Forces met with success, though this was only partial. For the duration of war, the Labor Service agreed to take over some of the military training of the Armed Forces, in addition to its own duties

This military training however, could be of value to the Armed Forces only if it were carried out properly. On the basis of a detailed agreement with German Labor Service Leader Hierl, the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army was entrusted by the Führer with the task of insuring that the military training was up to standard. This responsibility was shared by the Inspector of the Infantry, his senior infantry officers, and the service commanders. Courses were held by the Replacement Army to train the German Labor Service leaders for their new duties. The Army did not detail any of its training detachments to the German Labor Service, and there were no special camps for training purposes such as the Hitler Youth military conditioning camps. At the beginning of 1945, the military training in the Hitler Youth and in the German Labor Service were at last put on the same footing, giving the Armed Forces a common basis upon which to build.

The transfer to the Army of most German Labor Service detachments as complete construction units, which had begun at the beginning of the war, was of short duration. The Labor Service returned to its original employment on various types of construction and was again responsible only to Hierl. An exception to this was the German Labor Service antiaircraft batteries.

Workmen were formed into heavy antiaircraft batteries under the command of their own Labor Service leaders. Their training lasted four weeks with a six-hour working day.

E. Summary

The German Labor Service finally achieved all the aims it had set for itself. It was considered the most exemplary institution developed by the Party. This could also be said of its peacetime military conditioning.

In wartime, the wisdom of making use of the Labor Service in construction units and antiaircraft batteries, etc., was shown beyond a doubt. The well-established organization, the splendid officer material, and the youth of the Labor

Service, all proved of value, especially inasmuch as the Armed Forces were provided with recruits who had undergone a good preliminary mental and physical training.

Nevertheless, it must be understood that, with all its good points, the Labor Service under Hierl continually shut its eyes to the urgency of the Armed Forces' demands that it should adapt itself to wartime conditions. As a result, valuable officer and NCO material was lost to military training and consequently to the combat zone. Futhermore, if the German Labor Service had submitted to the demands of the Armed Forces in the first place and taken over a more thorough military training, the Armed Forces would have been relieved of some of the training work.

A few weeks before the end of war, on Hitler's order, German Labor Service brigades and divisions were formed. Insofar as these units saw any active service, their failure is to be attributed to an overestimation of the training in military leadership and combat routine actually given in the German Labor Service.

Chapter 9

MILITARY TRAINING OF THE SA

A. General

The SA (Sturm Abteilung - Storm Troops) was the largest organization in the Party. It was constituted in 1921, to answer the demand for a guard to protect Nazi Party meetings and to break up meetings of opposing parties. From the start, it was the mailed fist of the Party, with occasional tendency to undisciplined violence. This voluntary "Brownshirt" organization was not without ideals, most of which centered around socialism, patriotism, elimination of capitalism and class distinctions, and obedience to the Party. Its main strength lay in its political conviction.

From 1933 on, it was the task of the SA, as the organization responsible for education in the Party, to create a new type of German -- the political soldier. Unlike the veterans' organizations, the SA did not tend to look back on World War I and keep alive its memories. On the contrary, its members aimed constantly at mastering the future by becoming efficient, conscientious soldiers. It provided, thus, a sort of military training for many Party members who, because of the limited size of the German Army, would otherwise not have been trained at all.

B. Military Training up to 1939

The military training in the SA up to 1939 included parade-ground drill, physical training, rifle training, and field training.

Drill helped to smarten and to maintain the general bearing and appearance of the men. Moreover, it increased the effectiveness of formations employed. Physical training consisted of sports, where teamwork rather than individual competition was stressed, and of basic physical, combat, and defense exercises. Field training consisted of both individual and group training. Individual training included map reading and orientation, sketching, description and evaluation, range estimation, camouflage (use of entrenching tools), protection against air attacks, methods of moving across open country in daytime and at night. Group training included reconnaissance patrol training, cross-country and orientation marches, as well as military sports contests.

In 1933, the SA Sports Badge was created. In order to qualify for this proof of physical and paramilitary achievement, the following three requirements were set: Physical: 100 meter dash, broad jump, dummy grenade throwing, shot putting, and 3000 meter run.

Military: small-caliber firing, 25-kilometer march with full pack, 200-meter cross-country run over four obstacles (wearing the gas mask), hand grenade target throwing, swimming or cycling, and first aid.

Field training: orientation, terrain observation and appreciation, range estimation, camouflage, message procedure, utilization of terrain, and conduct in the field. There were three grades to the SA Sport Badge: bronze, silver, and gold.

The annual national sports contests and full-pack marching championships were a means of testing the general standard of physical training in the SA. Apart from its concern with the military conditioning training, the SA was responsible for arranging, policing, and protecting mass-meetings, elections, etc.

In addition to the general SA units, there existed technical units such as the naval, mounted, engineer, and signal SA companies (SA Stürme). These were essential in order to keep the SA in constant readiness for any task it might be called upon to perform (e.g., assisting in areas devastated by natural catastrophes, at the scene of railroad accidents, etc.)

C. Organization of the SA

The SA was divided into corps (Gruppen), brigades (Brigaden), regiments (Standarten), battalions (Sturmbanne), and companies (Stürme). The strength of these units was determined by the density of the population in the various districts. There were 28 corps in all.

The commander of the SA was at first Göring, later Röhm, then Lutze, and finally Schepmann. To its command staff were attached: the Inspectors for Education and Training of Leaders for the SA Naval Branch, SA Cavalry Branch, SA Engineer Branch, SA Mountain Branch, and for the SA Signal Branch. These officers maintained liaison with the Armed Forces, each in his particular branch of service. There was also the Military Defense Staff of the SA (Wehrstab der SA), which cooperated with the High Commands of these branches of the Armed Forces.

D. SA Defense Units

After the purge of 30 June 1934 the importance of the SA decreased steadily. It no longer had a specific task to perform. At the beginning of 1939, though, it began to come back into the limelight. Every German youth who had attained the age of 18 and all discharged soldiers, providing they were fit for military service and not already in the SS, the Motor Corps (NSKK), or the Flying Corps (NSFK), were to be enrolled in the SA Defense Units. In the case of the youths, they were expected to try for the SA Defense Badge which became the basis of all premilitary and postmilitary defense training (formerly the SA Sports Badge). It was not, however, necessary for them to be in the SA Defense Units to try for this Defense Badge. Anyone of 18 or more could attempt to qualify. In the case of the discharged soldiers, enrollment in the SA Defense Units was for the purpose of maintaining the high standard of military training. They also tried for the SA Defense Badge.

This responsibility for the training of the Defense Units fell to the SA itself. In this matter, close cooperation with the Armed Forces was demanded. In working out the routine and in order to keep up the military skill and soldierly spirit of the individual, the requirements of the Armed Forces were to be taken into consideration.

To carry out this new task, it was necessary that the SA should keep in the closest possible touch with the local Armed Forces drafting area (Wehrerstazbezirke), the recruiting district headquarters (Wehrbezirkskommandos), and the recruiting classification headquarters (Wehrmeldeämter), so that they could reach all eligible men. The majority of the SA leaders in charge of the training had passed through Armed Forces schools or had received the necessary training at the SA Reich Schools.

Because of the mobilization in 1939, this new and important commitment of the SA was not fully realized in practice. For example, discharged soldiers were called up again in large numbers before they could serve any time with the SA.

E. Employment of the SA in Wartime

During the war, the members of the SA were able to prove that their military training had achieved its purpose. As Reserves, SA men were inducted into the Armed Forces, where the training they had undergone bore fruit. The Reserves were, from the first, able to endure the strain of campaigns with almost the same ease as Regular soldiers.

Complete SA units were employed only in very rare cases, for instance in Danzig, where a reinforced border control service was formed from SA regiments. Members of the SA Engineer Branch reinforced the State police engineer company (Pionierkompanie der Landespolizei), whereas members of the SA Naval Branch were used in coastal defense work.

In Upper Silesia, two SA regiments were employed to protect coal mines and industrial plants in Polish hands against sabotage. In the Sudetenland, SA corps were used to guard the Czech-Polish border. The majority of the SA, however, was inducted into the Armed Forces.

F. Employment of the SA in the Zone of the Interior

Only a few members of the SA did not serve with the Armed Forces, and these were men who were either too old for active duty, disabled, or deferred for special duties at home such as essential industries. Military education took first place on the duty schedule. In contrast to 1939, it was conducted on a nominally voluntary basis in the SA Reserve Military Units (SA Wehrmannschaften). These Reserve units took in all able-bodied, deferred men who could spare time from their work and wished to prepare themselves for combat duty. The aim of this training was qualification for the SA Defense Badge. Later, in the training of units of the Replacement Army, it was a simple matter to pick out the men who had undergone this premilitary training in the Defense Units on account of their bearing and ability. For this reason, it was possible either to send them to the front with less training than the average recruit or to train them more thoroughly in various specialized branches. Moreover, after a very short period, a larger number of them could be employed as NCOs or assistant instructors.

In order to keep the military education in the SA Reserve Military Units in line with each other, and to improve the ability of the SA leaders, instructor courses were held regularly at the SA School Schliersee near Munich.

Up to 31 August 1939, the SA Defense Badge was awarded 1,569,680 times in all, and 276,008 times more by 11 November 1942.

G. War Record of the SA Special Units

The SA Signal Branch trained its men in all types of signal and communications work with special emphasis on radio training. In accordance with a special agreement with the Army High Command, the SA Signal Certificate (SA-Nachrichtenschein) for radio and telephone operators was awarded at the end of the course. As a general rule, the men in this category were assigned to Army communications units or other signal units of the Armed Forces.

Members of the SA Engineer Branch were assigned to the engineers or the construction engineers. The SA Naval Branch provided the Navy with thoroughly trained replacements, all of whom had attended courses at the SA Naval School at Hamburg. Holders of the SA Medical Certificate (SA-Sanitätsachein) were assigned to the medical corps or became medical orderlies attached to line units. The SA Mountain Branch regularly held two-week courses in the mountains for ski and other winter military training. Those who took part were the SA corps training officers, who later took over the training in their corps. These courses, together with the general mountain training, were an excellent preparation for service with the mountain troops. In the SA Cavalry Branch, riding, driving, and care of horses were taught. Holders of the Riders' Certificate (SA-Reiterschein) were given preference for horse-drawn and cavalry units of the Army.

Only after the regular SA basic training did the special units receive their special training.

H. Relationship Between the SA and the Armed Forces

Since the SA had taken over the premilitary and postmilitary training of German youth in 1939, cooperation with the Armed Forces became necessary.

The Chief of Staff of the SA had to have the approval of the Commanders in Chief of the three armed services on the service regulations he issued for the Reserve Military Units. The SA Military Staff was formed in June 1939 as liaison between the SA and the Armed Forces. In charge was a senior SA leader who was assisted by representatives of the three services. The latter were directly responsible to their respective Commanders in Chief. The basic training requirements for the Defense Units, which were laid down by the Army General Staff, as well as the more specialized requirements stipulated by the other two arms, were implemented and issued by the Military Staff. From there also came the directives on premilitary training and the periodic postmilitary reconditioning.

In the military areas, area commanders or their liaison division chiefs were entrusted with the actual supervision of training in the Defense Units. Other liaison officers to individual SA corps headquarters were detailed by the service commands.

I. Summary

The military training program, compulsory for all, which was to take effect in the fall of 1939, was never carried out because of the large scale of mobilization at that time. This was considered unfortunate in the light of the high general standard of training the program would have effected. Those who joined the SA on a more or less voluntary basis and underwent its training during the war years, were invaluable to the Armed Forces as they represented a nucleus of physically and mentally prepared recruit material. This training in all phases of premilitary conditioning put them on a far higher level than raw recruits, and there is no doubt that SA training on the whole was outstandingly successful.

Chapter 10

MILITARY TRAINING IN THE NATIONAL SOCIALIST MOTOR CORPS (NSKK)

A. General

The first attempts at motorization of the National Socialist Party date back to 1922. During that year, the Party obtained enough trucks so that Storm Troops and propaganda equipment could be quickly dispatched to any part of the country. To supplement this pool, cars and motorcycles belonging to Party members were employed, especially by officials and orators. These first attempts at motorization came to an end with the unsuccessful Munich Putsch in 1923.

Seven years later, another attempt was made and the National Socialist Automobile Corps was founded. It was an association of Party members who pledged themselves to voluntary duty for the National Socialist movement, particularly for the SA. They furnished messengers, and ran errands. They enlisted the aid of Party members who owned service stations and set up a widespread repair service.

At that time, this corps was still an extremely small organization (300 members in 1930) since the well-to-do circles were not yet associated with the Nazi movement. When Hühnlein was appointed Chief of SA Motorization in December 1930, the motorization of the Party was greatly accelerated. In 1931, the National Socialist Motor Corps (Nationalsozialistisches Kraftfahrkorps - NSKK). In addition to the NSKK, the Motor-SA was formed.

The NSKK and the Motor-SA tried to interest youth in this work and to direct enthusiasm shown into the right channels. For this purpose, practice in driving long distances and over varying terrain was given. The training was given by the NSKK to young men over 18 physically qualified for military service and by the Motor Hitler Youth to boys of 16 to 18. In 1934, the NSKK together with the Motor-SA became an independent Party organization on the same level as the SA and SS. Special motor instruction companies and motor-boat regiments were formed.

Another task was the traffic education of the German people. Special traffic instruction areas were set aside for the correction and instruction - on Sundays - of traffic violators. The NSKK usually worked in conjunction with the police. In 1939, the NSKK was appointed the sole agency for the premilitary and postmilitary motor training. All replacements for motorized and semimotorized units of the Armed Forces were to go through motor-sport schools one year before their period of military service. After that period they received advanced technical training and periodical refresher training to keep them up to operational standard for the motor units of the NSKK.

B. Organization

As an independent Party organization which finally became half a million strong, the NSKK was commanded by Hühnlein. It was divided into five regional commands. Each regional command contained four to five group commands (25 in all). Each group command consisted of seven motor regiments, each regiment of five to six motor battalions, and each battalion of six motor companies.

Special NSKK elements were the motorboat regiments, engineer companies, traffic education service, and traffic aid service.

Schools serving the NSKK were the State School for Leaders of the NSKK, the Technical Leaders' School, the Reich Motor Sport School, and 24 other motor sport schools.

The working staff of the corps leader consisted of the chiefs of the Offices Berlin and Munich. In addition, there were the Inspectors of Training, Inspectors of Technical Training and Equipment, and Inspectors of Motor Sport Schools.

C. General NSKK Training

The military and civilian tasks of the NSKK necessitated a large training set-up. Its most important function was the postmilitary technical training of all men designated for service with motorized units in case of war.

The Inspector of Training was responsible for all training and educational work. His main responsibilities were the selection and training of potential leaders, improvement of standards and ability amongst the leaders, and general raising of training level in the NSKK. The State School for Leaders, Elsgrund, headed by the Inspector, was the school for NSKK leaders. Here technique of command as well as technical subjects were taught. The length of a course was generally six to 12 weeks. The instruction covered not only the service in the corps, but also Party matters and subjects dealing with public life. The theoretical instruction was supplemented by terrain analysis, visits to industrial plants and exhibitions, and automotive and military exercises.

NSKK training was aided by annual national competitions organized to keep up interest within the corps. These also had good publicity value.

The SA Defense Badge could also be acquired in the NSKK.

D. Technical Training

The sphere of responsibility of the Inspector of Technical Training and Equipment included the running of the sport schools and certain special tasks. He planned and maintained the technical buildings and equipment of the motor sport schools. Together with the Inspector of the Motor Schools, he supplied motor vehicles, spare parts, tires, fuel, lubricants, and training equipment. He also provided vehicle equipment, specialists, foremen, mechanics, and drivers for training purposes; he organized instruction staffs and set up instructional repair shops, and was active in the special technical training of driving instructors.

E. Premilitary and Postmilitary Training

The premilitary conditioning of the youth was begun in the year preceding his conscription into the Armed Forces. It was carried out at one of the motor sport schools (capacity about 300 men).

Training and instruction were given according to uniform syllabi, adjusted to the requirements of the Armed Forces. In courses of several weeks' duration, the young men became familiar with motorcycles, private cars, trucks, and tracked vehicles. They had to be able to master these vehicles in any situation and were taught to detect sources of motor trouble.

Traffic instruction boards, equipped with models of all kinds, aided traffic education. Driving exercises helped to impress on the student the lesson learned while increasing his experience and endurance behind the wheel.

At the end of his training, the student received a driving license. The instructional staffs of the 24 motor sport schools were trained at the State Motor School.

F. Summary

The NSKK proved of great value to the Armed Forces. The young German came into a partly or fully motorized unit of the Armed Forces mentally and physically well prepared for duties and further training. His unit would continue the training where the NSKK had left off. During the war, however, when the Replacement Army was short of vehicles and fuel, advanced military training was often sufficient. Thus the Armed Forces saved time and could send the NSKK-trained soldier to the front sooner, or have him trained as a specialist.

Postmilitary training in the NSKK did not go into effect because of the capitulation.

Chapter 11

THE NATIONAL SOCIALIST FLYING CORPS (NSFK)

A. General

After World War I, all flight training except with gliders was forbidden in Germany. German youth, as a result, became very glider-minded. Small glider clubs and groups appeared everywhere, trying to give flight training to as many young men as possible, despite political and financial difficulties. Also in the SA and SS, flying units were developed, and both organizations soon realized the value of aviation for their purposes. In 1933, after the accession to power of the Nazi Party, Göring, who had been a well-known fighter pilot of World War I, became Air Minister. First, he founded the Air Sport Association (DLV) which combined all previously existing clubs. The main task of this organization was to pave the way for the new German Air Force. 16 March 1935 brought to Germany freedom from armament limitation. At the same time the reorganization of the German Air Force came into the open. Naturally, the development of this organization necessitated a considerable curtailment of amateur flying. The installations of the Air Sport Association were largely taken over by the German Air Force and extended. Not until spring 1937 had the reconstruction of the German Air Force progressed sufficiently to allow resumption of amateur flying. The Air Sport Association, with all its component groups, was then dissolved and replaced by the National Socialist Flying Corps (Nationalsozialistisches Fliegerkorps - NSFK).

B. Organization and Tasks

The NSFK had to fulfill tasks which went far beyond those of a Party organization, and it was, therefore, accorded a special status. It was commanded at first by Major General Christiansen and, since 1943, by General Keller, a professional Air Corps officer. The NSFK was not a Party organization, but was directly under the Air Ministry.

Broadly, the functions of the NSFK were to sponsor flight instruction in gliders, airplanes, and even models, among already air-minded youths, to enable discharged Air Force personnel to retain and develop flying skill, and to supervise all amateur flying activity. Membership in the NSFK was voluntary. Its members could not simultaneously belong to the SS, SA, or the NSFK.

There were 17 NSFK corps (Gruppen) set up within the Reich. A corps contained from two to eight regiments (Standarten) and had a strength of at least 1,500 men. Each regiment had several flight companies (Fliegerstürme) with at least 120 men each. In addition, every group had a number of schools, while the regiments and companies had glider camps. The flying units (Fliegerscharen) of the Hitler Youth and the model airplane construction groups of the Jungvolk were attached to the individual flight companies. At the age of 18, boys in the Hitler Youth Aviation Branch entered the NSFK.

C. Training

One of the most important tasks of the NSFK was the training of the Hitler Youth Aviation Branch. Even the model airplane construction groups of the Jungvolk were trained by members of the NSFK. The boys were also taught how to fly model airplanes.

Fifteen year old members of the Hitler Youth had to pass glider-test A, 16-year olds, test B, and 17-year olds, test C.

Test A: At least 30 flights
4 level flights of 20 seconds' duration
1 flight of 30 seconds
All landings to be made not more than 30 meters from a definite spot

Test B: Prerequisite: Test A
At least 20 flights with S curves, 5 of which must last 60 seconds

Test C: Prerequisite: Test B
18 flights of at least 60 seconds
2 flights of at least two minutes

Landings in tests B and C had to be carried out within an area 50 by 250 meters

Hitler Youth members who had passed test C were sent to one of the NSFK glider schools.

The training of the NSFK men consisted of construction of gliders, flying practice, military fitness training, physical training, and theoretical instruction on flying problems.

The training of balloon crews was given special attention. They made scientific research ascents and were used for propaganda purposes.

The following NSFK schools were available for systematic training and the attainment of special goals:

4 Reich schools for amateur gliding
18 glider schools
6 Reich amateur airplane schools
4 Reich glider construction schools
4 Reich shop foremen schools
5 Reich model airplane construction schools

Young Germans of both sexes, and even foreigners, could be trained at the Reich schools for amateur gliding and flying in return for payment of costs. Up to the start of World War II, the NSFK had trained about 8,000 pilots for the Air Force. With the start of the war, the schools were taken over directly by the Air Force, but members of the NSFK continued to be employed as instruction personnel.

D. Summary

As far as can be judged, the organization of the NSFK was extremely useful to the German High Command. It insured premilitary as well as postmilitary training for the Air Force since 1937. Its standard of training and the number of qualified pilots it had produced by 1939, made it of tremendous use to the Air Force at the start of the war.

Chapter 12

TRAINING IN THE VOLKSSTURM

A. General

The creation of the German Volkssturm was ordered by Adolf Hitler in the fall of 1944 to supplement the fighting strength of the Armed Forces for the last-ditch fight against an enemy which had penetrated to German territory.

B. Structure and Organization

All men between 16 and 60 years of age, who were able to bear arms but were not in the Armed Forces, were conscripted for the Volkssturm. The Volkssturm was composed of four classes:

All men born between 1884 and 1928, who were fit for immediate combat duty and were not holding key positions in the armament industry, transportation, signal communication, or farming
All men born between 1884 and 1928, holding key positions and, therefore, not immediately available for combat duty
All men born between 1925 and 1928, if already conscripted by the Hitler Youth but not yet on active duty with either the German Labor Service or the Armed Forces
All men born between 1884 and 1928, unfit for combat duty.

The Volkssturm was organized in battalions, companies, platoons, and squads. These units, however, were not formed into regiments or divisions. A battalion consisted of four companies, a company of four platoons, and a platoon of three or four squads of 10 men each. To the headquarters company were attached: one engineer platoon, one tank destroyer platoon, one supply platoon and one reserve supply platoon, and one commissary section. The rifle company had, as a rule, three rifle platoons and one heavy weapons platoon.

Himmler, the Reich Leader of the SS (Reichsführer-SS), was responsible for the organization, training, and direction of the Volkssturm, and all matters pertaining to this work were dealt with at the SS Headquarters (SS Hauptamt) under SS General (SS Obergruppenführer) Berger. For this purpose, a special staff had been formed - the SS Headquarters Command Staff of the German Volkssturm - which consisted of various Army officers and SS Armed Forces commanders. Thus, strange as it may seem, the Army had nothing to do with the Volkssturm or the training of its personnel. The local leaders (Gauleiter and Kreisleiter) were responsible for the organization and training of the Volkssturm units in their areas. Wherever possible, the leaders of the Volkssturm units were former Army officers or NCOs.

C. Military Training of the Volkssturm

Military training in the Volkssturm consisted, on the one hand, of ideological indoctrination along the lines indicated by Martin Bormann, the Chief of the Party Headquarters (Chef der Parteikanzlei), and, on the other hand, of weapons and field training as well as special training in combat engineering, signal communications, and motor transportation. It was planned to have this training completed by 31 March 1945, to the extent that all four of the groups indicated above should be fit for active service.

Training was to take place at least once a week, with the exception of members of the Hitler Youth and the German Labor Service. The amount of time allotted to training also depended on the claims made on the individual members of the Volkssturm by their war work. Instructional personnel was generally provided by the Replacement Army or the police. Weapons training included rifle, light machine gun, and hand grenade training, antitank close combat using the recoilless antitank grenade launchers (Panzerfaust), instruction in the use of the pistol and sub-machine gun as well as emergency mine-laying and clearing. In the beginning, light mortar instruction was also given. Marching and drill were completely forbidden. Training was given to members of the Volkssturm individually. There was no unit training; however, training in reconnaissance patrols was planned as part of the field training.

This scheme was planned and carried out with view to the possible employment of the Volkssturm, against enemy troops which had broken through, insurgent prisoners of war, foreign laborers, or airborne troops. These eleventh-hour soldiers were told it would be their duty to fight and defeat weaker enemy forces, quell revolts, delay and surround the enemy, stop his advance, and harass him constantly. Therefore, much attention was paid to training in the construction of all types of obstacles and barricades in towns and villages and the defense of these obstacles as well as training in antitank close combat, handling of all available weapons, and fighting and capturing of enemy airborne troops and insurgents. Reconnaissance activities, message writing and reading, and day and night map orientation were also stressed, as were construction of field fortifications and fortified positions in villages, woods, and mountain passes, and their all-round defense. Whenever possible, there was also instruction in counterattacking, blowing up of bridges and railroads, methods of communication with friendly units, and fighting in cities. For the latter, only city units were used.

The training schedule was probably far too wide in scope, considering the time allotted (about four months with approximately only six hours each week available for training). In addition to this, weapons and equipment as well as instructors were practically unavailable, though the Replacement Army supplied weapons and instructional detachments to the best of its ability, and battalion and company commanders of the Volkssturm were given a brief training for their duties at NCO-schools or replacement units of the Replacement Army. Each course lasted about 10 days. The same procedure was followed for platoon and squad leaders. They attended a six-day course at a replacement unit.

Army training directives were generally followed in the Volkssturm. To supplement them, however, the Volkssturm Command Staff published its own directives and pamphlets. It was only with the greatest difficulty that these publications could be checked, even superficially, by the Army officers concerned. On the other hand, Army instructional and training films which were necessary for the training scheme were taken over completely. Only to this extent was Army influence felt in the Volkssturm.

D. Motorized Units of the Volkssturm

Within the Volkssturm units were motorized messenger sections, motorized transport columns, and motorized motor vehicle repair units. Motorized messenger sections were at the disposal of the district leader (Gauleiter) or administrative officer (Gaustabsleiter) of the various Volkssturm battalions. Such a section usually consisted of a leader and 10 men on motorcycles. These men were members either of the National Socialist Motor Corps or the Hitlerjugend Motor Branch. They received their basic combat training in the Volkssturm battalions, while their specialized training was the responsibility of the National Socialist Motor Corps. This training consisted mainly of writing and transmitting messages, map reading, dealing with traffic problems, mechanical training, etc.

Motorized transport column (each column, 30 tons) were detailed only to Volkssturm battalions in the first of the four classifications. Basic combat training was given in the Volkssturm, while specialized training was the responsibility of the National Socialist Motor Corps and consisted of loading and unloading trucks, convoy driving, commands and hand signals, map reading, dealing with traffic problems, and technical and mechanical training.

Normally each district (Gau) had one motor vehicle repair company allotted to it. It was made up of members of the National Socialist Motor Corps and holders of driving licenses, and especially men who were professional motor mechanics, chauffeurs, or filling station attendants.

E. Summary

From a military point of view, the Volkssturm had very little value. The main reasons for this were the almost complete lack of weapons and of competent instructors for the training purposes, the limited training time, and the physical inability of the men to withstand the training, coupled with their realization of the hopelessness of their task. In many cases, Volkssturm units were not issued weapons until immediately before they were assigned to combat duty. It was also a grave error to entrust the SS Headquarters with the responsibility of training the Volkssturm, instead of the Replacement Army which was much better qualified for the task.

Chapter 13

THE TODT ORGANIZATION

A. General

The Todt Organization, or OT, was a military construction organization founded a year before the war, originally to help in the building of the Westwall (Siegfried Line). It was neither strictly a military nor a Party organization, but a government agency. The two elements of which it was formed were, on the one hand, the building industry, consisting of individual construction firms with their staffs and equipment, and, on the other hand, government-allotted manpower and materiel. The personnel thus allotted, partly Germans and partly foreigners, came under the heading of militia and, as such, received military training. These men had taken the oath of allegiance to Hitler and might be used as defense troops if necessary. OT units, however, were not designed for combat or assault engineer commitment. In the immediate zone of operations, they were formed into special mobile units to repair destroyed transportation and communication facilities. In this, their work was usually specified by Army engineer, transportation, or other officers anywhere from army to division level, but was supervised by OT engineers and contractors. By 1943, the OT was almost one million strong, but with an increasingly large foreign element.

B. Liaison with Armed Forces

The Armament Bureau of the Ministry for Armament and War Production, or Speer Ministry, was responsible for liaison between the OT high executives and the Armed Forces High Command.

Regional production programs were worked out by key civilian officials of the region, OT representatives, and service command officials. Disciplinary jurisdiction over OT personnel was vested in local military commanders.

C. Training in the OT

OT personnel received something akin to basic military training. It usually took place on Sunday or after work and consisted mostly of rifle drill and firing practice as well as some combat training.

In January 1944, when invasion became imminent, each firm was ordered to form a training and combat unit of its own, and Army NCOs were attached to the OT for this purpose. Except in the case of manning antiaircraft guns, however, the program was not carried out thoroughly. Instructional schools maintained by the OT varied. In order to train selected men and promote them to advanced positions in the OT, picked individuals were sent to leader training schools. Training for these supervisory positions included both military and construction training and was conducted in six schools. There were other training schools for specific assignments. Among these were the School for Front Area Officers, and camps where refresher and preparatory training for this school was given. The OT also ran disciplinary camps and had schools of its own for camp supervisors, assistants, cooks, and foremen of all types. These courses extended over four weeks and included weapons training, marching, gas drill, hygiene, political indoctrination, and general OT problems. The OT trained and maintained its own security guards to round up deserters, maintain discipline, and guard convoys.

At first the OT filled its need for skilled laborers by recruiting them from civilian occupations. During the latter part of the war, however, it became necessary to initiate trade training within the OT, and elementary courses of four to eight weeks' duration were given to selected workers and shorter courses to semiskilled men. Furthermore, mechanical and technical schools were made available to OT personnel within Germany.

D. Summary

OT training was haphazard and badly handicapped by shortages and conflicting orders and directions. The OT itself, though, was important to the conduct of the war in that it organized, more or less efficiently, older men and great numbers of foreigners who otherwise could not have been properly employed under any other of the existing organizations.

Appendix 1

Organization of Branch 4 (Army Training Branch)
(1935)

Chief
Colonel

Group I (2-3 officers) 3 men	Group II (2-3 officers) 3 men	Group III (2-3 officers) 3 men
Troop Training	Officer Training	General Staff Training
General Training of Troops Planning and critique of troop exercises and maneuvers Mental and physical conditioning of the population in matters of defense Training of Reserves Basic regulations Premilitary training	Theoretical training of officers, Reserve officers and high ranking officers of the Reserve Languages	Survey of General Staff work Operational and tactical Training of General Staff officers, and of officers assigned to the General Staff Affairs of the War Academy and of the Military History Research Institute (Anstalt für kriegs- und heeresgeschichtliche Forschung) The General Staff officer's pocketbook

Remarks

1. In peacetime, Branch 4 was under the Deputy Chief of Staff for Field Army training (O. Qu. II) who, in turn, was under the Army General Staff.

2. The scopes of the various activities grew with the expansion of the Army. In the course of the measures taken, a newly-formed Branch 11 was placed in charge of the outlining of officer and General Staff training.

3. The office of the Deputy Chief of Staff for Field Army training (O. Qu. II) was discontinued at the outbreak of war.

Appendix 2

Note-Sheet 18a/25
Air-Force Note-Sheet 213
Restricted
OKH /Gen.St.d.H/Ausb.Abt.(Ia)
Nr. 60/44

Suggestions for Training in Combat Positions

The Training Branch of the General Staff issued this pamphlet on the basis of combat units' training program in the field. It emphasized the fact that the experiences presented will not be applicable in all situations. The suggestions will have to be modified in accordance with existing conditions. The editors suggest further that arms and service schools at army level and division combat schools edit memos, notes, and examples according to these suggestions.

The suggestions are meant to aid the battalion and company commander in setting up a training program for his unit while in a combat position.

In view of the fact that this type of training was uncommon to the US and British Armies and that similar pamphlets have not been published, several examples of the contents are listed below. It is felt that wherever and whenever applicable, this type of training can do much to raise the standard of efficiency of soldiers and NCOs who, in the line, and especially in static warfare, are likely to go stale and become disinterested, thereby endangering not only their own lives but also their comrades' lives.

It is suggested in the pamphlet that the mental alertness and fighting efficiency of the soldier serving at the front can be improved by daily discussions of tactics. Weapons training can be restored to the required standards by combining daily cleaning with stripping, assembling, and practice remedying of stoppages. At the same time, the squad or platoon commander can ask for practical verbal fire orders and target indication from members of the gun crew. Similar training can also be applied to rifle sections. Actual night patrols can first be practiced during the day in terrain just behind front positions. By making the practice patrol as realistic as possible, the patrol will be in a position to carry out the night patrol more efficiently and will stand a better chance of completing their mission without losses. At the same time, all soldiers can be trained in leading patrols, unarmed combat, bayonet fighting, and other forms of close combat including tank close combat and grenade throwing.

Snipers and individual riflemen can be withdrawn in twos and threes to a selected position near battalion headquarters to practice firing.

Digging, revetting, and camouflaging of positions can be practiced during day or night by withdrawing small groups from comparatively quiet fronts and having them dig alternative withdrawal positions for the unit.

It is further suggested that commanders from battalion commander down circulate among their officers, NCOs and men, asking questions and putting forth problems of tactical nature applicable to the nature of the warfare in which they are engaged. Typical examples of questions and answers as suggested in the pamphlet are as follows:
Question: "Corporal X, four enemy soldiers are stealthily approaching your position and are near the far wire obstacle. As machine gunner, what would you do on spotting the enemy?"

Answer: "I would prepare the gun for action, remaining under cover, then hastily push the weapon over the parapet, fire several burst and kill the enemy."
Question: "Private B., as a sniper, you receive a report that on the far hill, some 500 yards distance, is an enemy observation post. What is your reaction?"
Answer: "I would work my way forward with my observer until I came within range of the enemy observation post. I would then prepare a makeshift rifle rest, set my sights and kill the enemy."

These questions can be varied in scope and nature to include all personnel within a battalion and to cover any or all phases of the battle.

This training in position need not pertain to infantry alone but can also be applied to all arms of the service including line of communication troops.

Appendix 3

Army High Command
Chief of Staff of the Army
Chief Infantry Officer
No 503/44 secret

Copy
Headquarters of the Army High Command,
1 February 1944

Basic Order No 27
(Machine-gun Training)

The number of machine guns completely out of action or unserviceable is reaching alarming proportions for this highly important infantry weapon. Moreover, it is likely to undermine the confidence of the machine-gun units in their weapons. Inexperienced handling, bad maintenance, imperfect preparation for firing, and insufficient general knowledge of weapons are the primary causes of this state of affairs. A general raising of training standards in the use of all types of machine guns is demanded.

For this purpose, the following orders are to come into effect:

(a) Short courses are to be arranged by the chief of machine-gun training in the Army High Command (M.G. Lehrer des OKH) for all armies. A suitable officer from every infantry regiment is to be given thorough training in the use of machine guns and then appointed as machine-gun officer to his regiment. His duties are as follows: to support the regiment commander in all training matters, to hold courses, and to supervise the carrying out of all measures ordered for the maintenance of weapons and ammunition.

(b) The training of all subordinate commanders and officers up to company commander is to be pushed forward. Each subordinate commander and officer is to be trained to master the weapons under his command from the point of view of their employment and operation, the recognition and removal of stoppages, as well as the maintenance of weapons and ammunition under field conditions. Only when this comes about can an improvement in the performance of the gun crews be expected.

(c) All commanders must increase their knowledge of weapons so that they are in a position to examine the weapons and ammunition under their control and supervise the training which is to be carried out as ordered above.

(d) Armorer-artificer and ordnance personnel must make more frequent visits to all units including those in the front line. They must acquaint themselves more closely with the conditions under which the weapons are employed and their condition. They are also to give practical assistance and hints to the troops.

(e) Machine-gun training is to be restricted to the following essential points: dissassembling and assembling of weapon, functioning of weapon, preparation and checking of weapon and ammunition prior to firing, loading drill, barrel and bolt change, recognition and removal of stoppages.

Every unnecessary theoretical detail is to be omitted in favor of practical work and explanation of cause and purpose. This order will be followed by a pamphlet which sets forth the essential points in machine-gun training. It contains in concise, clear form all the machine gunner must know for his daily front line duties. Every machine gunner must make himself thoroughly familiar with it in the shortest possible time.

An energetic carrying out of the measures ordered and a thorough effort to remove the existent deficiencies are expected from all commanders. Not until every soldier again takes pride in the faultless handling and maintenance of his weapon, can the maximum performance from our machine guns be attained.

By order of the Führer
Signed: Zeitzler
General and Chief of Army General
Staff

Appendix 4

AHM 1942 No 879 page 460

Chief of Training in the Replacement Army

As of October 1942, the office of the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army (Stab/Chef des Ausbildungswesens im Ersatzheer) has been set up in the Army High Command (OKH).

Office: Matthaeikirchplatz 6.

Address: Berlin W 35, Tirpitzufer 72/76.

Instructions for the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army.

(a) The Chief of Training is under the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army. He has the position of an administrative chief (Amtschefs) and the rank and disciplinary authority of a corps or district commander.

(b) The Chief of Training directs training of the entire Replacement Army and of newly-formed units according to instructions from the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army, who, in turn issues his directives according to the demands of the Army General Staff.

(c) The following departments are directly responsible to the Chief of Training: the Inspectors of infantry, riding and driving, artillery, antiaircraft artillery, mobile troops, engineers and railway engineers, construction troops, signal troops, transportation troops, and chemical troops; the Inspectorates of Army training and education, service schools and demonstration units of infantry, artillery, mobile troops, engineers and railway engineers, signal troops, transportation troops, and chemical troops; the Army riding and driving school; the school of Army motorization; the Army chemical defense schools; the Army air defense school; the infantry officer candidate schools, and the NCO schools.

The following work is in conjunction with the Chief of Training in matters pertaining to training: the General for Special Employment (training) (Gen.zbV.IV), the Director of tropical warfare (Sonderstabtropen), and the senior administration officer.

(d) The Chief of Training, on behalf of the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army, issues all necessary instructions concerning the training for which he is responsible. He supervises the coordinated drafting of training instructions and manuals for the various arms and services according to existing regulations. He is responsible for the application of coordinated training along the same general lines throughout the Replacement Army. He must, in particular, insure that full use be made of recorded combat experiences in the training of the Replacement Army. For that purpose, he remains in close touch with the Training Branch of the Army General Staff and with the generals of the various arms and services. He is entitled, at all times, to visit field headquarters and front-line units.

(e) The general Army office sections of the various arms and services are directing agencies who work out for the Chief of Training all directives for the training of the various arms and services, and deal with all matters concerning schools under the jurisdiction of the Chief of Training. The Chief of Training is entitled, at all times, to give direct instructions to the General Army Office sections of the various arms and services in matters within his sphere of duty.

(f) He must comply with all demands made by the General Army Office pertinent to the carrying out of technical and organizational experiments at service schools.

(g) The Chief of Training, on behalf of the Commander of the Replacement Army, supervises the execution of all training instructions issued by the latter. To that end, he is authorized, upon agreement with the service command commanding generals concerned, to witness the work and activities of replacement troop units and newly-formed organizations, and to direct inspections to be made. In conferences on the subject of inspections, training maneuvers, map exercises etc., he expresses his opinion on behalf of the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander in Chief of the Replacement Army, after hearing the commanding general of the service command. He delegates to the inspectors of the various arms or services under his command the task of supervising training in their respective branches in accordance with standing regulations.

(h) He exercises no command over the troops of the Replacement Army.

(i) The respective sections of the General Army Office are responsible for the technical training of medical corps and veterinary corps personnel, as well as for the training of specialized technicians and civilian technical officials of the Army. The chief of training is authorized to direct them in matters pertaining to general military training.

Appendix 5

Appendix 2 to Army Manual (H.Dv) 1a, page 70, current number 1

Berlin W 35, October 24, 1942

Army High Command
The Chief of Army Equipment and
Commander of the Replacement Army
Chief of Training in the Replacement Army

Subject: Directives for the training in the Replacement Army

The combat experiences of the Field Army on all fronts necessitate the readjustment of the entire training system to meet the requirements of war. It is the duty of the Replacement Army to supply the field forces with suitable replacements and to compensate for the loss of fully trained, hardened fighters. If this goal can be attained the Replacement Army will contribute considerably to the maintenance of the present superiority of the German soldier.

The training directives for the Replacement Army issued in spring 1942 no longer fulfill these requirements. It is therefore intended to revise them.

In order to change the training of the Replacement Army as soon as possible to conform to the combat experiences gained during the summer of 1942, the enclosed temporary directives will be followed until final directives can be published.

Next to combat training, rifle and heavy weapons training should be emphasized the most.

In combat training special attention should be given to the following subjects: attack in mobile warfare, position warfare (attack and defense), reconnaissance and combat patrol, close combat, antitank close combat, construction of positions and obstacles, security measures, application of deception and diversions during all combat activities, training at night and during bad weather (bivouac), combat engineer training in all weapons, and digging foxholes will be a regular exercise in early combat problems. The German soldier's failure to entrench has caused unnecessary losses on all fronts. This condition will be remedied.

Combat training is closely connected with rifle and weapons training. It is important to make the young soldier familiar with his weapons and to give him confidence in his ability.

During rifle training, the various phases of premilitary training must be considered. Well-trained riflemen should be placed in a more advanced class than those with less training.

Instruction must be adjusted, more than ever, to meet the requirements of war. The young soldier will be taught only those subjects absolutely essential to the front-line fighter; all unnecessary subjects will be omitted.

Physical training will be limited to cross-country marches, calisthenics, and combat exercises. As far as possible, this training will be carried out in connection with the relative subjects and duties.

Special emphasis will be placed on the care of horses, motor vehicles, and equipment, particularly in winter.

Officer candidates will be trained in theory and practice by map reading, sand table exercises, tactical problems, and rifle instruction.

The following subjects will be stressed: training as platoon and company commanders, coordination of all weapons in attack and defense, defense on a wide front and position warfare, antitank close combat, attack by combat patrols, knowledge of weapons and regulations governing the handling of weapons, political indoctrination, and directions for training in a rifle training company. (The training in the other infantry training units must adhere closely to these directives.)

INTRODUCTORY NOTES

Increased combat training

From the first day combat training must be conducted as though the enemy were present. Formal drill is forbidden in the zone of operations.

Combat drill in the field consists of a painstakingly precise handling of weapons, movements executed at lightning speed, and presence of mind. Manual skills and manual of arms may be practiced in the garrison area; in the field these activities are conducted as at the front.

Increased training in firing

In order to improve results in firing, only NCOs qualified as weapons instructors will be employed. They are to be employed exclusively as instructors in this particular subject. They will be given the opportunity to improve the technique of poor riflemen as often as possible, if necessary during other training hours.

The kneeling position will be omitted. Starting with the sixth training week the standing position will be taught, however, only as a necessary exercise for rapid firing (Schnellschuss) required in close combat.

Simulated combat firing of the individual soldier has to be adjusted to the over-all training level and skill of the individual rifleman.

Range firing for machine gun, pistol, and trench mortars will be continued the same as before.

Good riflemen will shoot in the expert or sharpshooter class as soon as they fulfill the entrance requirements to these classes.

The best riflemen (five percent of the recruits) are to be trained with telescopic sights and automatic rifles. They will have to fulfill special requirements in range practice, which will be outlined by the company commanders.

Several phases of range practice may be accomplished in one day.

In order to supply the Field Army with particularly well-trained machine gunners, the best machine gunners (about thirty percent of the recruits) will be specialists in this weapon.

The following new temporary training syllabus will go into effect immediately; previous directives will be rescinded insofar as they conflict with this directive.

PROVISIONAL NEW TRAINING PLAN

COMBAT TRAINING

1st Week

Cover and concealment by taking advantage of the terrain
Orientation in the field
Camouflage
Observation exercises, in connection with target designation and range estimation
Advancing by cover--walking, crouching, creeping, and crawling
Forms of extended order (only under simulated enemy action, arm and hand signals)

2d Week

Application of various forms of extended order in the squad during the approach march
Taking advantage of cover against enemy high-angle and flat-trajectory fire
Advancing in bounds with and without rifle
Pushing forward and looking for new cover or a new firing position
Going into position and firing from cover
Use of entrenching tools in the attack in case of simulated enemy action (only one entrenching exercise may be conducted)

Night training: use of clothing and equipment for noiseless movements, application of all previous training in use of weapons, equipment, and horses

3d Week

Going into position and rifle firing in open terrain (use of spade, camouflage)
Use of the gas mask in combat (gradual increase in wearing it up to three hours)
Ten mile route march, with full field pack; march security, scout activity, dispersed formations, and antiaircraft defense

Night training: listening and observing exercises and range estimation

4th Week

Preparation of the squad for the attack and attack at medium range, thereby employing the light machine gun and rifle for surprise fire. Attacking with supporting fire of heavy weapons; thereby making use of alternate positions, building entrenchments, and using camouflage (ammunition boxes will be weighted as in combat)
Twelve mile march combined with a tactical approach across country (also through woods) with combat equipment
Protection against artillery fire

Night training: scout activities in known terrain, and noiseless movements, individually and in various squad formations

Close combat training, hand grenade throwing (standing and prone), bayonet training (thrust and parry), bayonet training (butt stroke and defense)

5th Week

Entire class:

Attack from 400 yards to 100 yards; mutual support of riflemen in the advance
Taking up position and firing of the light machine gun and advancing by bounds
Changing or abandoning position
Taking of obstacles
Use of hand grenades in combat (practice grenades)
Orientation in the field by means of maps and sketches
Reconnaissance by means of a march compass
Evacuation and changing light machine gun positions
Additional training:

Light mortar training: extended order of the light mortar team, reconnaissance, occupation and establishment of firing positions

Night training: scout missions in unknow terrain, establishing and keeping contact, conduct in case of flares and parachute flares, entrenching at dusk and during darkness, and camouflage of foxholes

Close combat training flat-trajectory throw of hand grenades in roads, throwing grenades out of shell holes, trenches, etc., throwing grenades into windows, open doors, behind cover, etc., use of the spade and bayonet as close combat weapons and protective measures against them

6th Week

Entire class:

The squad, penetrating into and fighting through enemy positions; defense positions; defense against counterattacks and consolidation of the position
Attack against a fortified position (farm house)
Observation and messenger duty
Decontamination of contaminated areas

Additional training:

Light machine-gun training; starting with the sixth week the best machine gunners (about 30 percent of the recruits) will be further trained on the light machine gun.

Light mortar training; occupation of firing positions and firing of the light mortar

Night training: alarm exercises at dusk with subsequent 16 mile march (across country); march security and surprise attack on enemy outposts (combat patrol)

Close combat training: hand-grenade throwing on the run, coordinated throwing by several men, hand-grenade duel, shooting from the hip with subsequent bayonet thrust

7th Week

Entire class:

The squad in attack (combat in woods)

The squad as combat patrol in village fighting
Capture of an enemy machine-gun nest

Additional training:

Light machine-gun training: use of binoculars
Light mortar training: change of position and technique of defense

Night training: security during a rest, technique of reconnaissance, posting combat outposts, occupying and holding a squad position and a machine-gun nest. Arm and hand signals for motorized rifle companies only.

Close combat training: rapid fire with the rifle, alternate use of hand grenade and rifle, firing the light machine gun, while moving

8th Week

The squad in defense: change from attack to defense, establishing positions for cross-fire and supporting fire
Disengagement from the enemy, evacuation of a position
Twenty-mile march with combat packs, combat against enemy tanks (not tank close combat) and defense against aircraft

Night training: defense against enemy attacks on guards and outposts, firing during dusk and with the aid of artificial illumination, approaching obstacles and taking them, procedure in a firing position (relief, supplies, consolidation, also in winter)

Close combat training: assault on an enemy trench, sighting within the trench supported by light machine guns firing from outside the trench

Riflemen with pistols: aiming exercises with the pistol, firing at an enemy who is standing, prone, and under cover (shell holes, etc), distance not more than 10 yards

9th Week

Outpost duty

Night training: reconnaissance patrols and surprise attacks on enemy guards, close combat (combat patrol)

Close combat training: repetition of previous training, combination of various close combat techniques

10th Week

Conduct in the event of enemy tank attacks and protection against same (antitank close combat)
Combating low flying enemy aircraft with rifles and machine guns
Construction and elimination of obstacles of any kind, construction of shelters

Night training: a 22 mile march (two hours of which must be cross-country), including tactical halts, defense against surprise enemy attacks and defense against enemy aircraft with rifle and light machine gun

11th Week

Counterattack and extermination of an enemy unit which has been infiltrated
Fighting partisans
Attack of a platoon across a river
Attack of a platoon (combat patrol) on fortified positions

Night training: gradual approach toward an enemy position, raid against an enemy stronghold and close combat (combat patrol)

Close combat: recapitulation of all training

12th Week

Reserved for inspections and repetitions
Thirty-two mile march with bivouac

Rifle Training

1st Week

Mechanical training
Explanation of the sights, targets, and definition of aiming and aiming defects
Adjustment of the rifle on the sandbag in the standing position, distance not more than 130 yards
Aiming exercises (triangulation), standing position, 10 yards maximum
Grasping the small of the stock
Prone position, aiming, and trigger squeeze
Observation exercises in the field and range estimation of moving targets
Firing the rifle at 100 yards from the prone position with rifle supported

2d Week

Triangulation, prone, 15 yards distance
Prone position, rifle supported
Transition firing, prone position
First range practice with rifle
First range practice with light machine gun

3d Week

Prone position, rifle supported, with gas mask
Battle positions, prone, rifle supported, with gas mask
Preliminary exercise with blank cartridges
Range firing with rifle
Combat positions of the light machine gun, firing from behind cover
Preliminary exercise, range firing with the light machine gun

4th Week

Firing at moving target under combat conditions, prone, without support
Practice exercise with blank ammunition
Range firing with rifle, special requirements -- 200 yards, prone, rifle unsupported, read silhouette target, five shots, field dress
Aiming exercises with light machine gun, firing at moving targets
Combat positions with light machine gun in the field, firing at moving targets, changing barrel and bolt

Preliminary exercise
Range firing with light machine gun

5th Week

Entire class:

Firing positions in shell holes and fox holes
Preliminary exercise with blank cartridges for transition firing
Preliminary exercise for firing the light machine gun
Range firing of the light machine gun (4th period)
Simulated combat firing by the individual soldier with the rifle

Additional training:

Light mortar training: placing in action of the light mortar, basic principles for firing the light mortar, adjusting fire, fire for effect

Soldiers trained with pistol: aiming with pistol

6th Week

Entire class:

Standing position, rifle unsupported, as preliminary exercise for rapid fire in close combat
Aiming positions behind cover
Preliminary exercise with blank cartridges
Fifth range firing exercise with rifle
Preliminary exercise, fire by the individual rifleman, with light machine guns using blank cartridges

Additional training:

Light mortar training: fire control of the light mortar, during all light mortar practices suitable men will be employed as squad leaders. Each mortar will fire only one round. Men who are not actually participating in this exercise will be spectators

Soldiers trained with pistols: preliminary practice for class II firing

7th Week

Entire class:

Aiming positions in combat and aiming on moving targets
Rapid fire from the standing position, with rifle unsupported
Preliminary exercise
Throwing of practice hand grenades
Range firing with the rifle, special requirements: firing 160 yards range, prone position, rifle unsupported, with gas mask, head silhouette target, five rounds to be fired, combat uniform

Additional training:

Light machine-gun training: position of the light machine gun on trees, behind slopes, and in motion, preliminary exercises, fifth range firing exercise with light machine gun

Light mortar training: fire control and preliminary exercises

8th Week

Entire class:

Sixth range firing with rifles
Range firing with light machine gun, first exercise in antiaircraft firing
Instruction concerning security measures on the grenade court and throwing of live grenades
Second practice fire with rifles

Additional training:

Light mortar training: first range firing with light mortar, preliminary exercise to second range firing with light mortar

Soldiers trained with pistol: first requirement of class II firing

9th Week

Entire class:

Fourth range firing with rifle

Special training: close combat infantry exercise (according to Army Manual 130/2a paragraph 631, sections 2 and 4)
Sixth range firing with light machine gun
Second simulated combat firing exercise of the individual rifleman with the light machine gun

Additional training:

Light mortar training: second range firing with light mortar

10th Week

Entire class:

Preliminary training for third firing exercise
Third practice firing of the individual rifleman with rifle
Preliminary exercise to practice firing of the squad

Additional training:

Light machine-gun training: second firing exercise of antiaircraft defense, third firing exercise of the individual rifleman with light machine gun as a close combat exercise (according to Army Manual 130/2a paragraph 631 section 10, 30 rounds maximum) on the close combat training area

Riflemen trained with pistols: second requirement of class II firing

11th Week

Practice firing of the squad with light machine gun

12th Week

Rifle, light machine gun, and light mortar
Second practice firing of the squad with employment of all weapons of the machine gun company

Lectures

The company commanders will discuss political questions and idéological indoctrination once a week

1st Week

Signification of the oath and duties of the German soldier*
Security (including counterespionage)
Conduct of the soldier on and off duty*
Insignia of rank
Conduct towards superiors
Regulations governing barracks and quarters*
The rifle, maintenance and cleaning: influence of severe cold on the rifle
Care of clothing and equipment (care of boots)*
Instruction in safety measures and conduct on the range, explanation of the targets. (Instruction to be carried out only once on the range)

2d Week

Conduct in darkness and fog, orientation by the stars
Technical rifle training
The gas mask, fitting, maintenance, and cleaning
Air raid and gas protection in the garrison, conduct in case of alarm in the garrison*
Military hygiene*
Nomenclature of the light machine gun
Maintenance and cleaning of the light machine gun, influence of severe cold

3d Week

Organization and equipment, rifle company (motorized) and mountain infantry company*
March discipline
Security of march and scouting, the point, the squad as scout squad
Preparing the light machine gun for firing during combat, firing with blank cartridges
Light machine-gun technical training

4th Week

The squad in attack, from the assembly area to the combat area, employment of light machine gun and rifle for surprise fire, choice of target and fire distribution, fire discipline, gradual approach with fire support of heavy weapons
Conduct during breaks, security measures for units taking breaks (also during the night)

---

*Topics will be discussed only once. Daily exercises and instructions by the company commander give ample opportunity to demonstrate and correct mistakes and discrepancies.

Employment of the hand grenade
Recognition and elimination of stoppages of light machine guns
Poison gases, their effects and identification

5th Week

Entire class:

The squad in attack (400 to 100 yards), including gradual approach, with unusual fire support
Orientation in the field
Means of orientation (maps, compass, sun, and stars)
Capture and use of captured arms
Regulations for disciplinary punishment and complaints
Court martial procedure
Individual training in antigas measures for animals

Additional training:

Light mortar training: its parts and their functioning (technical training)

Soldiers trained with pistols: pistol disassembly (technical training)

6th Week

Combat patrols during an assault and break through against the main line, preparing defense against counterattacks, preparing positions
Attack against concrete emplacements or a farm (assault squad)
Conduct after action
Checking of arms, ammunition, and equipment
Duty of gas sentry, use of protective clothing

Additional training:

Light mortar training: functioning of parts of the light mortar (technical training), maintenance and cleaning

Soldiers trained with pistol: maintenance and cleaning of pistol

7th Week

The squad in the attack in wood fighting
The squad as an assault unit in village fighting

Additional training:

Light mortar training: ammunition of the light mortar, elimination of stoppages

8th Week

Entire class:

The squad in defense: change from attack to defense, preparing squad positions for all around defense, including the preparation of positions in swamps and the construction of blockhouses and corduroy roads, procedure in the position, relief, supplies, mission of the guards and conduct of the soldier in a

permanent position, particularly in winter, defense against surprise attacks at night
Disengaging from the enemy, including evacuation of a position
Training in a motorized rifle company: organization and security of motorized infantry on the move, tactical signs and troop identification marks of the infantry division (motorized)

Additional training:

Light mortar training: laying and aiming exercises, also firing problems

9th Week

Security measures, outguards, general guard orders
Maintenance of weapons and equipment under combat conditions, in snow and severe cold
Aircraft identification service
First aid given to wounded soldiers
Reconnaissance and scouting with cars (motorized rifle companies only)

10th Week

Conduct of the soldier in case of enemy tank attacks
Destroying enemy tanks (destroyer squads)
Anticipating defense with rifle and machine gun and conduct in case of attack of low-flying enemy aircraft
Conduct at entraining and on railway transports, including conduct in severe cold
Processing and handling casualties
Bivouac in different seasons
Action taken by a motorized unit in case of attack by tanks and aircraft (motorized rifle companies only)

11th Week

Counterattack against and extermination of an infiltrated enemy assault detachment
Partisan warfare
Attack across a river and technique of river crossing
Conduct as a prisoner of war
Training in motorized rifle companies, deployment of the advance guard of motorized infantry, dismounted deployment of the advance guard of motorized infantry, dismounted deployment of motorized infantry cooperation with tanks and aircraft

12th Week

Reserved for inspections and repetition

Drill

Only the most important subjects as listed are to be taught. Starting with the third week until the end of training, the manual of arms will be practiced 10 minutes every day.

Appendix 6

General Army Bulletin No 44. page 49, paragraph 91

Service Regulations for the Training Film Branch under the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army

1. The Training Film Branch is under the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army in the Army High Command and is immediately subordinate to the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army. The Training Film Branch is headed by the Chief of Branch, who has the status and disciplinary authority of a regimental commander.

The Army film and photo archives with their photo units are under the Chief of the Training Film Branch for administrative purposes.

2. In accordance with the directives of the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army, the Chief of the Training Film Branch directs the employment of personnel and equipment as well as the production of motion pictures and slides required for training purposes.

3. The detailed duties of the Chief of the Training Film Branch are as follows:

(a) He puts into effect the film program sanctioned by the Armed Forces High Command.

(b) He works out suggestions made to him by Army and Waffen-SS organizations for the production of training films, and coordinates these suggestions with the training film program established by the Armed Forces High Command.

(c) He collaborates with other headquarters and units in the drawing up of fundamental principles and outlines (scenarios) for the production of motion pictures and slides. He insures that tactical principles and current regulations are correctly illustrated.

(d) After approval by the Armed Forces High Command he forwards the plans for the production of training films to the Mars Film Co. (Mars-Film-GmbH) and for the production of slides to the Army film and photo archives.

(e) He directs the employment of photo units and issues the proper instructions to them.

(f) He supervises the production of training films and slides according to the directives of the Armed Forces High Command and regulates the distribution of completed films and slides.

(g) He keeps informed on the production of Navy and Air Force films and remains in close contact with the appropriate agencies of these services in order to insure exchange of material and collaboration with these services whenever advisable.

(h) He draws up the manuals, service regulations, and standing orders for the Training Film Branch.

(i) He makes recommendations to the Signal Branch Inspectorate (Jn 7) on matters pertaining to the procurement and distribution of motion picture equipment.

(j) He manages and allots the funds of the Training Film Branch for production of Army training films.

(k) He supervises the activities of the training film libraries, from a technical standpoint, as well as the assignment of personnel.

(l) Jointly with the Army administration office group for officials and civilian workers, he directs the training of Army film production officials.

4. The Chief of the Training Film Branch has the right of direct communication with the headquarters of the Field Army and the Replacement Army in matters concerning the distribution and unit employment of training films and slides and is authorized to make recommendations pertaining thereto.

5. General Army Bulletin /1941, No. 481 is superseded by this service regulation.

Army High Command (Chief of Army Equipment and
Commander of the Replacement Army) 3 February 1944
-827/44-Operations Staff of the Chief of Training
in the Replacement Army

Appendix 7

Army Publication (AHM) 1940, No 278, page 121

Service Directive to the Inspectors of Arms and Services

1. The Inspectors of Arms and Services are:

The Inspector of Infantry
The Inspector of Riding and Driving
The Inspector of Artillery
The Inspector of Engineers and Railway Engineers
The Inspector of Mobile Troops
The Inspector of Signal Troops
The Inspector of Transportation
The Inspector of Chemical Troops
The Inspector of Construction Troops

2. The Inspectors of Arms and Services are part of the Army High Command (OKH) and are under the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army. They act on his behalf and according to his instructions. They supervise the training of their respective branches among the replacement troops and those newly formed units that are under the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army. For this purpose, they are authorized to make inspections and, after consulting with the commanders of the service command, can set specific tasks to improve the training of the troops within their branch. They report their observations to the commanders of the service command directly and may be used by the latter as expert advisers in matters pertaining to their respective branches.

3. In addition to the supervision of training in their respective branches the duties of the following extend to all arms and services: The Inspector of Riding and Driving in matters pertaining to the uniformity of training in riding and driving; The Inspector of Artillery in matters pertaining to field survey and weather services; The Inspector of Signal Troops in all signal matters; The Inspector of Chemical Troops in all matters of chemical defense.

4. If the inspectors have under them senior officers of their respective arms or services, they can delegate their authority and the execution of their duties to the latter.

5. Upon agreement with the Chief of the Army General Staff, the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army may detail the Inspectors of Arms and Services to the Field Army to gather combat experiences for use in the training and equipment of the Replacement Army.

6. The Inspectors of Arms and Services have no staffs available for their own use. For administration duties they must rely upon their respective branches.

7. The directives of the Commander of the Replacement Army, General Army Office, (AHA/Bde) No 8697/39 of 29 September 1939 and No 8697/39 II of 24 October 1939 are hereby rescinded.

Appendix 8

Service Regulations for the Senior Motor Transport Officer in the Army High Command

1. The Senior Motor Transport Officer is under the Chief of Motorization who serves both the Field Army and the Replacement Army. He is subject, in all training matters, to the directives of the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army.

2. The duties of the Senior Motor Transport Officer are as follows:

(a) He supervises the progress of training in motor transport units of the Replacement Army, paying special attention to replacement units, as well as to the motor transport troop school. He insures the uniformity of training.

(b) He checks both training level and organization of newly-formed units and of motor transport troops being given refresher training in the zone of the interior.

(c) The Senior Motor Transport Officer must be consulted in the writing of manuals, regulations, and bulletins for Motor Transport Troops.

3. He is authorized to make inspections of units and installations within his sphere of activities, to the extent permitted to Inspectors of Arms and Services.

4. He carries out his functions on behalf of the Army High Command in agreement with the commander of the service command.

5. He will forward to the commander of the service command his observations on tours of inspection as well as his recommendations, and will make reports on such matters to the Army High Command.

6. The Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army may attach the Senior Transport Officer to the Field Army after securing the agreement of the Chief of the Army General Staff. This will be done to insure that the experiences of the Field Army are fully used in the training, armament, and equipment of the Replacement Army.

7. The Senior Motor Transport Officer may be used by the Chief Supply and Administration Officer in the Army High Command for the examination of the state of motor transport units of the Field Army. The Senior Motor Transport Officer may then, on agreement with the headquarters concerned, observe the work and employment of motor transport units of the Field Army.

8. The Senior Motor Transport Officer will make use of the Motor Transport Branch, Inspectorate 12 of the General Army Office, in the administrative phases of his work.

Army High Command (Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army) 26 October 1942 - 11c - General Army Office (IaII)

Appendix 9

Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army in the Army High Command, 22 March 1943
Operations Branch of the General Army Office
Staff Section

Service Regulations for the Inspector General of Panzer Troops

1. The Inspector General of Panzer Troops is responsible to me for the development of the Panzer arm in accordance with the needs of war. The Inspector General of Panzer Troops is under my immediate control. He has the status of an army commander, and is the senior officer of the Panzer troops.*

2. The Inspector General of Panzer Troops is responsible for organizing and training the Panzer arm as well as the major mobile units of the Army. He will carry this out in agreement with the Chief of the Army General Staff.

He is authorized to issue directives in my name to the Air Force and Waffen-SS in matters pertaining to the organization and training of Panzer troops.

All fundamental matters of policy, however, will be decided by me. He will submit to me his requirements for the technical development of his branch and the planning of production. He will do this in close cooperation with the Reich Minister for Armament and Munitions.

3. In his capacity as senior officer of his branch he also commands the replacement units of his branch. It is his duty to insure that replacements of personnel and armored vehicles be kept in constant readiness for the Field Army. This will include such widely varied tasks as the supply of single vehicles, or the activation or refresher training of troop units.

He is charged also with the distribution of tanks and armored vehicles to the Field Army and the Replacement Army in accordance with my directions.

4. The Inspector General of Panzer Troops will insure that orders concerning the activation and refresher training of Panzer troops and mobile units be carried out according to plan and schedule. In agreement with the Army General Staff he will provide for the proper disposition of Field Army tank crews for whom there are no tanks available.

5. The Inspector General of Panzer Troops will insure that full use be made of combat experiences for the improvement of tactics, armament, training, and organization of the Panzer troops.

For this purpose he is authorized to visit and inspect all Panzer troop units of the Armed Forces and the Waffen-SS.

The Panzer units of the Field Army will furnish the Inspector General of Panzer Troops with direct information on all their experiences. The latter will then forward his observations and experiences to the proper authorities, including the Reich Minister for Armament and Munitions. The Inspector General of Panzer Troops is in charge of the drawing up of all regulations for the Panzer troops. Regulations dealing with unit leadership and collaboration with other arms and services or other

*Throughout these service regulations the term "Panzer troops" is used to denote: tank forces, armored infantry, motorized infantry, armored reconnaissance units, antitank units, and heavy assault gun units.

branches of the Armed Forces may not, however, be issued without the approval of the Chief of the Army General Staff.

6. The Inspector General of Panzer Troops, as senior officer of his branch, has under him:

(a) The replacement and training units of the mobile troops (with the exception of cavalry and bicycle replacement troop units) which are to be put under the control of special command headquarters;

(b) The schools for mobile troops (with the exception of cavalry and bicycle training institutions) of the Field Army and the Replacement Army with their demonstration troops.

7. Within the limits of the powers granted to him, the Inspector General of Panzer Troops is authorized to issue obligatory instructions to all headquarters in the Army. On the other hand, all headquarters will make available to the Inspector General of Panzer Troops whatever information he may require.

The Führer's Headquarters, 28 February 1943

The Führer
Adolf Hitler

Appendix 10

Army Publication (AHM) 1943 number 681, page 419

Service Directives for the Inspector of Training and Education in the Army

1. The Inspector of Training and Education in the Army is assigned to the Army High Command. He is subordinate to the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army.

He has the status of a Group Chief (Amtsgruppen Chef) and in regard to the schools subordinate to him, he has the disciplinary powers of a division commander.

2. The following organizations are subordinate to the Inspector of Training and Education:

(a) All officer candidates (Fahnenjunker) schools of the infantry including the senior officer candidate (Oberfähnrich) courses attached to them

(b) All officer-cadets schools of the artillery, including the senior officer candidate courses attached to them

(c) The army NCOs schools and NCOs preparatory schools of the Army (the latter until the time they were dissolved) including the officer candidate courses (Offiziersbewerber Lehrgänge) attached to these NCO Schools

(d) All existing organizations for training of potential instructors

(e) Permanent administrative division for the army air force (die Heeres-Flieger Stammabteilung)

(f) Skeleton staffs (Reststabe) of officer candidates schools and of the Army sports school.

The territorial subordination of these schools and organizations to their respective officers in command in the military area; the supervision of the arm or service training by the branch inspectors and the right of the Chief of the Ordnance Department of the General Army Office to visit the schools is in no way affected by this.

3. The Inspector of Training and Education in the Army controls all training and education of potential officer and NCO candidates.

(a) In the case of officer candidates (OB) and Reserve officer candidates (ROB) from the moment of their induction until their appointment to the rank of lieutenant

(b) In the case of Regular Army NCO candidates from the moment of their induction up to the conclusion of their training at Army NCO schools.

On behalf of the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army he issues all necessary orders and directives to units (Replacement Army and Field Army), to all schools and courses mentioned in paragraph 2 as well as to officer candidate and senior officer candidate courses in the branch of service schools. In matters relating to technical and tactical weapons training in the various branches of the service he must confine himself to the directives and material issued to him by the appropriate branch of the service on behalf of the Chief of Training; in the case of tank units he is subject to the orders and directives of the Inspector General of Tank Troops. In training and education of potential officers he must take into consideration all requirements of the Army Personnel Office (HPA).

4. The Inspector of Training and Education in the Army has the right to take appropriate steps to see for himself, the actual state of training and education and to assure himself that the object of the training of potential officer andNCOs in troop units, in officer candidate and senior officer candidate courses, and in the branch of service schools is actually being attained.

5. In addition, his duties included the following:

(a) Control of general knowledge training in the Army, including all measures necessary to secure an adequate supply of army teachers and potential teachers and to train them to give instruction on general subjects.

(b) Control of sports in the Army; this includes all necessary measures for the carrying out of compulsory and voluntary sports by the troops, the establishment of an Army pool for sports instructors and the training and using of them.

(c) Making suggestions for the recruiting of potential officers to the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army/Potential Officer Branch. (Chef H Rüst u BdE/Abt Heeresnachwuchs), for the acceptance of officer candidates to Army Personnel Office/P4, for the acceptance of NCO candidates to Army Personnel Office/Transport Section, (AHA/Tr.Abt)

(d) Attending to all personnel matters relating to Army flyers and Army ground tactics instructors employed at the Air Force schools.

Dealing with the advanced tactical training of ground tactics instructors the establishment and supervision of courses forwarding part of the training of Air Force personnel as aircraft observers attached to the Army.

6. The Inspector of Training and Education in the Army is the representative of the Army

(a) In its relations to the Reich Youth Leader (Reichsjugendführer) and the Youth Leader of the German Reich (Jugendführer des Deutschen Reiches) pay particular attention to the interests of the Army in matters dealing with premilitary training in the Hitler Youth.

(b) In its relations to the Reich Minister for Training, Service, and National Education (Reichsminister für Erziehung, Wissenschaft und Volksbildung) here representing in particular the interests of the Army in the military indocrination in the schools and high schools.

(c) In its relations with the Reich Sports Leader (Reichssportführer) here representing in particular the interests of the Army in the participation of Army personnel in civilian sports.

(d) In its relations with the Reich Minister of Aviation (RdL) and with the Commander in Chief of the Air Force (ObdL) here he represents the interests of all Army personnel transferred or attached to the Air Force as Army fliers or ground tactics instructors.

In regard to these duties he has the right of immediate access to the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander in Chief of Replacement Army for the purpose of consultation and the rendering of verbal reports.

7. The service regulations (No 310/40 AHA/Gr Bde) for the Inspector of Training and Education of the Army promulgated by decree of the Army High Command, Chief of the Army Equipment and Commander in Chief of the Replacement Army are hereby rescinded.

Appendix 11

AHM 1944
Page 67

Reorganization of the Inspectorate of Army Training and Education into the Office of Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs of the Army (Generalinspekteur für den Führernachwuchs des Heeres)

As of 1 March 1944, the Inspectorate of Army Training and Education (In EB) is reorganized into the office of Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs.

The duties, authority, place in the chain of command, and official position of the Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs of the Army (GIF) are laid down in the following service regulations: Service regulations for the Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs of the Army.

1. He is responsible for uniform publicity and recruiting, uniform National Socialist education and guidance, uniform training of all potential officers and NCOs of the Army.

2. He is part of the Army High Command (OKH). He is under the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army (Chef H Rüst u. BdE). He holds the position of an office chief and has the authority of a corps commander over the schools and other organizations.

3. He directs and supervises the education and training of officer candidates and Reserve officer candidates from the date of their assignment until their promotion to second lieutenants and of officer candidates and Reserve officer candidates until the end of their training as NCOs. He insures the procurement of potential officers and NCOs of the Army required by remaining in close contact with all youth organizations and by assisting and directing their premilitary training according to current war needs.

4. He issues the necessary orders and directives (as outlined in paragraph 3) on behalf of the Commander of the Replacement Army and after agreement with the Army General Staff. In matters pertaining to the technical and tactical training of the individual arms and services, he must follow the directives of the Chief of Training, and in matters pertaining to the Panzer troops, the directives of the Inspector General of Panzer Troops. The procurement, education, and training of potential officers and NCOs must be carried out so as to meet the requirements of the Army Personnel Office.

He will cooperate with the Personnel Branch of the General Army Office (AHA/ Truppenabt) in all questions relating to the procurement, training, and administration of potential NCOs.

5. He has under him the following: the commandants of infantry officer candidate schools; the commandants of the NCO schools, east and west; the commandant of Panzer troop NCO schools; the infantry officer candidate schools including the advanced officer candidate courses attached to it; the artillery officer candidate school including the advanced officer candidate courses attached to it; and the Army NCO schools and preparatory schools (the latter until the time of their dissolution).

This subordination is not to interfere with the following: local subordination to the responsible commander of the service command; the suprvision of training in the various arms and services by the Chief of Training, the inspectors of the various arms and services, and the Inspector General of Panzer Troops; the prerogative of the chiefs of branches in the General Army Office to visit the schools.

6. He is the representative of the Army with the following: The Reich Youth Leader (Reichsjugendführer) to whom he makes recommendations for the premilitary training of the Hitler Youth according to combat experiences.

The Reich Minister of Education and Science (Reichsminister für Erziehung Wissenschaft und Volksbildung) to whom he makes recommendations in matters pertaining to the military indoctrination of high school and college students.

Fromm

Chief of Army Equipment and
Commander of the Replacement Army,
22 February 1944

Appendix 12

Note: Prior to the issue of the following order the duties of the Chiefs of Branches were confined solely to the Field Army

Appendix 2 to Army High Command/Army General Staff/
Organization Branch/Army High Command/Chief Army
Equipment and Cmdr. Repl. Army/General (Army Office Staff Ia)
Nr.5500/44 secret 25.11.1944

Service Regulations
for the Chiefs of Branches in the Army High Command

1. The chiefs of branches in the Army High Command are the senior officers in their respective branches and the only authorized representatives of these branches in the Army High Command.

2. The chiefs of branches in the Army High Command are under the Chief of the Army General Staff in his sphere of responsibility and under the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army in matters pertaining to his command. The inspectors of branches are the permanent deputies of the chiefs of branches.

The Chief of the Army General Staff and the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army draw-up together, the character and efficiency reports on the chiefs of branches. The ultimate responsibility for these reports rests with the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of Replacement Army, whose opinion, in case of disagreement, will be final.

3. The duties of the chiefs of branches in the Army High Command are as follows:

(a) To advise the Chief of the Army General Staff and the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army on all matters concerning their respective branches;

(b) To make rapid use of field experiences and to insure their practical application to the training, organization, armament and equipment of their respective branches in the Field Army and the Replacement Army;

(c) To supervise the training of the Field Army and the Replacement Army according to the general directives of the Training Branch of the Army General Staff and of Staff Section IV (Training) of the Chief of Army equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army, with special attention to the training of the replacements for the Field Army according to the needs of the Field Army.

(d) To draw up all manuals, pamphlets, and periodic instructions concerning their respective branches in collaboration with the Training Branch of the Army of the General Staff, and Section IV (Training) of the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army; to contribute to regulations, pamphlets, and periodic instructions concerning the command of combined units and the coordination of all arms and services. The concurrence of the Training Branch of the Army General Staff will have to be secured before general directives on training, manuals on leadership and training, or pamphlets, are issued to the Replacement Army so as to insure that all the interests of the Field Army and the cooperation of all arms have been considered;

(e) To collaborate with the Army Personnel Office in the filling of officer vacancies of the respective arm or service in headquarters groups, service schools and the schools under the Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs;

(f) To submit requests for the development and manufacture of the weapons, ammunition, equipment, and supplies for their arms or services to the appropriate branches of the Army General Staff. They will, for that purpose, take part in the experiments undertaken by the ordnance office;

(g) To attend to the general needs of their respective branches.

4. In the course of their official duties, the chiefs of branches, by order of either the Chief of the Army General Staff or the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army, are compelled to visit all troops and training units of their respective arms and services, to inspect the functioning of officer candidate and NCO schools, and to issue hard and fast directives to command headquarters of the Field Army and the Replacement Army regarding matters of training in their respective arms and services. They must insure the application of all basic principles established by the practical experiences of the Field Army. They will report all their observations to the Chief of the Army General Staff and/or to the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army. They will also give information of their observations to all relevant command headquarters in the Field Army and Replacement Army, to the administrative sections of the Army General Staff, and/or to the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army. They are authorized to make inspections only in the schools under their immediate command.

5. Each chief of branch in the Army High Command (OKH) has under him, as his executive staff, the inspectorate of his branch, which is headed by an inspector. The inspectorate simultaneously represents its branch in the General Army Office and handles matters of organization and personnel in the Replacement Army as well as questions pertaining to the tables of organization (Kriegstärkenachweisung), and tables of equipment (Kriegsausrüstungsnachweisung), and the development of weapons, equipment and ammunition. The chiefs of branches in the Army High Command keep contact with the departments of the Army General Staff through a forward echelon. (vorgeschobene Staffel)

6. Subordinate to the chiefs of branches are:

(a) The inspector of each arm or service.

(b) The inspectorate of each arm or service, without curtailing the subordination of this office to the General Army Office in matters of work.

(c) The Field Army or Replacement Army schools of their particular arm or service in regards to all duties and authority vested in the chiefs of branches through this regulation. This in no way impairs administrative and territorial responsibility of the schools to the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army.

7. This directive applies to the following chiefs of branches:

(a) The Chief Infantry Officer in the Army High Command

(b) The Chief Artillery Officer in the Army High Command

(c) The Chief Engineer and Fortification Officer in the Army High Command

(d) The Chief Chemical Warfare Officer in the Army High Command

(e) The Chief of Volunteer Units in the Army High Command

8. In addition, the chiefs of branches have the following special authorities and duties:

(a) The Chief Infantry Officer in the Army High Command has the duties and authority of a Service Command commander and will further the premilitary small-arms training of units in the zone of the interior which are not part of the armed forces.

(b) The Chief Artillery Officer in the Army High Command has the duties and authority of a Service Command commander; has under him the Chief Army Antiaircraft Artillery Officer, the Chief Coastal and Fortress Artillery Officer, and the Chief Armored Artillery Officer; will collaborate with the operations branch in formulations of recommendations on fundamental principles governing the participation of artillery in combat, on the employment of headquarters artillery (Heeresartillerie), on special equipment, on artillery reconnaissance materiel; and will direct the weather service of the artillery within the limits of Army activities.

(c) The Chief Engineer and Fortifications officer in the Army High Command has the duties and authority of a corps or district commander; has under him the General for Special Assignment (zbV) assigned to him and the Chief of Amphibious Engineers. (This directive in no way affects those previously issued to the General for Special Employment (zbV), assigned to the Chief Engineer and Fortification Officer, nor to those issued to the Chief of Amphibious Engineers. The duties to be carried out within the Armed Forces by the Chief Engineer and Fortifications officer in the Army High Command are in no way affected by this directive to the chiefs of branches); will collaborate with the operations branch in the formulating of recommendations on the employment of Army engineer troops (Heeres-Pioniere), construction engineers, and snow-removal troops (Schneeraeumtruppen); on the planning, construction, and improvement of fortifications and the employment of the necessary personnel and materiel.

(d) The Chief Chemical Warfare Officer in the Army High Command has the duties and authority of a division commander; will deal with all matters pertaining to gas defense (In these matters he will collaborate with the relevant departments of the Army General Staff, with all interested agencies of the Commander in Chief of the Air Forces and of the Chief of Naval Operations as well as with all interested agencies and civilian agencies concerned); will collaborate with the operations branch in the formulating of recommendations on the employment of chemical warfare troops.

(e) The chief of Volunteer Units in the Army High Command has the duties and authority of a division commander (All special regulations contained in the directive issued to the Chief of Volunteer Units while still attached to the Chief of the Army General Staff (Appendix to Army High Command/Army General Staff/Organization Branch/No.II/236228/43 secret II/29.1.1944) remain in force. These service regulations are extended to cover all foreign volunteers included in the Army).

9. Any earlier directives in conflict with these directives for chiefs of branches in the Army High Command are hereby rescinded.

Appendix 13

Extract from an Order issued by the Operations (Ia) Section Training Branch, Army General Staff (Gen.StdH/Aus.Abt/Ia) No. 3000/40 g Dated 7 October 1940

Training

1. The troops must be trained for mobile warfare, and primarily for the attack and exploitation of the success in pursuit. Emphasis must be placed on the following points:

(a) General

Attack against the enemy in fortified field positions, including those based on independent permanent installations, fortified localities, or forests

Preparations for attack immediately in front of the enemy positions under cover of darkness, mist, and hazy weather

Fighting for river frontage

Combat in woods and villages

Leadership and employment of advance detachments or quickly organized (ad hoc) units for pursuit

Combat under cover of night and natural mist

Combat reconnaissance with emphasis on target reconnaissance, rapid interpretation of the results into effective combat against the targets, and composing accurate messages

Morale discipline, traffic control, camouflage and air-raid protection, gas detection and chemical defense, passing through gassed areas

Employment of smoke blanket (by airplanes) in attack

(b) Infantry divisions and motorized infantry divisions

Transition from the attack to the defense and vice versa

Cooperation with the assault artillery

Antitank combat both in attack and in defense

Digging in and strengthening of defenses of terrain according to H Dv 130/11

Marches up to 60 kilometers (37 miles) per day, and at night

The motorized infantry division must be trained to fight without support and to mop up enemy units in forests and villages

Quick deployment from the march to the attack formation

(c) Armored Divisions

Attack and pursuit by mobile units operating independently

Attacks in order to exploit the successes gained by the infantry divisions

Attack against mobile troops

Mutual support among armored infantry, and artillery units, in attack of the armored formation alone, or as a part of a combat team

Route marches by infantry units, up to 40 kilometers (25 miles) a day, and also at night

March exercises of several days' duration under simulated combat conditions, especially with regard to maintenance services

2. The basis for training is the training manual, supplemented by directives and pamphlets

The commanders of army groups and armies who supervise the training in their commands, are responsible to see to it that individual experiences as gained in the western campaign, are not falsely generalized.

In general, the troops must be trained for combat against an equal enemy. The eastern and western campaigns have shown the tactical principles laid down in our directives to be correct.

Individual Training Fields

3. The mastery of the weapon as a prerequisite for good firing must be practiced by means of drill.

Practice firing under simulated combat conditions and firing with live ammunition must be carried out by the individual rifleman and the individual gun crew up to the level of a reinforced battalion, as far as possible under battle conditions.

In this connection, special emphasis is to be placed on the following points in training infantry, motorized infantry, and rifle units:

Exploitation of the superior rate of fire and the high morale effect of the machine gun.

Employment of the heavy machine gun for continuous fire through gaps and from dominant positions.

Employment of the light machine gun as a spearhead weapon and for assault fire in motion while penetrating the enemy lines. Combined fire of all weapons against ground sectors, hedges, and similar objects which contain targets not accurately located.

Coordinating flat and high-trajectory weapons under one officer (e.g., heavy machine guns and heavy mortars).

Fire discipline, quick and accurate target reconnaissance, range estimation, and rapid, surprise fire must be practiced. Officer classes in fire-control training must be held according to a fixed schedule, at least once every week in infantry, cavalry, and artillery units; in the case of artillery or chemical units, these classes are to be given by the battalion commanders. The training should take place on suitable terrain, and if possible, with live ammunition. The soldier should be taught to gain the utmost possible effect by a single shot; in cases when fire is observed, he should be trained to put the target out of action with the smallest possible number of shots.

4. Combat against the French and English, who are masters of camouflage, has revealed the difficulty of reconnaissance against a skillful enemy. In combat reconnaissance training, the fact must be stressed that only a reconnaissance unit strong in numbers and arms will be successful and force the enemy to show his weapons. The squad is the smallest unit for a reconnaissance patrol. Before tactical reconnaissance, combat reconnaissance, and observation, the terrain must be evaluated. The troops have to learn how to appreciate the ground in terms of where the enemy would be if he had disposed his forces correctly.

The activity of reconnaissance patrols on combat reconnaissance missions must always be covered by heavy infantry weapons on even by artillery in order to support their advance or to assist their disengagement in the face of hostile fire. This must be emphasized during training.

Short, exact, and rapid formulation of messages must be practiced as well as quick evaluation of all incoming messages and observation reports coming into the command post. Reconnaissance must be improved in all units by training skillful and energetic patrol leaders, and by teaching the men how to correlate the terrain with the map.

The engineers in all branches of service must be trained in mine detecting and mine sweeping, in removing simple obstacles and in the improvised building of small bridges. All infantrymen must master the handling of pneumatic boats. They must know how to behave during a river crossing in an assault boat. Assistance in this training is to be given by instructor personnel of the division engineer battalion.

6. Signal and command post exercises must be held. Radio communication may be practiced within the division. Training on a more extensive scale must be approved by the Army High Command. Radio discipline must be strictly supervised, both in combat and in training. The individual and unit training of soldiers with only brief training in signal units must be repeated in larger field units. If there are no suitable instructors available, training personnel from the signal corps must be assigned, or special courses must be established at signal units. This applies especially to the training of signal sections with the pack radio set, and to radio mechanics, officers and NCOs. Men belonging to staffs or units concerned with drafting and transmitting of messages through signal channels must master the directives concerning concealment and security of communication.

7. Drill, in a moderate degree, is necessary in order to promote military bearing and discipline. Commanders of all ranks must prevent all company officers and other leaders, above all the younger ones, from wasting more time in drill than is absolutely necessary. Short, firm, and appropriate drill in weapons and battle training will further the spirit and zeal of every unit. Too much drill will have the contrary effect.

8. The training of both riders and horses must be increased. When instructors in this field are not available, they must be secured through exchange of personnel.

9. Sport is a proved means of training men to become physically hard and skilled. Sufficient time must, therefore, be allotted to it. Sports embellish strict military training and provide a necessary change.

10. Combat in fog must be practiced whenever practical. Directives on this subject are contained in the order of ObdH/Gen.stdH./Ausb.-Abt.(Ia) 1920/40g v.18.9.40.

The correct use of artificial smoke in attack has in the past facilitated the advance of troops and prevented many casualties. The training of commanders and men in the employment of artificial smoke is to be increased. The regiment commanders for special employment (that is supernumerary) (Regimentskommandeure zbV) of the chemical troops are to be utilized in this training in an advisory capacity if they are available. The units must strive to learn cooperation with ground chemical units as well as with airplanes spraying artificial smoke or laying smoke bombs. The employment of the smoke hand grenade and smoke candles as assistance in stalking the enemy must be taught. The same applies to smoke screening by tanks as a protection against surprise enemy fire.

11. During this war the enemy has as yet not used chemical warfare agents. It must, nevertheless, be remembered that he may use them at any time. The troops must in no case be found unprepared if chemical agents are employed. Therefore, the training in gas detection and defense must be allotted an adequate amount of time. This training should be given at certain regularly designated periods (e.g., one day every week). All troops must be trained to deal with contaminated terrain by improvised methods.

Gas officers and commissioned officers are to be trained in sufficient numbers by the Army Chemical Warfare School (Heeresgasschutz-schule) or at gas schools and courses given by the army groups. Requests for training material and the training of instructor personnel at the Army Gas Defense School are to be made to the Chief Chemical Warfare Officer at Army High Command. (General der Nebeltruppen beim Oberbefehlshaber des Heeres)

12. Officers, NCOs, and men must be taught to take an interest in the care and treatment of weapons, ammunition, equipment, instruments, horses, and prime movers. The authorized specialists should be used as advisers in these matters.

The Specialist Branches of Service

The following experiences of the western campaign must be considered. In attacks on a fortified position the method mentioned below has proved successful. Several wedges are driven into the opposing lines, and a heavy fire concentration is brought to bear against the objective; the reserves are directed to that point at which a wedge succeeds in penetrating the defense system. The flanks of the wedges are either screened by fire or artificial smoke or guarded by troops deployed for that purpose. Through the use of narrow formations in the attack, the attacking forces avoid the formation of a large number of targets covering the entire field of battle, and their own machine guns and antitank guns are able to fire through gaps. The employment of assault detachments as spearheads against positions (even those without permanent fortifications) may be advantageous if the strength and situation of the objectives have been thoroughly determined in advance. The methods of their employment are laid down in H Dv 130/9, in the section "Attack on positions reinforced by permanent installations." In general, the employment of these assault detachments will be successful only when they have been formed and trained in advance for their special mission.

The concentrated fire of the heavy infantry weapons and artillery supports the spearheads and gives them impetus. This must be coordinated with the advance of the infantry. At the start of concentrated fire every officer and NCO of the rifle companies must inspire his men and push forward immediately behind his own leader, so long as the fire is maintained. During this fire support, it is the duty of all battalion commanders and leaders of heavy weapons detachments to advance the attack by renewed concentrated fire on the decisive objectives. (H Dv 130/9, Section No. 4).

This must be drilled during training. Detailed training must take place in the following units:

The rifle company

Combat by narrow formations distributed in depth; combat by assault detachments variously composed according to mission and enemy situation, with single heavy weapons and some infantry engineer troops attached; the rear elements of the platoons and companies follow the spearheads in order to press through the attack with fire-power mobility; use of attached heavy weapons either singly or concentrated under the company commander; exploitation of wide gaps by heavy machine guns; squad training under the supervision of uniform and firm leadership. (Pamphlet supplement to H Dv 130/2b, Section 36); inspiration of troops to the attack by the traditional signal "charge" (Raschvorwaerts); close combat training with live hand grenades.

Machine gun company

The platoons must be in contact with the front line; drill practice in firing from open or camouflaged positions; concentrated fire of several platoons; establishing aiming stakes for firing from covered firing positions; antiaircraft defense.

Mortar platoon

Prompt readiness for action; observation and fire orders; coupling of flat and high-trajectory fire; concentrated fire; training of the platoon commander to lead several squads in combat.

Infantry gun company

Prompt readiness for action; firing from open positions (platoon and single gun); observation, target reconnaissance, firing commands, firing regulations; ricochet fire; concentration of fire; handling of guns.

Antitank company

Opening fire on tanks from close range from flanking positions; the guns must be held and committed close to the front line; employment of guns against machine-gun nests, using high explosive shells, surprise tactics; handling of guns.

Battalion

Concentration of power (in terms of time and space) by aiming the shock power of the battalion as a wedge against the objectives, supported by concentrated fire at the point of main effort.

Regiment

Employment of heavy weapons of the reserves to reinforce the main effort at the decisive point.

13. The training of armored forces is concerned primarily with the closed tank attack. The mission is an ambitious one -- the destruction of hostile artillery. The cooperation of all arms is required, a result of training in combat teams. These tactics must be drilled early and often in the armored division in preparation for the closed tank attack. Subjects of training must be the cooperation between tanks and riflemen, tanks and artillery, tanks and antitank units, tanks and engineers, tanks and reconnaissance planes, tanks and antiaircraft units. During an assault on opposing tank formations, the attacking tank units must work together. They must be supported by numerous tanks firing from perimeter positions and by artillery forces and antitank guns immediately to their rear. Training maneuvers held in conjunction with combat units of the Air Force should be carried out wherever possible. In the armored forces, the technical capacities of the officers of all ranks are often inadequate. This must be changed by courses given within the divisions or corps. Practical work at repair shops and ordnance shops should be conducted in these courses.

Antitank observers of the artillery must be trained in maneuvers for combat and fire control. As to the combat training of riflemen employed without tank support, see paragraph 13 above. When attacking in conjunction with armored forces, the riflemen must follow immediately behind the tanks in order to exploit the success gained.

The antitank gun crews must be trained for combat against tanks as well as for employment against villages, strong points, and permanent fortifications.

14. Maneuverability and prompt fire control are the prerequisites for quick and effective artillery work. These requirements must be satisfied in training, which should take place on the ground whenever possible. Officers of all ranks must master the battle tactics of the infantry and the armored force.

Fire control drills should start with exercises in switching the fire of single guns and batteries from one target to another. This should be followed by aiming and laying practice (Flugbahnexerzieren) within the battalion and regiment, and finally concluded by radio-controlled fire concentrations by large artillery units. These exercises are to be executed in conjunction with drill in formulating artillery orders. They may be given with or without live ammunition. The issuance of orders must be kept free of exaggerated regard for external form. Forward observers have proved indispensable in combat. The selection of suitable persons (preferably officers) for thorough training in the tactics and technique of this work is important. They should frequently be detailed to take part in training maneuvers of the infantry and armored forces.

Combined training maneuvers with long-range reconnaissance and artillery observation squadrons must insure that fire controlled by air observation can in the future be carried out without special preparation. The observers of reconnaissance planes should be detailed to take part in artillery live-firing practice in order to further cooperation. Appropriate agreements must be made with the Air Force. The same applies to officers of artillery staffs, who should be detached to Air Force photographic sections for training in aerial photography.

Special attention must be given to the following in training within the unit: The loss of specialists who are sent to other assignments must be made up as soon as possible. At the conclusion of training there must be a substitute available for every position in the unit.

The artillery survey detachment must be so trained as to be employed as a flash-ranging section, and for locating and surveying targets on enemy ground. If there are maps with the scale 1:25,000 available, the instrument NCOs of the batteries must be able to give accurate spottings for unobserved fire (map fire) without the help of the survey detachment. Their training is to be arranged accordingly.

Besides the employment of the complete battery, instruction must be given in the employment of single guns for front-line combat, antitank combat, attacks on bunkers, and as roving guns. The NCOs in charge of the guns must be trained for this task by stressing direct laying especially on moving targets. Units equipped with armored reconnaissance cars must give training in driving and firing on the battle field.

During all training maneuvers the behavior at observation posts must be regulated to combat conditions; avoidance of enemy observation is especially important. In training observation battalions, great emphasis is to be placed on the employment of lightly-equipped detachments.

In this connection the maneuverability of these detachments is to be exploited and the surprise engagement of enemy batteries with artillery is to be practiced. The tactical instruction of ranging station leaders and radio communication service at the batteries is to be improved. Rapid and accurate interpretation of the reconnaissance by evaluation personnel is necessary. Cooperation between light and heavy observation detachments is to be practiced.

The ranging section leaders of flash-ranging batteries employed for tactical reconnaissance must as frequently as possible be given the chance to work training problems in cooperation with the infantry forces. They must also learn to direct flash-ranging batteries in ranging indirect fire missions, and to work in cooperation with reconnaissance planes. As often as possible, they must be given the opportunity to carry out their observation against artillery units which are firing live ammunition. So far as the batteries are not yet equipped with the sonic deception device (Knalldarstellungsgerät), this lack must be made up immediately. (by order of OKH/Gen.St.D.H/Gen.D.Art.Nr.293/40 g III 30.1.40) Artillery commanders and regiment commanders for special employment (Regimentskommandeure zbV) must be employed for the supervision of training. Formations of the Army artillery are likewise to be pooled and put under the control of artillery staffs for training purposes.

15. Early reconnaissance is necessary for the prompt and useful employment of the engineers. By means of map exercises and training maneuvers, engineer personnel must be taught how to reconnoiter according to the intentions of the commander, who should have briefed them in advance. At all battalions, the rapid construction of makeshift bridges must be more frequently practiced. Speed is the main goal, and good organization is to be stressed in order to achieve this result.

The training of combat patrols for assault on villages, forests, and permanent fortifications as well as for detecting and removing mines is to be intensified.

16. The main emphasis in training and in action must be placed on training in the operation of signal equipment. Certain faults which appeared during the western campaign must be eliminated, especially bad pronunciation and the use of unauthorized expressions and amateur or civilian signal procedures.

Officers and senior NCOs in charge of telephone units must be trained to search for and chart signal communication lines in areas for which no communication charts exist. Units employed in the zone of the interior must coordinate their training in this field with the local Armed Forces Signal Command (Wehrmachtnachrichtenkommandantur). In the occupied zones, the signal commanders are to make the necessary arrangements in conjunction with the responsible signal agencies. In building permanent lines, the use of existing foreign systems is to be stressed. NCOs and other qualified enlisted men should be trained as switchboard operators for this work. Detailed unit training should emphasize the following points:

Telephone companies must learn to lay long-distance lines.

Wire laying companies of type "C" are to operate with bare wire only in order to get in contact with telephone sections, and wire-laying teams in charge of division or corps signal battalions should learn how to restore damaged wires and to utilize bare wires picked up anywhere in the field.

Telephone units will have to get acquainted with teletypewriter, field teletype operation and wireless telegraphy.

Officers, NCOs and men of all signal units must know how to eliminate jamming; they will have to know how to block wires or to shut down telephone and amplifier controls; prompt utilization of lines for our purposes must be secured.

Radio communication units must be trained in quick and accurate transmitting, recording, and encoding of messages, also while on the move. In order to further the efficiency of close reconnaissance platoons, qualified NCOs and men are detailed for duty with listening companies if approved by higher headquarters commanders of listening troops.

17. Unit training of chemical troops should be coordinated as much as possible with training of the infantry, artillery, and reconnaissance squadrons. Rifle training and field problems should be carried out together as often as possible. In case of firing with live ammunition and fire control exercises, chemical battalions will have to practice quick application of smoke curtains as well as rapid removal of them.

Artificial smoke is to be concentrated on the target if the range permits. Training in firing with new high explosive ammunition must be stressed. In officer and NCO training, the techniques of advanced observers and those of smoke liaison detachments will be taught.

Gas detecting training of decontamination battalions should frequently be conducted in cooperation with the infantry. Quick decontamination by means of the shortened procedure is to be practiced without waiting for the conclusion of the gas sentry's activity.

All decontamination battalions will be trained in the use of chemical mortars and smoke spray.

18. In rear echelon services basic training must be strengthened, rifle training must be increased. Furthermore, troops will be instructed in the following subjects: driving, traffic discipline, and technical training with heavy tanks given at motor transport units.

Specialized training of rear echelon services is regulated by special directives.

Officer and NCO Training

Transfers and new activations have re-emphasized the necessity of education and the stabilization of morale and training in the officer corps. Commanders are required to devote themselves with zeal to these tasks as well as to training of officers and NCO replacements.

19. Officers of all grades will receive sufficient tactical training to enable them to instruct men under their command practically and theoretically.

Younger officers, especially company and battery commanders, will be guided in training and educating their units.

20. Training courses of company and battery commanders within army groups will be continued. Company and battery commanders in charge of units since 15 May 1940 will have to go through the course if they have not previously participated in same. It is furthermore intended to build up as large a reserve of officers as possible by training those officers who by age and efficiency are potential unit leaders.

21. Training of battalion commanders of the infantry, mobile infantry, engineers, and signal corps is conducted by the instruction division at Koenigsbrück. It is governed by special directives. Training of battalion commanders of mobile troops will be regulated by special order if it is not conducted in conjunction with training at the armored school. Regiment commanders of all arms and services will be instructed and furthered in leading their organizations as well as combined units. Higher headquarters, primarily division commanders are responsible for proper training.

22. Knowledge and performance of young adjutants often proves insufficient. They will be trained at courses given by divisions in the following subjects: tactics, command exercises, message writing (also radio messages), supply, and military correspondence. The importance of economy in supply matters should be emphasized. It is the duty of each adjutant to assist the unit in fulfilling its tasks. He should also eliminate all correspondence not absolutely essential.

23. Better cooperation between related weapons should be stressed, and participation in the training of the other arms is indicated. Wherever feasible, exchange detachments (Austauschkommandos) should be detailed for training and observation to units of related arms.

Commanders of infantry, rifle, and armored units must be instructed in giving proper combat missions to subordinate artillery formations.

24. Traffic discipline depends largely on the organizing ability and energy of officers. Traffic training problems and theoretical instruction will deepen the knowledge and understanding of the subject and will enable men to act properly in case of difficulties and irregularities. Practices in traffic direction of the unit in cooperation with traffic police should be helpful to achieve this purpose.

Traffic regulations are not a matter of supply but a measure of operations and principally a function of the operations department (Ia).

Basic directives with regard to traffic regulation will be issued soon.

25. The method of training and educating NCOs shall be principally the same as the one applied for commissioned officers. Gallantry and individual ability alone do not suffice. By way of NCO training, young NCOs, especially those who have been promoted during the war, should be given the kind of training that enables them to be leader, educator, and instructor.

Lack of qualified instructor personnel requires training at NCO schools.

Collaboration with the Air Force

26. The scale at which the Air Force is committed at the present time makes it impossible to predict to what degree cooperation with ground combat units and antiaircraft detachments will be possible.

It is the respondibility of all higher headquarters to make use of each opportunity for training its troops in cooperation with allied arms.

27. Reconnaissance squadrons and antiaircraft units shall take part in terrain exercises. Reconnaissance squadrons will also participate in signal corps and staff exercises. During officer and NCO training, officers of reconnaissance squadrons and those of antiaircraft units will take part in lectures (e.g., firing practice for officers) and map problems.

Appendix 14

Army High Command — 1 January 1944

Gen Staff, Tng Br (Ib)

Directives and Training Plans for Army Arms and Service Schools

Pages	Table of Contents	
3 - 5	General Training Directives	
6	Explanations of Abbreviations Appendixes	
7 -10	Special Training Directive	
11-12	Section 1 & 2	Organization of the Army Arms and Services School
13	Section 3	Organization of an Assault (Sturm) Battalion of an Army Arms and Services School
14-16	Section 4	Wartime Table of Organization of an Army Arms and Services School
18-31	Section 5	Training Plan for a Training Group for Company and Battery Commanders (4 weeks)
32-39	Section 6	Training Plan for a Five-week Course for Company Commanders of Infantry Companies
40-45	Section 7	Training Plan for a Short Training Course for Battery Commanders (18 days)
46-51	Section 8	Training Plan for Forward Observers (18 days)
52-58	Section 9	Training Plan for Infantry Platoon Commanders (28 days)
59-70	Section 10	Training Plan for Engineer Platoon Commanders (6 weeks)
71-78	Section 11	Training Plan for an Engineer Squad Leader Course (5 weeks)
79-81	Section 12	Training Plan for Mine Placement Platoons of all Branches (2 weeks)
82-85	Section 13	Training Plan for the Re-training of Telephone Operators to Telegraphers (3 weeks)
86-89	Section 14	Training Plan for Commanders of Signal Platoons of Infantry, Artillery, and Engineers (17 days)
90-91	Section 15	Training Plan for an Eight-day Close-Range Antitank Course
92-97	Section 16	Syllabus for a Three-week Course in Riding and Driving
98-99	Section 17	Training Plan for a Ten-day Chemical Warfare Course
100	Section 18	Method of Formulating an Order

General Directives Governing Training in Army Arms and Services Schools

The Army Arms and Services Schools are the central training commands of armies and are organized principally for refresher training of company and battery commanders for combat leadership. Training will reflect the needs arising from the local situation and at the front of the army concerned.

The schools have proved themselves satisfactory for the purpose of giving training which has been found lacking and as a result of combat experiences. The newest weapons and procedure may be taught at the same time.

The training directives of this publication are intended not only for normal situations, but also for fronts where unusual conditions prevail, or in armies containing a different proportion of mobile units and thus adjustments have to be made. Re-training for a different branch and training of specialist NCOs can be carried out according to local demands.

In case of a critical situation the army school should be prepared to revert immediately to combat status. Advance training for this purpose should be made. Trainees and training staffs will not be used as units, but as individual replacements or replacement companies, except for assault battalions.

A training staff will be kept in order to reorganize the school when the crisis has passed.

Training Plans

The training plans contain training topics in chronological order, theory, practice, and training equipment to be used.

Wartime Table of Organization Of an Army Arms and Services School
(Appendix 4)

Component	Officers	Civilian Officials	NCOs	Men
Headquarters Staff				
Commanding Officer (Also Commanding Officer Training Staff Infantry)	1			
Adjutant	1			
Medical Officer	1			
Paymaster		1		
NCOs			3	
Men				3
	3	1	3	3
Training Staff, Infantry				
Director of Training	1			
Officer Instructors	3			
NCOs			2	
Men				2
	4		2	2

Component	Officers	Civilian Officials	NCOs	Men
Training Staff, Artillery				
Director of Training	1			
Officer Instructor	1			
Ordnance NCO			1	
NCOs			2	
Men				3
	2		3	3
Training Staff, Engineers				
Director of Training	1			
Officer Instructor	1			
NCOs			2	
Men				2
	2		2	2
Training Staff, Signal Communications				
Director Of Training	1			
Officer Instructors	2			
Assistant Instructors			2	
Radio Specialist			1	
Men				2
	3		3	2
Training Staff, Antitank				
Director of Training	1			
Officer Instructors	2			
NCOs			2	
Men				2
	3		2	2
Training Staff, Chemical Warfare				
Director Of Training and Instructor	1			
Officer Instructor	1			
Assistant Instructors			2	
Men				1
	2		2	1
Training Staff, Riding and Driving				
Director Of Training	1			
Officer Instructor	1			
Assistant Instructors			2	
Men				2
	2		2	2

Component	Officers	Civilian Officials	NCOs	Men
Patrol School				
Director of Training	1			
Officer Instructors	2			
Assistant Instructors			2	
Men				2
	3		2	2
Service Personnel				
Maintenance NCO			1	
NCOs			5	
Armorer-Artificer			1	
Men				10
Auxiliary Volunteers (Prisoners of War)				(30)
			7	10 (30)
Total Strength	24	1	28	29 (30 auxiliaries)

Appendix 15

DIVISION COMBAT SCHOOL

The following publication was issued by the Training Branch of the Army High Command (Ausb. Abt: G.St.D.H)

Army High Command
General Staff
Training Branch (Ib)
No 3100/43

Headquarters, Army High Command
8 September 1943

Model Training Plan
for a
Division Combat School

Table of Contents

Page
Preface.......... 164
COMBAT SCHOOL.......... 165
    Purpose and Scope.......... 165
    Organization and Equipment.......... 165
TRAINING.......... 166
    Method of Training.......... 167
    General Directives.......... 167
    Divisions of Training in Deatil.......... 169
    Daily Schedule.......... 171
APPENDIXES (extracted).......... 198

Preface

The Combat School is established for the training of NCOs of the division infantry and engineer units. Admission of NCOs and acting NCOs (Unterführer) of other types of units is desirable, but such other training is not yet emphasized in detail.

The training plan is set up in a manner to permit immediate training, without special instructions to the training personnel and without immediate preparation on its part.

For this reason the curriculum is divided into daily schedules. The time schedule is adapted to local conditions and the season (summer).

The appendixes serve as a fund of material for the organization and execution of training. They are to constitute a more or less complete collection of all important details (Einzelthemen) of drill and instruction for future use. Thus, with the turnover of personnel, the efficiency of new instructors is increased and the stability of the whole training system is insured.

The commanding officer of the Division Combat School (also Director of Training (Lehrgangsleiter)) is responsible for a continuous check on the appendixes and for their conformation to training and battle experience.

THE COMBAT SCHOOL

Purpose and Scope

The aim of the combat school is the development of adaptable, resolute, and active NCOs, whose personality, passionate enthusiasm, and technical as well as tactical ability inspire and set an example for their subordinates.

All NCOs will be trained in fire support with heavy weapons units, as well as in the use of their own arms. The NCOs of rifle companies will be trained in making the best possible use of fire power.

Platoon leader and squad leader candidates will receive technical training in the handling of weapons and equipment, close combat, antitank and command drill, as well as instruction in training subordinates.

Thus the following categories are trained:

(a) Especially qualified NCOs as platoon leaders

(b) Young, inexperienced NCOs and experienced acting corporals; in special cases, also privates, as squad leaders.

(c) Young, inexperienced NCOs and acting corporals of machine gun, infantry howitzer, and antitank companies were trained as patrol leaders, squad leaders, gun-squad leaders, and heavy weapons section leaders.

Organization and Equipment

Training personnel

The instructors indoctrinate and train the students. On and off duty they are in charge of the students of their sections.

(a) The Director of Training (Lehrgangsleiter) (commanding officer of field replacement battalion) is responsible for all training in the combat school, company firing practice (Kompanie - Schiessen), and training problems. He decides upon the disposition of instruction personnel. He supervises the indoctrination on current events and problems of national political significance and personally conducts lessons of particular importance.

(b) Section chiefs (Abteilungsleiter) will supervise combat instruction and direct practice problems, range practice, weapons drill, target practice and command training, as well as close-combat and antitank training. They are responsible for the proper tactical execution of combat practice and range practice.

(c) Platoon leaders are assistants and deputies to the arm or service section chiefs, weapons instructors, and map reading instructors.

(d) Squad leaders supervise the indoor duties of their squad and also assist the section chiefs and platoon leaders in the outdoor work. They give instruction in the use of the compass and other items of equipment.

Students

The students are grouped into sections.

The following arm or service sections have been formed:

Section 1, platoon leader candidates
Section 2, squad leader candidates
Section 3, squad leader candidates for heavy weapons (machine gun, mortar, infantry howitzer, and antitank gun).

The sections are organized into platoons and squads, depending on the number of students.

The students are to be issued squad leader field equipment and are under the command of their original army units. Machine pistols, etc., as required. Each division, as a rule, has a reserve antitank platoon which may be used for antitank training. Infantry gun courses are held in the 13th or infantry gun company.

Attached service personnel (*Wirtschaftspersonal*)

The following men are attached:
1 master sergeant
1 supply sergeant
1 medical corps enlisted man
1 armorer-artificer
1 clerk
1 accountant (also food supply man)
1 cobbler (auxiliary volunteer - Russian or other volunteer)
1 tailor (auxiliary volunteer)
2 cooks (1 auxiliary volunteer)
4 teamsters (auxiliary volunteer)

Equipment

(Drawn from the supplies of the field replacement battalion) (*Feld. -Ers.Batl.*)

6 light machine guns M34
2 light machine guns M42
2 heavy machine guns M34
2 light mortars
3 medium mortars
5 rifle grenade launchers
1 ring-gun mount (*Ringstandschlitten*) and other new devices
1 antitank gun, 5cm
1 light infantry gun
1 2cm antiaircraft gun
1 flame thrower
1 rifle with telescope sight (4x)
3 rifles M43

For special practice problems other heavy weapons were requisitioned on loan from infantry regiments.
Targets and training aids are makeshift and from available materials.

Demonstration troops (*Lehrtruppe*)

The field replacement battalion is available for use as a demonstration unit, schedule of units participating to be noted in the curriculum.

The field replacement battalion also furnishes personnel for range-firing instruction and for the construction of combat courses and training areas, insofar as the service personnel of the combat school does not fill the needs.

TRAINING

The training subjects are adapted to the requirements of defensive warfare on the Russian front. Types and forms of combat which seem unnecessary during the present situation, such as the attack from the march or attack during movement and the follow through, have been left out intentionally. The training period of each course consists of four weeks of six days each.

The daily timetable for one week is contained in appendix 2.

Method of Training

Training is conducted in sections, commanded by an officer (the section chief). For administrative details concerning the organization of demonstration stations, see appendix 7.

The sections work independently or with the school cadre under the direction of the section chiefs or combined under the supervision of the commanding officer of the combat school.

The size and scope of practice problems are determined by the training syllabus. The commander of the combat school orders changes necessitated by the absence of students or demonstration personnel, as well as the merger of sections in certain cases.

The training program provides for frequent interchange of squad, platoon, and company problems to increase the versatility of the NCOs and to train them in the various types of combat situations.

On maneuvers of the entire combat school, the platoon leader candidates lead the platoons composed of squad leader candidates and demonstration troops. Furthermore, the students act as umpires and in command capacities.

General Directives

Enemy

(a) On peacetime field problems, umpires and directors often convey too much information about the enemy. During combat, very little is known about the enemy. The student must be trained in the possibilities of reconnaissance and observation.

(b) Fire orders must not be so specific as to be unrealistic; such as "enemy by the bush"; a description such as: "that ridge is taken" is to be preferred; the direction and rate of fire are automatically included.

(c) Enemy position: Progressive graduation of difficulties. At first easy, later more obscure targets are used.

The situation

The situation should be as brief and simple as possible. The past development of a situation has no bearing on the immediate problem.

Mission

The mission will be given as an operational order, not a fire order, and will always be repeated.

Cooperation with heavy weapons

Cooperation between infantry and heavy weapons will be effected through practice drills. Personal contact between infantry and heavy weapons platoon leaders is desirable. The infantry platoon leader briefly describes his plan of operation, then gives the orders for support from heavy weapons assigned to him.

Leaders, adjacent units

No unit can fight independently. The leader of the operational unit is to be kept informed, communication should be kept open, liaison contact with neighboring units in all phases of combat.

Reconnaissance

Every commander must plan in advance; special attention should be paid to the enemy situation. This is accomplished by timely reconnaissance only. Spotting by eye and ear (especially at night) is the main duty of the rifleman and soldier on patrol.

Patrol leaders and members must not only determine that there is movement, but also when, what, how, and where must be determined by reconnaissance. Reconnaissance information must arrive at headquarters in time to be useful. Clarity of the text, handwriting, and sketches is an absolute necessity in the composition of messages. During combat, visual reconnaissance must be continuous.

Security

Carelessness is a regrettable fault of the German soldier and a criminal offense toward subordinates. It is the responsibility of the leader to take adequate and efficient security measures. All acts of carelessness are to be construed as breaches of comradeship and are to be punished.

Communication

Continuous contact between infantry and heavy weapons units is essential. Such means as flares, tracer ammunition, and especially hand signals are used for communication.

Observation

For continued observation of enemy as well as friendly troops, observers are used constantly. They report all events as they occur.

Target designation

Prominent landmarks are used; the terrain is divided into sections, range is estimated, and references are given.

Decisive action

Lack of determination is the greatest fault of a soldier. The superiority of the German infantryman is based on his ability to act independently and resolutely.

Camouflage

Each soldier must visualize his position as seen through the eyes of the enemy. Thus, correct camouflage is insured.

Sanctity of orders (Heiligkeit)

Orders are given in a clear, crisp, loud voice. The execution of orders is constantly checked, later verified by correct verbal report, "Message concerning incident Baseball 3 delivered to Lt. X, as ordered" and not, "Mission accomplished, as ordered." The instructor must notice and correct all deficiencies and mistakes without fail. Unobservant leaders and those who are afraid to criticize are detrimental to the discipline of a unit.

Discipline

Constant supervision and observation is essential. Practice marches serve as endurance and nerve tests. Discipline is also instilled by manual of arms and combat drill.

Division of Training in Detail

Training is divided into the following tactical subjects:

Defense
Prepared attack limited to a specified objective
Transition from attack to defense
Penetration
Combat patrol action
Penetration in depth through enemy's main line of resistance
Defense against counterattack
Combat action with the aid of assault guns
Reconnaissance tasks, combat patrol action
Action of small combat units in rough terrain and woods
Action in and around shelled buildings
Gas warfare

Basic principle: The courses are developed from preparatory technical combat drills to practical tactical training.

The respective subjects are first presented through instruction, then in combat training, and finally in practice problems. Special subjects in the curriculum are presented by demonstrations; close combat and antitank fighting are taught in special training courses. Deficiencies of the individual students are corrected by special command and drill exercises.

Combat instruction

Combat instruction is carried out with the sand table (preferably modeled after the actual terrain) or on the terrain. It forms the tactical and command basis for combat practice problems held later on.

Combat training -- night fighting

Small, impressive tactical situations are worked out and explained. No live ammunition is used. The terrain is carefully selected to suit the demonstration of different situations. Night fighting is stressed particularly.

Fire

Here the principles worked out in training are applied with the use of live ammunition. The normal course of an action is run through without interruption, with a resulting realistic effect. Umpires who simulate enemy action are especially important, since weapons for use in mock enemy emplacements are limited. The amount of ammunition used for the problem corresponds to the amount actually supplied for the type of action it represents. Security measures depend on the purpose of the problem and the progress of the sections. They are not to restrict the problem, yet should prevent accidents. The commanding officer of the division combat school can change any over-all directives.

Demonstrations

Tactically and technically correct demonstrations are staged to show the NCOs the ideal combat methods. Specialist officers plan, conduct, and discuss these demonstrations. For planned demonstrations, see appendix 3.

Close-combat training

(Rifle training, combat drill, close combat, and antitank close combat are conducted concurrently with gasmask drill)

This subject also is presented with small tactical situations. The trainee runs a close combat course in which he faces all the various close-combat situations. At other stations practical close combat holds are taught. The aim of this training is to make the soldier a nimble, hard, hand-to-hand fighter, superior to the Russian.

Antitank close combat

The NCO is familiarized with the principal antitank weapons and their effect. The use of these weapons is practiced with a training tank and other armored vehicles when available; moving targets are also used for practice.

Combat drill

The smallest units and infantrymen will repeatedly practice combat procedure under given situations until the drills develop into habits.

Weapons drill

Manual of arms, handling, stoppages, weapons, maintenance and assembly of weapons. These drills are not to be given under combat situations.

Rifle training

All spheres of rifle instruction not already familiar to the NCOs are to be covered by demonstrations. Repetition of familiar points may be exploited for practice instruction. The various kinds of fire, aiming practice, range estimation, and target designation are practiced in designated training areas and on varied terrain. Section 1 also receives instruction in rifle training and teaching. Heavy weapons trainees receive specialized training in their fields. The aim of all rifle training is the development of sharpshooters.

Command exercises

Class instruction, drill in voice and command. Drill only insofar as the appearance and behavior of NCOs at the front require improvement.

Weapons

Instruction, function, and effect of weapons - nomenclature of parts omitted. Special emphasis is placed upon instruction in care and handling of weapons during combat.

Class instruction

Tactics
Army orientation (Heerwesen) (organization, regulations, etc.)
National political indoctrination
Map reading
Scope of the war
Class periods under the direction of the Chief of Training, company affairs, etc.

Class instruction provides an opportunity for all students to speak and express their thoughts in short, clear sentences and for platoon leader candidates to observe methods of instruction.

Daily quarter-hour orientation themes

Historic and recent military compaigns, political and national political problems, as well as commentaries on Armed Forces, Army news bulletins. The instruction can be presented as a lecture or a class period. The aim of this program is to promote individual thinking about the historic developments. The instruction must be interesting and timely.

Lectures

Lectures by especially designated officers of the division are planned during each course. Liaison and coordination with the other branches, the Air Force and supply services are demonstrated. (See appendix 4)

Daily Schedule (see following pages)

1st training week 1st training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat instruction Section chief Principles of defense, concentrations of fire, use of range cards, selection of main line of resistance, setting up an infantry strong point	Combat instruction Section chief Principles of defense, the squad in defense, concentrations of fire, plan of fire, use of range cards, setting up a squad position	Combat instruction Section chief Principles of defense, the squad in defense, concentrations of fire, plan of fire, use of range cards, setting up a squad position, setting up a squad heavy weapons positions and observation posts, alternate positions
Combat training Section chief Command group practice (Rahmenübung) Platoon in defense, setting up a position, fire plan and plan of operations, digging the strong points, all around defense, concentrated fire, range cards, hasty field fortifications	Combat training Section chief Setting up the main line of resistance, the squad position, concentrated fire, range cards, fire plan, hasty field fortifications, conduct upon destruction of trenches with earth, conduct under heavy fire	Combat training Section chief Setting up the main line of resistance, digging firing positions and alternate positions, concentrated fire, fire plan, range cards, hasty field fortifications, conduct under heavy fire
Command exercises Section chief (With demonstration troops, field replacement battalion) Posture and bearing, platoon drill, voice and command, dress, commanding a platoon, field equipment and armament of a platoon	Command exercises Section chief Posture and bearing, platoon drill, voice and command, clothing, field equipment and armament of a platoon	Command exercises Section chief Commands and orders for freeing and moving equipment into position, posture and bearing, voice and command, clothing, command of machine gun and mortar fire, also of infantry and antitank guns
Lecture Section chief Organization of an infantry division	Lecture Section chief Organization of an infantry regiment	Lecture Section chief Organization of an infantry regiment

1st training week 2d training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat instruction Section chief Activity within the position, range cards, fire plans, observation and fire control	Combat instruction Section chief Activity within the position, range cards and fire plans, observation and fire control	Combat instruction Section chief Activity within the position, range cards and fire plans, observation and fire control
Combat instruction Section chief Situation, terrain, analysis, decision, orders	Transition firing Section chief Transition firing of rifle and machine gun by the rifleman	Transition firing of the single machine gun The single medium mortar, the single infantry gun, and the single antitank gun
Combat practice problems Platoon firing of heavy weapons; platoon in defense		Director of training Section chief
Rifle training Section chief Development of students as directors of rifle training, firing positions and breathing technique of rifle firing, range estimation, aiming practice	Combat drill Section chief Moving into position, jumping and sliding with the rifle and machine gun, firing positions, and fire orders, range estimation, aiming exercises with gas mask	Close combat Antitank close combat For special plan see appendixes 5 and 6
Weapons instruction Squad leader Light mortar Machine pistol	Weapons instruction Squad leader Machinegun 34 Machine gun 42	Weapons instruction Squad leader Heavy machine gun 34 Infantry gun Antitank gun

1st training week 3d training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Lecture	a) Supply of an infantry division in Russia b) Equipment, weapons, and ammunition supply; the amount of responsibility for materiel placed on NCOs	Division supply officer (Ib) Division weapons and equipment officer (WuG)
Combat drill Section chief Moving into position, jumping and sliding with rifle and machine gun, firing positions and fire orders, range estimation, aiming exercises with gas masks	Close combat Section chief Antitank close combat for special plan, see appendixes 5 and 6	Rifle training Section chief Transition firing Training as directors of rifle training, firing positions, breathing technique, range estimation during exercises
Combat training Section chief (with one demonstration platoon) Movement of platoon, guidance through artillery fire, movement through terrain under observation and fire, infiltration, occupation of attack positions	Combat training Section chief Movement of squad, guidance through artillery fire, movement through terrain under observation and fire, infiltration, occupation of attack positions	Combat training Section chief Movement of heavy machine gun squad, of infantry guns, antitank guns, guidance through artillery fire, movement through terrain under observation and fire, infiltration, occupation of attack position
Class instruction	Principles of warfare in Russia (deception, etc.)	Director of Training
Physical training	Combat games, obstacle course, woodland course, hand grenade distance throwing	Director of Training

1st training week 4th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat instruction Section chief Development and deployment, moving into assembly area, displacement, preparation for attack, fire plans	Combat instruction Section chief Deployment of squad, moving the squad into an assembly area, displacements preparation for attack and fire plans	Combat instruction Section chief Deployment of squad, moving the squad, machine gun and medium mortar training, infantry and antitank gun training, selection of observation posts
Terrain discussion Section chief Command group practice including section 3. Moving into assembly area, security measures, preparation for attack, fire plans, observation posts	Combat training Section chief Deployment into assembly area, displacement, security measures. Issuing attack orders within the squad. Practice including movement through grassed area	Terrain discussion Section chief Movement into assembly area, security measures, preparation for attack, fire plans, observation posts
Close combat Section chief Antitank close combat For special plan see appendixes 5 and 6	Rifle training Section chief Transition firing Training as directors of rifle training, firing positions, and breathing technique. Range estimation, aiming exercises	Combat drill Section chief Moving into position of single machine guns, machines, infantry guns, antitank guns, jumping with equipment, taking cover, surprise fire, fire orders, range estimation, aiming exercises, sighting and aiming exercises from a covered position, with gas mask

1st training week — 5th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat instruction Section chief Assembly and attack on limited objective, plan of fire for platoon and reinforced company, and firefight	Combat instruction Section chief Assembly and attack on limited objective, plan of fire for platoon, fire fight, including discussion on employment of heavy weapons	Combat instruction Section chief Assembly and attack upon limited objective, reinforced rifle company, and platoons led by machine gun company, infantry guns and antitank guns
Combat practice problem Assembly and attack upon limited objective, platoon fire with heavy weapons Leader, umpire, and assistants		Director of Training Practice troops (Ubungstruppe)
Rifle training Section chief Training as directors of rifle training; light mortars, medium mortar, machine pistol, pistol-firing	Combat drill Section chief Movements, jumping, target designation, firefight for squad	Close combat Section chief Antitank close combat For special plan see appendixes 5 and 6
Class instruction Section chief Russian maps, sketching	Class instruction Section chief Russian maps, sketching	Class instruction Section chief Russian maps, sketching
Lecture Artillery support of infantry combat, attack and defense Artillery fire direction, cooperation and liaison with artillery, especially with forward observers		Artillery officer of the division
Night problem Night relief in position, patrol activity in front of main line of resistance Defense against enemy combat patrol, nightfiring		Director of Training

1st training week — 6th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Class instruction Duties of the soldier as a representative of the fighting German people		Director of Training
Combat instruction Section chief Giving orders, fire direction, combined fire, and movement in attack on a limited objective	Close combat Section chief Antitank close combat	Rifle training
Weapons instruction Squad leader Machine gun 34 (heavy) Machine gun 42 (light)	Weapons instruction Squad leader Light mortar Machine pistol Pistol	Weapons instruction Squad Leader Sighting and aiming of the heavy machine gun, the medium mortar, infantry gun and antitank gun
Weapons inspection for Sections 2 and 3		Director of Training

2d training week 7th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat instruction Section chief	Combat instruction Section chief	Combat instruction Section chief
Battle missions, fire direction, choice of targets, use of ammunition, cooperation with heavy weapons, fire combination (Feuerzusammenfassungen) in transition from attack to defense	Platoon support of a squad with and without heavy weapons, use of heavy machine gun, infantry guns and artillery in the advance, with limited objectives	Liaison (keeping contact) with and without observation of own unit, in the attack. Boundaries, direction of fire, use of ammunition, types of fire of machine gun, medium mortar infantry gun, antitank gun
Combat training Section chief	Combat training Section chief	Combat training Section chief
(With demonstration platoon and heavy weapons of field emplacement battalion). The platoon in transition from attack and defense, reorganization. Defense against counterattacks, with enemy represented by field replacement battalion	The squad in transition from attack to defense, defense against enemy counterattack with the platoon	(together with Section 2)
Command training Section chief	Command training Section chief	Command training Section chief
Deployment and development of the platoon in the approach march and in combat, with commands and signals	Deployment of a squad in the approach march and in combat, with commands and signals	Development of a machine gun and medium mortar squad, infantry gun and antitank gun with equipment unfastened
Tactics Section chief	Combat instruction Section chief	Combat instruction Section chief
Assembly, and attack on light field fortifications	Attack on light field fortifications	Attack on light field fortifications

2d training week 8th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat instruction Section chief	Combat instruction Section chief	
Preparations for combat firing problem (mine warfare)	Instruction by platoon leader candidate to section 2: Platoon support of the squad with or without heavy weapons, use of heavy machine gun, infantry gun and artillery in the advance	Instruction by platoon leader candidate to Section 3: Liaison with and without observation of our own troops in the attack, boundary lines, fire directions, use of ammunition, fire combinations (machine guns, medium mortar, infantry gun, antitank gun)
Combat firing problem Attack against field fortifications, approach up to assault positions, occurence of mines. Platoon firing with heavy weapons of all sections, platoon leaders employed as directors and assistants		Director of Training
Close combat training Section chief	Rifle training Section chief	Combat drill Section chief
Antitank close combat For special plan, see appendixes 5 and 6	Aiming circle, sight adjustment, range estimation, aiming defects, firing positions with and without gas mask	Moving into position of single machine gun, mortar, infantry gun, antitank gun Jumping with equipment in use, approaching cover, fire orders, commands, range estimation, aiming exercises, laying and pointing practice from hidden firing positions
Weapons instruction Squad leader	Weapons instruction Squad leader	Weapons instruction Squad leader
Rifle grenade launcher, hand grenade, compass	Rifle grenade launcher, hand grenade, compass	Change of barrel and bolt, stoppages, compass

2d training week 9th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Lecture Cooperation of antitank units with infantry		An antitank battalion officer (Ein Offz. det Pz. Jäg. Abt)
Rifle training Section chief Aiming point, sight adjustment, range estimation, aiming defects, firing positions with and without gas masks	Combat drill Section chief Feeding the light machine gun, firing position, target designation fire orders	Close combat training and antitank close combat Section chief For special plan see appendixes 5 and 6
Demonstrations Patrol action, capturing a bunker		An officer of the engineer battalion
Instruction Chemical Warfare		Director of Training
Physical training Combat games, obstacle and woodland course, hand grenade distance and target throwing		Director of Training

2d training week 10th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat instruction Section chief Assault, capturing a position, leadership of a platoon, before, during, and after the assault, reorganization after assault	Combat instruction Section chief Assault, capturing a position, leadership of a platoon before, after, and during the assault, reorganization after assault	Combat instruction Section chief Firefight with heavy weapons in the assault, change of position
Combat training Section chief (with demonstration platoon and Section 3). Platoon assault with heavy weapons	Combat training Section chief Squad as an assault unit	Combat training Section chief (with Section 1) Platoon assault with heavy weapons
Weapons drill Section chief Machine gun 42 (light), changing bolt and barrel, close combat training	Weapons drill Section chief Changing bolt and barrel of machine gun 34 (heavy) and light mortar, close combat training	Weapons drill Section chief Changing bolt and barrel of machine gun 34 and 42, technical training with weapons

2d training week — 11th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat instruction Section chief Assault, transition to defense, defense against counterattack	Combat instruction Section chief Assault, transition to defense, defense against counterattack	Combat instruction Section chief Assault, transition to defense, defense against counterattack
Combat firing problem: Platoon assault with heavy weapons. (Section 1 furnishes leaders and directing personnel, Section 2 and 3 troops.) Transition to defense, gas alarm		Director of Training
Combat drill Section chief Feeding the light machine gun, firing positions, target designation, fire order	Close combat Section chief Antitank close combat For special plan, see appendixes 5 and 6	Rifle training Section chief Aiming point, sight adjustment, range estimation, aiming defects, firing positions--with and without gas mask
Combat instruction Section chief Commanding the platoon in the attack	Combat instruction Section chief Commanding the squad in the attack	Combat instruction Section chief Commanding squad and the platoon in the attack
Lecture Means of communication and their use, field telephone, radio and code information of use to the infantryman		An officer of the division signal battalion
Night problem Depending on progress of training and weather		Director of Training

---

2d training week — 12th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Instruction The supply situation in Germany		Director of Training
Close combat Section chief Antitank close combat	Rifle training Section chief Moving into position, jumping and sliding with rifle and machine gun; firing positions and fire orders, range estimation, aiming exercises with the gas mask	Combat drill Section chief Feeding or loading heavy weapons, firing positions, target designation, fire orders and command
Inspection of equipment		Director of Training

3d training week 13th training day

<table>
<tr><th>Section 1</th><th>Section 2</th><th>Section 3</th></tr>
<tr><td>Combat instruction
Section chief
Patrol action
Chain of command organization, preparations</td><td>Combat instruction
Section chief
Patrol action
Chain of command, organization, preparations</td><td>Combat instruction
Section chief
Patrol action
Chain of command, organization, preparations</td></tr>
<tr><td>Combat instruction
Section chief
Sandtable demonstration of a patrol action</td><td>Combat instruction
Section chief
Sandtable demonstration of a patrol action</td><td>Combat instruction
Section chief
Sandtable demonstration of a patrol action</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Combat training — Director of Training
Patrol action; fighting for an infantry position. Chain of command, organization, preparation, execution (all 3 Sections)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Command exercises
Section chief
Target designation, fire orders, transmitting orders, message writing</td><td>Command exercises
Section chief
Target designation, fire orders, transmission of orders, message writing</td><td>Command exercises
Section chief
Target designation, fire orders, transmitting orders, message writing</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Lecture — Judge Advocate of the division
Conduct toward subordinates, misconduct, abuse of power</td></tr>
</table>

3d training week 14th training day

<table>
<tr><th>Section 1</th><th>Section 2</th><th>Section 3</th></tr>
<tr><td>Combat instruction
Section chief
Patrol action
Chain of command, organization, preparation</td><td>Combat instruction
Section chief
Patrol action
Chain of command, organization, preparation</td><td>Combat instruction
Section chief
Patrol action
Chain of command, organization, preparation</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Combat firing problem — Director of Training
Patrol action; capturing a bunker, mopping up a trench (Sections 1 - 3)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Weapons drill — Section chief
Gas mask training, drill, close combat, antitank close combat</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Lecture — Chief of a machine gun company of the division
Organization and direction of fire in an infantry battalion
Weapons supporting the infantryman, situations in which he is dependent upon himself</td></tr>
</table>

3d training week 15th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Lecture The enemy intelligence service in the combat area		Division intelligence officer
Combat drill Section chief Writing messages during a small observation problem	Close combat Section chief Antitank close combat For special plan, see appendixes 5 and 6	Combat drill Section chief Writing messages during a small observation problem
Demonstration Attack with assault guns, company problem with a company of the field replacement battalion, description, explanation, functioning, and use of assault guns	An officer of the assault gun battalion Director of Training	
Instruction period for special employment		
Physical training Combat games, obstacle and woodland course, Hand grenade distance and target throwing		Director of Training

3d training week 16th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat instruction Section chief The platoon in action after penetration of the enemy's main line of resistance Cooperation with assault guns	Combat instruction Section chief Cooperation with assault guns	Combat instruction Section chief Use of heavy weapons in action after penetration of the enemy's main line of resistance Cooperation with assault guns
Combat training The platoon in action after penetration of the enemy's main line of resistance Use of assault guns, defense against counterattack, mines, (Section 1 - 3)		Director of Training
Close combat Section chief Antitank close combat See special plan	Combat drill Message writing and sketching during a small observation problem	Section chief

3d training week — 17th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat instruction Section chief Action after penetration of the enemy's main line of resistance with assault guns and tanks	Combat instruction Section chief (by platoon leader candidates) Action after penetration of the enemy's main line of resistance with assault guns and tanks	Combat instruction Section chief (by platoon leader candidates) Action after penetration of the enemy's main line of resistance with assault guns and tanks
Combat firing problem The platoon in action after penetration of the enemy's main line of resistance with assault guns (Sections 1 - 3)		Director of Training
Weapons drill Antiaircraft fire with rifle, light machine gun, heavy machine gun from gun mount and vehicle (section 1 directing, sections 2 and 3 practising)		Director of Training
Combat instruction Section chief Combat patrol night reconnaissance	Combat instruction Section chief Combat patrol night reconnaissance	Combat instruction Section chief Combat patrol night reconnaissance
Lecture The subleader's responsibility in supervising the state of health of his subordinates		Division surgeon
Night problem Night combat reconnaissance against a strongly fortified position; gas alarm		Director of Training

3d training week — 18th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Lecture Total war---shortest war!		Director of Training
Combat drill Writing messages and sketching during small observation problem	Section chief	Close combat Section chief Antitank close combat, For special plan see appendixes 5 and 6
Weapons instruction Section chief Field glass, compass, filling ammunition belts	Weapons instruction Section chief Field glass, compass, filling ammunition belts	Weapons instruction Section chief Field glass, compass, filling ammunition belts
Inspections, roll calls		Director of Training

4th training week 19th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat instruction Section chief The platoon and squad as reconnaissance patrol	Combat instruction Section chief The platoon and squad as reconnaissance patrol	Combat instruction Section chief Reconnaissance patrol for determination of heavy weapons employment
Combat training Section chief Reconnaissance patrol missions (section 1 leading, sections 2 as troops)		Combat training Section chief Reconnaissance missions during attack and defense missions, fire and movement in the attack
Lecture Air Force liaison officer of the corps The Air Force and its cooperation with infantry Liaison between infantry and air support		
Combat drill Director of Training, and gas officer of the division Movement through gassed area, conduct during gas bombardment, application of antigas plans		

4th training week 20th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat instruction Section chief Skirmish; conduct during unexpected engagement with enemy, combat in dense terrain and woods	Combat instruction Section chief Skirmish; conduct during unexpected engagement with enemy, combat in dense terrain and woods	Combat instruction Section chief Skirmish; conduct during unexpected engagement with enemy, combat in dense terrain and woods
Combat firing problem Combat reconnaissance with a platoon Director of Training Leading small combat units Cooperation with heavy weapons Combat in dense terrain or woods		
Weapons drill Repetition Director of Training Antiaircraft defense with rifle and machine guns Stoppages		

4th training week — 21st training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Lecture — Division gas defense officer Technique of gas combat and gas defense		
Weapons training Squad leader Preparation of weapons for live ammunition firing	Close combat Section chief Antitank close combat For special plan, see appendixes 5 and 6	Weapons training Squad leader Preparation of weapons for firing Care of weapons
Demonstration — Director of Training Negotiating a gassed area during combat reconnaissance (troops furnished by field replacement battalion)		
Lecture — Commander of an engineer battalion Road blocks, detonation, mine warfare		
Physical training — Section chief Competitive sports activities		

4th training week — 22d training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat instruction Section chief Village fighting in and around houses and ruined buildings	Combat instruction Section chief Village fighting in and around houses and ruined buildings	Combat instruction Section chief Village fighting in and around houses and ruined buildings, employment of heavy weapons
Combat training — Director of Training Fighting in and around ruined buildings (platoon problem with heavy weapons) (Sections 1 - 3)		
Combat drill Section chief Platoon orders, judgement and observation exercises (command group practice), messages, sketches	Combat drill Section chief Squad orders and squad movement, employment of light machine guns Messages, sketches	Combat drill Section chief Antitank close combat For special plan, see appendixes 5 and 6

4th training week 23d training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat instruction Cooperation with heavy weapons in the attack Sand table practice (Sections 1, 2, and 3 mixed)		All section chiefs
Close combat Section chief	Combat drill Section chief	Laying and pointing Section chief
Antitank close combat For special plan see appendixes 5 and 6	Squad orders and movements; employment orders, fire orders, messages, sketches	From front-line firing position Closest support, Messages, sketches
Lecture Spiritual welfare, idealogical training at the front		Division welfare officer
Combat instruction Discussion of combined weapons problem for the 24th training day		Director of Training

---

4th training week 24th training day

Section 1	Section 2	Section 3
Combat firing problem Company fire with heavy weapons (artillery etc.) in the attack Sections 1, 2, and 3, reinforced by field replacement battalion.		Director of Training
Final critique		
Turning in of weapons and turning over of quarters to unit concerned		

Remarks Concerning the Curriculum

The curriculum is based mainly on summer fighting on flat terrain (steppes). The following subjects may be stressed under different conditions, depending on the locality.

Engineer work of all units

(a) Setting up positions in summer and winter
(b) Laying mines and mine detection

Fighting in wooded terrain

(a) The direction squad (first squad) in wooded terrain
(b) The reconnaissance patrol }
(c) The platoon } in the woods
(d) The reinforced company }
(The training of the 1st Finnish forest fighting course are to be used)

Winter warfare

Training of snipers and observers

Night training

This training is held only once a week according to the curriculum, but may be extended by giving the class periods to late evening or early morning hours (twilight training; luminous rods)

The platoon or squad leader as training director of his unit

(a) In positions on an inactive front
(b) In reserve and rest positions

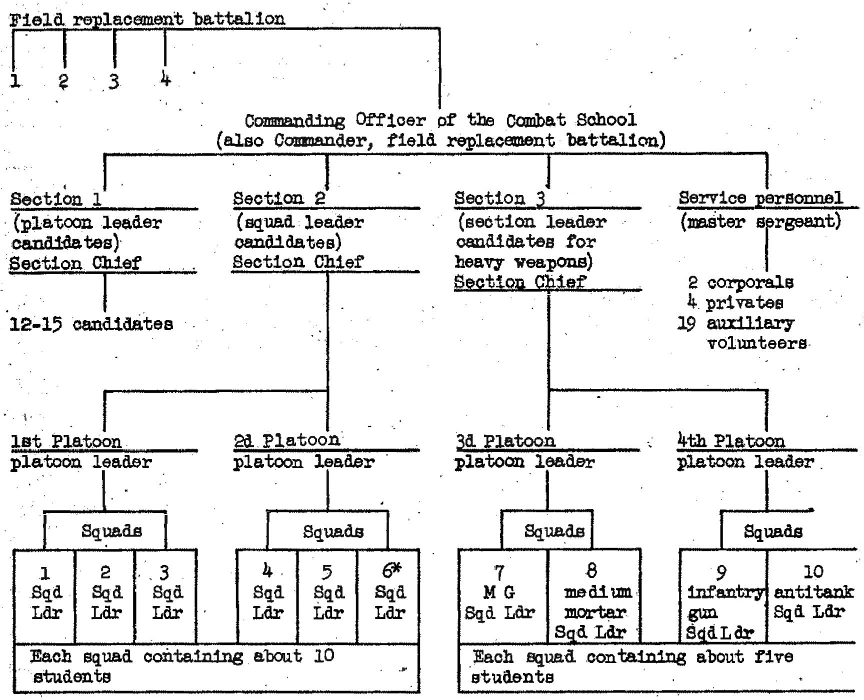
Appendixes

Training Plan of a
Division Combat School

Appendix 1	Organization of the division combat school
Appendix 2	Model for a weekly time schedule
Appendix 3	Planned demonstrations
Appendix 4	Planned lectures
Appendix 5	Close-combat training by the demonstration method
Appendix 6	Antitank close combat
Appendix 7	Directives for Organization Organization of demonstration type training system Preparations and course of demonstration training

Appendix 1

Organization of the Division Combat School


Field replacement battalion
1
2
3
4
Commanding Officer of the Combat School
(also Commander, field replacement battalion)
Section 1
(platoon leader candidates)
Section Chief
12-15 candidates
Section 2
(squad leader candidates)
Section Chief
Section 3
(section leader candidates for heavy weapons)
Section Chief
Service personnel
(master sergeant)
2 corporals
4 privates
19 auxiliary volunteers
1st Platoon
platoon leader
2d Platoon
platoon leader
3d Platoon
platoon leader
4th Platoon
platoon leader
Squads
Squads
Squads
Squads
1 Sqd Ldr
2 Sqd Ldr
3 Sqd Ldr
4 Sqd Ldr
5 Sqd Ldr
6* Sqd Ldr
7 M G Sqd Ldr
8 medium mortar Sqd Ldr
9 infantry gun Sqd Ldr
10 antitank Sqd Ldr
Each squad containing about 10 students
Each squad containing about five students

*The number of squads and students in them is dependent on the numerical strength of the training unit

Appendix 2

Model for a Weekly Time Schedule

Time	1st Day	2d Day	3d Day	4th Day	5th Day	6th Day
0500	---	---	Reveille	---	---	---
0600	---	---	1st Formation	---	---	---
0615- 0630	---	---	Subjects of current interest	---	---	---
0640- 0730	Combat instruction	Combat instruction	Lecture	Combat instruction	Combat instruction	Off duty after previous night training
0800- 0850 0900- 0950 1000- 1050 1100- 1150	Combat Training	Combat Firing	Rifle training Combat drill Close combat Antitank close combat Demonstration	Combat Training	Combat Firing	Instruction Rifle training Combat drill Close combat Antitank close combat
1200- 1500	Lunch Period					
1500- 1550 1600- 1650	Command Exercises	Rifle training Combat drill Close combat Antitank close combat	Instruction		Rifle training Combat drill Close combat Antitank close combat Instruction	Instruction Cleaning weapons
1700- 1750	Lecture	Instruction	Physical Training	Weapons Drill	Lecture	Inspections, roll calls
1800- 1840	Cleaning weapons				Cleaning weapons	
					Night training	

Appendix 3

Planned Demonstrations

9th training day: Combat patrol action, capture of a bunker

Direction: one engineer battalion officer or one infantry engineer platoon leader

Troops: engineer battalion or infantry engineer platoon

15th training day: Attack with assault guns (company problem) including description of guns, function, and use

Direction: Director of Training and one officer of the assault gun battalion

Troops: one company of the field replacement battalion

21st training day: Movement through gassed terrain during combat reconnaissance

Direction: Director of Training

Troops: Squads from the field replacement battalion

Appendix 4

Planned Lectures

In this appendix the titles and order of appearance of various lectures, and the names of the officers designated to deliver them, are given.

Example

10. Division chemical warfare officer (21st training day)

Technique of chemical warfare duties of the NCO

Appendix 5

Close-Combat Training
by the Demonstration Method

1st Demonstration

(a) Close Combat: Rapid fire against suddenly appearing targets, hip firing, and bayonet thrusts while surmounting small obstacles

(b) Hand-to-hand fighting: bayonet training, daggerthrust, spade blow

2d Demonstration - Hand grenade throwing

(a) With practice hand grenades
Throwing hand grenades while on the run, with and without rifle
Throwing hand grenades from the prone position, with and without rifle
Throwing hand grenades from covered position and from a trench
Throwing hand grenades on the range
Action against hand grenades
Hand grenade duel: two infantrymen against each other in shell-hole terrain

(b) With live hand grenades
Hand grenade target throwing from shell holes against targets in rough terrain.

The soldier reaches cover in front of a ruined building after negotiating a wall, then fires at targets appearing in the window.

The potato masher and egg grenades are used in target throwing into windows.

3d Demonstration - Close combat course

Movement through a piece of terrain by the single soldier.
Practice of - rapid firing, hip firing with bayonet thrust, surmounting obstacles, liquidation of an opponent by bayonet thrust, use of various holds, climbing a steep grade.

4th Demonstration

Squad mopping up an enemy trench after surmounting obstacles (tank traps, wire obstacles), defense and counterattack.

5th Demonstration - capturing an enemy position

Troops: 1 rifle squad, 1 machine gun, 1 machine pistol, telescope-sight rifle, self-loading rifle, rifle grenade launcher, 1 medium mortar, 1 heavy machine gun.

Purpose of 5th Demonstration practice problem

The squad in the attack after surmounting terrain obstacles, advancing in shelled terrain under friendly fire support; approach of enemy position behind wooden fence, throwing hand grenades, assault of the squad, an advance through ruined building, throwing hand grenades and throwing a smoke grenade into the yard.

Taking a ruined building under smoke screen, displacement forward of mortar, rifle grenade and machine gun fire for defense against enemy counterattack.

Appendix 6

Antitank Close Combat

Demonstrations	1st Training Day	2d Training Day	3d Training Day	4th Training Day	5th Training Day	6th Training Day
1	Instruction Close combat and antitank close combat, tank demolition materials, tank demolition squad	Fuses, demolition charges, arming charges, mines, equipment, Molotov cocktails, frangible glass, smoke grenades	Repetition fuses and demolition charges, arming charges, mines, fuses	Jumping onto a moving tank	Placement of charges	Tank traps Cooperation with antitank guns
2	Fuses and charges, demolition equipment, preparing concentrated charges	Hasty mine field	Jumping onto a stationary tank, placing charges	Placing charges on a moving tank	Throwing molotov cocktails and smoke grenades, stealthy approach	Placing concentrated charges
3	Tank recognition with models	Stealthy approach of tanks, throwing molotov cocktails and smoke grenades	Stealthy approach of a stationary tank, laying smoke screen, jumping onto a tank through smoke screen and placing the charges	Throwing mines	Placing teller mines on the ground; in the open, and camouflaged	Tank instruction
4	Description of vulnerable points of enemy tanks	Aiming exercises at tank vision slits	Throwing mines from cover	Tank rolling over foxhole, jumping up behind tank, stealthy approach	Tank obstacles, mines, and concentrated charges	Competition of tank demolition squads

Appendix 7

Directives for Organization

Organization of a demonstration type training system

1. The demonstration stations (platforms, trenches, barracks, etc., depending on the type of demonstration) must be located close to each other but without interfering.

2. The demonstration chief must be especially suited for the instruction presented at his demonstration.

3. The demonstrations must be equipped with all training aids and items of equipment necessary for effective demonstration.

4. Extent, contents, and methods of training depend on the number of students.

5. The work within demonstrations starts immediately upon arrival of the students. No reports, no formations, but continuous training.

6. The program must be adapted to the time available. The demonstration chief (NCO or officer) is responsible for concise organization of subject matter in each period.

7. The students are sent to the next demonstration by each demonstration chief at the end of the instruction period.

8. At the end of the training period the students dismantle the demonstration according to the instructions of the demonstration chief.

9. Each demonstration chief must have a watch. Watches are synchronized at the beginning of the training period.

Preparations and Course of Demonstration Training

1. Calculation: number of students, equipment available, time schedule, apportioning of subjects to demonstrations.

2. Terrain reconnaissance: determining location of the training area for the individual demonstrations according to the work covered in them, working out tactically correct troop and enemy situations, determining methods of training.

3. Organization and equipment: assignment of instructors to demonstrations, equipment with weapons, equipment, targets, ammunition, training aids; erection of demonstration, including targets, calculation of time and help needed.

4. First conference with instruction personnel: orientation on demonstrations, training area, purposes of training; issuing equipment and ordering it; tactical situations planned for the various stations.

5. During the training day

a. Second conference with instruction personnel (two hours prior to start of training period): the director walks to the various demonstrations to familiarize the demonstration chiefs with the location of their demonstrations and those to which they subsequently send their students. The tactical situation and purpose of training are reiterated.

b. Arrival and distribution of equipment (one hour before start of training period): one NCO and two to four men to each demonstration squad. The demonstration chiefs receive and sign for equipment.

c. Erection of stations by demonstration chiefs: targets, weapons, equipment. The demonstration chief now has some additional time at his disposal to write down and formulate his training plan.

d. Start of training: 10 minutes beforehand, all demonstration chiefs are assembled at the demonstration and any additional questions are answered; arrival of students; division of student body at the demonstrations; the demonstration chiefs lead their men to the demonstrations and instruction begins immediately.

e. Changing demonstrations: The demonstration chiefs send their students to the next demonstration at the end of each demonstration.

f. End of training: The training course is ended by an order or signal (whistle, horn) from the director in charge. The demonstration chiefs supervise their squads then at the demonstration in dismantling, loading, or carrying home of all equipment.

Appendix 16

This is a complete translation of a directive from the Commander in Chief of the Army to the Commander in Chief East and the Commanders of Army Groups A, B, and C. In it he directs the setting up of company and battery commanders' schools and stipulates the over-all principles for the mission.

Headquarters, Army High Command (OKH)
22 December 1939

Commander in Chief of the Army,
Training Branch of the Army General Staff (Ib)

Nr. 999/39 g

Subject: Training of company and battery (British, troop) commanders

In order to train a sufficient reserve of company and battery commanders, I direct the following:

1. The training of company and battery commanders will take place: for the infantry and the artillery, in the Field Army within the army groups and the zone of command of the Commander in Chief East; for the other arms and services, in the various service schools of the zone of the interior according to paragraph 6.

2. The army groups and the Commander in Chief East will establish training schools in their respective zones of command with two-week courses for company and battery commanders. These schools will be set up in posts, camps, or stations with suitable training areas. The artillery schools must be located within or in the immediate vicinity of an Army training camp.

For that purpose the following assignments to locations are made:
Army Group A to Army training camp Wildflecken
Army Group B to Army training camp Wahn
Army Group C to Army training camp Münsingen.
Army Group A can make direct arrangements with
Army Group C for the installations of its schools in the zone of the latter.
Instructors and demonstration troops will be drawn from units of the army groups and the Commander in Chief East.

Replacements will not be available for such detached officers, NCOs and enlisted men.

3. The object of the training to be given will be the familiarization of the officers concerned with the command education and training of their respective units. Special emphasis should be placed on combat training, and, in the case of the artillery, precision firing. Questions of supply, administration (clothing and finance), maintenance of discipline (use of disciplinary authority), and welfare should also be stressed in the course of the instruction.

4. The stragth of the various courses will be decided upon by the army groups and the Commander in Chief East according to the number of units under them. The object of these courses should be the training, during 1940, of commanders for all existing companies and batteries. The students for these

courses should be selected from officers who, by seniority, and on the strength of their records, will soon be given or have only recently taken over the command of a unit. The Replacement Army will share the service schools of the Commander in Chief East. Twenty-five percent of the strength of each course will be kept open for students from the Replacement Army.

The detailing of these students from the Replacement Army will be effected by the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army in agreement with the Commander in Chief East. The first course will begin during the second half of January 1940.

5. The army groups and the Commander in Chief East will report the following to the Training Branch of the Army General Staff by 1 February 1940:

(a) Locations of the service schools
(b) Date of commencement of first course
(c) Planned syllabi of the courses

6. Training of company commanders according to paragraph 1 will be carried out as follows:

(a) For engineer units, in three-week courses at the engineer school at Dessau-Rosslau.
Commencement of first course: 29 January 1940
Students: 30
Details will be settled by the Chief of Engineers on the staff of the Commander in Chief of the Army in agreement with the Training Branch of the Army General Staff and the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army.

(b) For signal units, in two-week courses at the Army Signal School at Halle.
Commencement of first course: 29 January 1940
Students: 50
Details will be settled by the Chief Signal Officer in agreement with the Training Branch of the Army General Staff and the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army.

(c) For supply services, in two-week courses at the Transportation School at Hannover.
Commencement of first course: 15 February 1940
Students: 30
Details will be settled by the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army in agreement with the Training Branch of the Army General Staff and the Chief Supply and Administration Officer (Chief of Supply Services). Fifteen percent of the strength of the courses mentioned above will be kept open for students from the Replacement Army. The detailing of these students will be effected by the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army in agreement with the various authorities responsible for the conduct of the different courses.

7. Directives concerning the training of company and battery commanders of mobile troops will be issued as soon as the date of availability of demonstration troops can be foreseen. Until such time, potential company and battery commanders will continue training within their units according to the directions of the commanders of the service command.

von Brauchitsch

Appendix 16a

Appendix 16a is a further directive, issued by the Commander of Army Group B to his subordinate commanders, relaying the orders contained in the directive from the Commander in Chief of the Army (see appendix 16). A summary of the directive is attached.

The order repeats the purpose of these courses, stressing the training in cooperation with all weapons to insure success of actions. It also deals with the organization and procedure of these courses. The creation of a staff of the training school and the attachment of one infantry battalion, one infantry gun company, one antitank company, and one light battery (horse-drawn) to the school, is ordered.

Instructors and assistant instructors are allotted, and the numbers of students and courses are fixed. The courses will take place at Army training area Walen, and the first one will begin 29 January 1940.

Courses will continue regardless of the tactical situation, except in cases of emergencies when they will be limited.

Fourth Army Headquarters will report organization, number, kind, and time of the courses scheduled up to 1 April 1940. Training schedules, timetables, and names of instructors and their particular employment will also be reported.

Appendix 17

Appendix 17 is a summary of a report from the commander of a company commanders' school to Army Group B. The report contains information about the first three courses held and experiences gained in conducting the school. The summary is attached.

Synopsis of Report by Lt Col Greiner, Commander of the School for Company Commanders (at Senne), on Courses I-III
(January - April 1940)

The establishment of the company commanders' school was necessary for the following reasons:

(a) Peacetime training of Reserve officers had been inadequate

(b) Officers commissioned from the ranks had to adjust themselves to a new mode of living; young operational officers required further training.

Organization

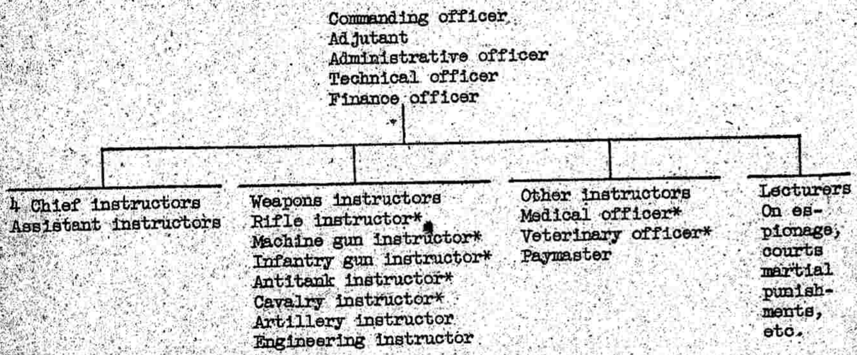
(a) Main stress was laid on combined training

(b) Practical training in the field and training under combat conditions were emphasized

(c) Courses of three weeks' duration were considered sufficient.

A school for company commanders usually required the following personnel:

Headquarters Staff of the Company Commanders' School



Demonstration troops

It was found that demonstration troops derived great benefit from taking part in courses at the school for company commanders. The troops were kept constantly active, thus eliminating the danger of a slackening in discipline, as well as

---

* Drawn from the demonstration troops

providing further training for the troops.

Relief of instructors

It proved desirable to relieve instructional personnel after three months to avoid staleness.

Supplementing instructors

Only the most highly qualified instructors could be employed at the school. Suitable students could be retained to supplement the staff of weapons instructors. Chief instructors had to be senior captains or staff officers preferably with experience as tactics instructors at officer candidate schools. It was also desirable that they should have spent some time at the front during the present war.

Training of instructors

All instructional personnel had to attend a six-day course before the beginning of the first course and a two to three-day course during the intervals between the other courses. This enabled them to become fully-acquainted with the training schedule and to express their opinions about the course freely.

Intervals between courses

A break of eight days between courses was considered advisable to allow for the instructors' referred to in paragraph 6 and to enable personnel to rest. Special leave was also granted to instructors after two or three courses.

Instruction

The main stress was laid on subjects the company commander would need to know in the field. Combat technique, attack training, and unit duties were emphasized. Such exercises as the rapid crossing of consecutive streams, etc., were also included. Lectures on military history, given by experienced veterans, proved to be of considerable value. Manuals briefly summarizing the various subjects to be dealt with were found to be most useful. These manuals were often printed by the schools themselves.

Number of students

It was found by experience that the maximum number of students per course should be 150. Figures showed that less than a fifth of the students detailed had attained the rank of captain. The greater proportion of students was drawn from the rifle and artillery companies and the number of Regular officers was approximately twice the number of the Reserve officers.

It was found that 27 percent of the students had never been in combat. Furthermore, 30 percent were over 20 years old, 35 percent over 30, and the rest over 40. Experience proved that officers over the age of 35 were no longer suitable for employment with the infantry or engineer companies and, accordingly, should not be sent on these courses.

Value of the school

The experiences gained from training and exercises under warlike conditions proved to be of great value. To make the fullest use of these experiences, visits to the school by officers from the front and the Army High Command, and quarterly reports by the commander of the school, were suggested.

Appendix 18

Notes 25/4
OKH/Gen.St.d.H.
Gen.d.Inf.
11 Nr. 970/43

Guidance for the Training and Employment of Snipers

(15 May 1943)

This pamphlet is intended as a help in the training of snipers. It combines instructions on the use of telescopic rifles (OKH/Gen.St.d.H./Gen.d.Inf. 11 Nr. 375/42, 8 September 1942), with Notes on the Carbine 98k-zf. 41, of 26 April 1941. These two pamphlets are therefore out of date. This 44-page pamphlet, complete with illustrations, contains the following information:

Necessity for and duties of snipers

Training of snipers

Employment of snipers

Care and handling of telescopic sights and rifles

Appendixes

- Examples for the employment of snipers
- Firing practice in the Replacement Army
- Firing practice in the Field Army
- Aiming off table
- Description of the telescopic sight 41
- Handling of the telescopic sight

Appendix 19

Entwurf der
H.Dv. 240/2
10 Dec 44

Manuscript of Army Training Manual 240/2 (10 December 1944)

This manual is still in manuscript form complete with photographic illustrations. It is one of the latest publications of its kind, covering all phases of training in the handling and firing of pistols, rifles, and light and heavy machine guns. It contains the following sections:

Firing instructions for rifle training in individual firing practice

Training course

Phase 1	Aiming instruction
Phase 2	Aiming at enemy targets
Phase 3	Instruction in adopting the ready position
Phase 4	Adopting the ready position in the prone position (with and without support)
Phase 5	Adopting the ready position in the kneeling, sitting, and standing positions under various conditions
Phase 6	Snap shooting and firing from the hip

Firing instructions for MP44

General
Training course

Phase 1	Aiming instructions
Phase 2	Aiming at enemy targets
Phase 3	Instructions in adopting the ready position
Phase 4	Adopting the ready position in the prone position (with and without support)
Phase 5	Adopting the ready position kneeling, sitting, and standing
Phase 6	Adopting the ready position for close combat fighting

Firing instructions for LMG

Training course

Phase 1	Aiming practice
Phase 2	Adopting the ready position prone and standing, trigger pressure, single fire
Phase 3	Firing in bursts, firing specific number of rounds in bursts
Phase 4	Most common types of firing positions, snap shooting, surprise fire
Phase 5	All types of firing positions
Phase 6	Going into fire positions, fire allotment, fire problems of the LMG

Firing instructions for pistols

Phase 1	Adopting position
Phase 2	Trigger pressure
Phase 3	Aiming practice and perfection, fire allotment

Instructional firing

General

- Instructional firing of rifle and MP44
- Instructional firing of LMG

Small calibre rifle firing

Firing in twilight and darkness

Regulations for firing with live amminition

General

- Forming of firing groups
- Supervision of fire
- Firing regulations
- Firing with rifle, MP44, LMG, and pistol
- Firing records, zeroing weapons, ammunition, targets
- Firing with MP44
- Firing with LMG
- Firing with pistol
  - Firing records for rifle, MP44, LMG, pistol (all forms of records for reporting progress of firing)
  - Zeroing
  - Ammunition
    - (a) Amount allotted
    - (b) Ammount intended for use
    - (c) Collection of empty cartridges

Combat fighting

- Combat firing for squads
- Combat firing for platoons and upwards
- Preparations
- Actual firing
- Discussions and critical comments concerning firing
- Setting up targets
- Safety precautions

Appendixes

- Methods for reconstruction of firing ranges
- Methods for construction of a field firing range
- Trenches for spotters of mobile targets
- Firing lists
- Initial records
- Summary of firing records
- Firing signals
- Indicators (spotting discs) for small calibre firing
- Summary of types of targets
- Targets for rifle, MP44, LMG, pistol

Supplement

- Firing practice for rifle, MP44, LMG, and pistol

Appendix 20

Plan for Short-Term Training (six weeks) of Recalled, Deferred Personnel in a Rifle Company

First Week

Subject	Remarks
National Socialist guidance lecture	
The soldiers of the Führer (the duties of the German soldier)	
Combat training	
Use of terrain by study from high features and from under cover; movement over terrain under enemy observation (walking, running, crawling, and stalking)	To be carried out on different types of terrain; a group, training in the use of terrain and camouflage can be used as an 'enemy' for groups carrying out visual training and judging distance
Camouflage against ground and air observation	
Visual training combined with fire orders and judging distance	
Use of entrenching tools in all physical positions under pressure of time construction and camouflage of positions, slit trenches, and LMG positions	One small exercise to be conducted; after that it can be included and practised in other combat training.
Extended order drill, together with changing direction by signal	
Close combat training	
Aiming and throwing grenades from various physical positions	Film Training on a competitive basis (on the barrack square and in the field)
Weapons training	
(a) Lecture Cleaning and handling of rifle; cleaning and handling, also naming and function of the main parts of the LMG	A one-hour lecture, otherwise practical instruction on cleaning No memorization of unnecessary parts, weights, etc., but rather an illustration of the functions of the various parts

Subject	Remarks
(b) Outdoor Training	
Rifle; loading and unloading, LMG; disassembly and assembling, LMG; loading and unloading	Also to be practiced while cleaning weapons
Firing training	
(a) Lecture	
Theory of firing	
Explanation of targets, spotting and indicating	
(b) Firing practice	
Rifle zeroing by individual soldiers; detailing firing groups, according to their performance for range firing; aiming practice, using rifle rests up to 120 meters;	
Holding, trigger pressing, and firing with blank cartridges	Carried out also in the field
Practice corrections by use of spotting disc	
Aiming practice with and without use of improvised rests	
Practice firing of No 1 range practice for rifle	
Holding practice for LMG with use of bipod	
Aiming LMG	
Practice firing of No 1 LMG	
Range practice	
Drill	
Standing to attention with rifle	Arms drill to be conducted only during first week of training. After that it can be practiced while falling in and falling out for formations. Rank insignia are to be studied very briefly.
Slinging rifles	
Studying rank insignia	

Subject	Remarks
General lectures	
Garrison regulations for enemy air attacks	Only the most essential points to be practiced
Duties during air attacks	
NCO Training	
Duties of NCOs during and after duty hours	By means of lectures or use of sand table
Study of contents of next week's plans and study of training pamphlets	

Second Week

National Socialist guidance lecture
"The German Race"

Subject	Remarks
Combat Training	
(a) Lecture	It is important, during all types of combat training, to instruct the individual repeatedly on actual combat conditions (fire and movement, surprise fire-spotting)
Duties of orderlies, observers, and advance scouts	
Message writing, sketch drawing	
March conduct together with antiaircraft defense	
Duties of the individual towards maintaining security on the march and at rest	These subjects can also be taught on a sand table
Duties of the individual in combat under special situations (woods and village fighting, river crossing)	
(b) Field training	To be practiced competitively in ideal and adverse terrain. Always seek to surprise the enemy
Going into position and opening fire with rifle and LMG	
Working forward from position to position, thereby looking for and using alternative positions	
Duties of orderlies, observers, and advance scouts together with visual training, verbal fire orders, judging distance, and passing verbal messages	

Subject	Remarks
Camouflage against observation from the ground and air	
Reconnaissance patrol in various types of terrain (also in woods and villages)	
Duties of individuals in field positions (in slit trenches, MG positions, etc.)	
Fifteen kilometer march in full marching order combined with target indication, orders, reports; open order march against air attacks; antiaircraft and antitank defense; also short marches wearing respirator	
Close combat training	
Use of side arms, spades, and rifle butts in close combat (offensive and defensive)	
Night training	
Conduct in darkness and in light from flares	
Orientation by night (practice in listening and observing; judging distance by sound and sight)	
Use of clothing and equipment for moving silently	
Chemical warfare	
Practical handling of respirators, and improvising methods of decontaminating areas	A short talk on description and effects of various gases is to be included
Antitank warfare	
Practical tank demonstration (construction, visual restriction, etc.)	Film Training to be carried out in the form of sport
Individual training in stalking tanks, attacking and throwing explosives	
Weapons training	
(a) Lecture	
Description of the action taking place in the loading, unloading, and firing of the LMG	

Subject	Remarks
Description and use of the main parts of the LMG	
Organization and equipment of a rifle company (including short talk on the characteristics and uses of the heavy infantry gun)	
(b) Field training	
Barrel and bolt changing (LMG), disassembly of the bolt and belt; changing extractors, opening and closing the cover and cocking slide	To be carried out in a competitive drill
Proving and preparing the LMG for firing, (also in severe cold, snow, and rain)	
Firing Training	
(a) Lecture	
Safety measures for firing LMG	To be given on the firing range
Conduct during range firing	
Influence of light and atmosphere on firing	
(b) Firing practice	
Adopting a lying firing position with rifle (with and without rest; also with respirator)	Aiming to be practiced whenever weapons are in position during combat training
Aiming LMG at field targets	
Adopting firing positions with LMG while on the move	
Practice firing of No 2 range practice with rifle and LMG	
Firing	
No 1 Rifle practice	Good shots fire both No 1 and No 2 practices. Bad shots must fire No 2 practice on a special day.
No 2 Rifle practice	
No 1 LMG practice	
No 2 LMG practice	

Subject	Remarks
General lecture	
Conduct of soldiers off duty	Also to be practiced out of doors
Personal hygiene (including protection against cold, wet, and snow)	
Third Week	
National Socialist guidance lecture "The Works of the Führer" (German Socialism)	
Combat training	
(a) Lecture	
The individual in the attack and in battle	With aid of sand table
Organizing an assault troop	
Preparing and carrying out an assault assignment (also the duties of the individual during the assault)	Film
(b) Field training	
The individual of a strong fighting patrol, attacking a village or a reinforced strong point	
A 25-kilometer march combined with march and rest security	
Close combat training	
Practice throwing hand grenades into bushy terrain or in woods	
Hand grenade aiming practice; throwing from shell holes, trenches, windows and open doors	
Exchange use of rifle and hand grenade, also hand grenade duels	
Snap shooting	The main emphasis lies in the snap shooting
Firing from the hip combined with bayonet thrusts	
Firing LMG on the move	
Night training	

Subject	Remarks
Going into position, and firing rifle and LMG in darkness and in twilight	
Scout and patrol duties	Combined with the 20-kilometer march
Chemical Warfare	
Gas chamber tests	
Use of respirator and capes in combat	
Instructions in the use of gas clothing	
Defensive measures	
Antitank warfare	
Handling of antitank weapons and material	
Commitment and types of combat of antitank fighters	
Technical Engineer Training	
Instructions in building dug outs, slit trenches, communication trenches, and dummy positions	These instructions will follow the training films, Engineer Duties in Winter and Winter Bivouacs
Constructing wire obstacles	
Weapons Training	
(a) Lecture	
Causes and clearing of stoppages in the LMG	Every gunner must know (a) that 90 percent of all stoppages are due to improper cleaning and handling of the LMG and belt (b) which stoppages can be remedied in action
Individual lectures	
Handling and use of rifle grenade equipment, including ammunition	
Handling and use of automatic weapons, including description and use of main parts	

Subject	Remarks
Handling and use of submachine guns, including use in combat and description and use of main parts	
Handling and use of pistols, including description and use of main parts	
(b) Field training	
Immediate action for LMG stoppages (recognition and remedy of stoppages)	The field training must follow immediately after the lectures
Handling the rifle grenade discharger, automatic weapons, submachine guns, and pistols	During training and firing, all stoppages will be indicated and remedies explained by the gunner
Firing Training	
(a) Lecture	
Principles of antiaircraft defense with rifle and LMG	
(b) Firing	
Adopting the fire positions, kneeling and standing, with and without artificial rests, from trenches, holes, etc.	
Practicing the standing fire positions for snap shots (aiming at figure targets at 80-meters, 4-seconds per shot)	
LMG aiming practice at moving targets	
Adopting the fire position with LMG (also for antiaircraft fire)	
Individual practice of range firing with LMG	
Range Firing	
No 3 Rifle practice	
No 3 LMG practice	
No 1 Combat firing practice with rifle and LMG	
General lecture	
Maintaining military security	

Subject	Remarks
Disciplinary punishments and appeal regulations	
NCO training	
(a) Lecture	
Troop welfare during and off duty	
(b) Combat training	To be practiced on a sand table and in the field
Duties as commander of a scout squad	
Duties as commander of an assault detachment	
Fourth Week	
National Socialist guidance lecture "Causes of the Present War" (the fight against Bolshevism and plutocracy)	
Combat training	
(a) Lecture	
Principles for the section in the attack	
Principles for the section in defense	
(b) Field training	Enemy and umpires to be provided
Section training; preparations for and attacking, supported by small arms and artillery fire	
Section training; infiltrating, fighting in enemy territory, occupying and holding a newly won position	
Night Training	
Twenty-five kilometer night march with full marching order, practicing all arms, occupying a position during first light, practicing antiaircraft and antitank defense on return march	
Antitank warfare	
Instruction in antitank warfare with live ammunition	

Subject	Remarks
Technical engineer training	
(a) Lecture	Principles only
German mines and igniters	
Plan of a mine field	
Plan of various types of mine fields	
(b) Field training	To be conducted on the mine range
Recognition and marking own and enemy mine fields; locating and determining gases	
Weapons training	
Handling and throwing hand grenades, smoke grenades and smoke candles	Practical training
Placing of high explosives	
Firing training	
Practice in adopting the firing position against moving and disappearing targets	Field practice
Practice in adopting various forms of firing positions with submachine guns and pistols	
Range and combat firing	
Special practice in snap shooting, fire shots at a figure target, two seconds per shot	
No 2 combat firing practice with rifle and LMG, partly at night and in twilight	
One practice with submachine gun and pistol	On order of the company commander
General lecture	
Special points on the march and in combat in winter	
NCO training	
Principles for section commanders in the attack; initial penetration, occupying and holding an enemy position	To be practiced on the sand table and in the field

Subject	Remarks
Principles for section commanders in occupying a built-up position, in defending this position against enemy attack, in isolating and counter-attacking an enemy penetration	
Fifth Week	
National Socialist guidance lecture "Enemy Propaganda and Defense Against it"	
Combat Training	
(a) Lecture	
Defense against enemy attack (from field and built-up positions)	
Isolating an enemy attack and counter-attacking on a section level	
(b) Field training	Trained soldiers to be used as enemy
Defense against enemy attacks (from field and built-up positions), isolating an enemy attack and counterattacking on a section level	
Close combat training	
Close combat on a section level	All previous lessons to be combined and applied
Night training	
Stalking and surprising enemy posts and gun positions	
Duties while in a position	
Defense against enemy reconnaissance patrols	
Antitank warfare	
Remaining in slit trenches while enemy tanks cross over	
Combating enemy tank attacks	
Also mounted or following infantry	

Subject	Remarks
Technical engineer training	
Demolition of buildings (including training of certain soldiers and demonstrating of all soldiers the art of mine demolition)	
Use of mine locating instruments	
Removing camouflage to determine type and method of mine laying	
Formulating messages regarding known mine fields	
Firing training	
Preparatory practice of No 1 combat firing practice for the section (the best LMG gunner will be used for effect firing)	
Combat firing	
Section combat firing	Preceded by a short talk on range conduct and safety measures for combat firing and hand grenade throwing
Throwing live hand grenades	
NCO Training	
Mine warfare	
The NCO as section leader	
Sixth Week	
This week will be devoted to improving the training and recapitulation of certain subjects. The weekly training plans will be formulated by the company commander after discussing with the battalion commander the progress of the training.	
To be included	

Subject	Remarks
A20-kilometer march combined with occupying a built-up defensive position, including reconnaissance patrols, security during the march and at rest, removing obstacles of all descriptions including mines, and defense against tanks and aircraft with infantry weapons. While in the position, the following will be practiced; sentry duty, care of weapons, building new positions (improving, strengthening, camouflaging, draining), static warfare, assault and reconnaissance patrols, defense against enemy tanks.	This combined subject will be carried out over a minimum period of 48 hours. The instructors are to be employed as umpires. Potential NCOs are to be employed as section and group commanders.

Appendix 21

To explain further the stress laid on National Socialist indoctrination within the German Army, this appendix contains translated copies of three directives pertaining to that subject. The first one, given out by the Chief of Training in the Replacement Army, depicts the method in which the indoctrination is to be carried out and lists the subject material to be used in the various stages of training. The other two copies are directives issued by the Commanding General of the XII Service Command and pertain to the original directive issued by the Chief of Training.

A

Chief of Army Equipment and
Commander of the Replacement Army

Berlin, 15 May 1944

Chief of Training in the Replacement Army

Staff/Ia No 3300/44

Subject: National Socialist guidance

1. According to the words of the Führer, it is the spirit of the man, the soldier, the fighter which is decisive for the successful outcome of the war. Only the people who are able to throw into the fight the strongest will, the most gallant faith, and the most fanatical determination, can win the final victory.

The soldier must not only be a bearer of arms, but also the representative of his people's political condition.

2. It is the task of the replacement army to train each soldier to know thoroughly National Socialist ideology (*Weltanschauung*), so that he goes into combat not only as a perfect fighter but also as a convinced National Socialist.

Moreover, National Socialist guidance and education must not merely remain a matter of specially scheduled periods; it must also become the endeavor of all officers to indoctrinate their men with National Socialist ideology at every feasible occasion, so that the entire service routine is filled with National Socialist spirit (*Weltanschauung*).

3. Three hours weekly are to be allotted for orientation instruction, including discussion of political questions of the day. Of these, two hours are to be applied to regular ideological (*weltanschaulich*) instruction (see paragraph 7), and one hour for discussion of current political problems. If, however, commanders feel that the two hours weekly for regular instruction in some units are not sufficient to achieve the goal, up to five hours weekly (discussion of political questions of the day included) are to be allotted.

4. Battalion commanders must make use of every opportunity to deepen the indoctrination of their officers in National Socialist ideas and to ascertain that they possess a uniform concept of them. Furthermore, commanders must instruct their officers twice monthly in subjects of National Socialist leadership (see paragraph 7).

5. The National Socialist guidance officers advise their commanders, and by order of the latter, also company commanders, on all questions of National Socialist education. Commanders may direct that, in particular cases, instruction for units may be conducted by the National Socialist guidance officers themselves.

6. By order of the Führer, the booklet *What are We Fighting For?* was published by the Army Personnel Office. In addition to material available through other sources, this book contains the ideological basis for the various subjects taught. Its purpose is to increase ideological indoctrination of the officer, thus enabling him to further the ideological education of his men.

7. The following subjects are to be considered as subject groups. The aim of instruction should not be knowledge transmitted in a scholastic manner, but the understanding of the cases of National Socialist ideology and the rousing of the power resulting from this understanding for the soldier.

Subjects taught

(a) During basic training
Soldiers of the Führer (duties of the German soldier)
The idea of nationality in German history
The Führer and his work
The Führer's achievements since 1933 (German Socialism)
The race, growth of the nation, health, and heredity
The Jewish problem, freemasonry, and their significance for the German people
The purpose of this war (fight against Bolshevism and plutocracy; what if we should lose the war!)

(b) During advanced training
The German peasant as a source of nutrition (*Ernährungsquelle*) and source of new blood and strength (*Blutquelle*) for the people
The solidarity of the people at work (*Schaffende*)
The common destiny of the European peoples
Repetition of the subject groups mentioned under (a).

(c) During training in cadre units, trained replacement units, and convalescent units
Great Germans up to Adolf Hitler, and their efforts for the Reich Consciousness of family, clan, and race in the Führer's socialist Reich
Mission and achievement of the German people in the East during the past and the present
Repetition of the subject groups of basic and advanced training

(d) During basic training of home defense units and refresher training of deferred soldiers. Instruction in subject groups mentioned under (a) in fewer lessons.

(e) In courses lasting longer than five days, instruction in National Socialist guidance should be carried out with regard to the length of the course, and the number and type of the students. If possible, lectures by officers and leading personalities of Government and Party should be provided.

8. Directives issued by the Inspector General for Potential Officers and NCOs are the standard for the ideological education (*weltanschauliche Schulung*).

9. All commanders have to insure themselves that instruction will be carried out in a practical fashion. Upon completion of training, they will inspect their units.

B

Commanding General
XII Service Command

Wiesbaden, 13 June 1944

Subject: National Socialist guidance

Reference: Staff/Ia No. 3300/44 15 May 1944

The decisive significance of National Socialist guidance toward a successful conclusion of the war requires an ever-increasing indoctrination of the military service with National Socialist ideas and principles. This fact should be considered in the preparation of schedules for all units. Commanders are fully responsible for the political and ideological education of the men under their command. They will see to it that instruction of this subject will be stressed even more than before, and will not be considered as mere routine garrison duty.

To paragraph 3 of the order:

Daily discussion of military and political events (not longer than 10 minutes) by the unit commander is essential for the systematic guidance of the men. The new periods (National Socialist guidance) will have to be contained in the syllabus. Commanders will insure themselves that the three hours scheduled weekly are sufficient to reach the goal. Otherwise, Commanders are authorized to schedule up to five hours weekly. It remains a fact that ideological (weltanschauliche) education and guidance are as important as military training.

To paragraph 4 of the order:

National Socialist education of the officer corps by the commanders is one of the most important points of the National Socialist guidance program.

The entire noncommissioned officer corps must be educated and trained the same way twice a month by commanders, National Socialist guidance officers, and unit leaders. It is the duty of the first sergeant to influence continually the NCOs ideologically and politically.

To paragraph 5 of the order:

It is expected that commanders and unit leaders devote themselves with the greatest zeal to the task of National Socialist guidance and to use the full influence of their personalities for indoctrinating their men.

C

Commanding General
XII Service Command

Wiesbaden, 1 June 1944

Subject: Course for National Socialist guidance officers

The directives governing National Socialist indoctrination, issued by division commanders and garrison commanders (one lesson weekly), have fulfilled their purpose, namely, to give the National Socialist indoctrination work its start.

Further conduct of this work is henceforth the responsibility of line officers. If feasible, it is up to the commander's discretion to conduct lessons for several battalions together in the same garrison.

Garrison commanders will see to it that National Socialist guidance officers, assigned to headquarters and administrative posts located in the close proximity of a battalion, will participate in lectures given to this battalion.

The monthly announcement of the lessons will be omitted. The purpose of these lessons is to enable each officer, in accordance with the demand of the Führer, to educate, train, and lead his men politically and ideologically.

Appendix 22

Summary of Courses held by Order of the Army High Command during The First Half of 1945

Arms and Services	Description of Courses	Duration in weeks	Participants
Infantry.............	Regiment commanders	7	Majs and Lt Cols
Artillery............	Regiment commanders	6	Majs and Lt Cols
Engineers............	Regiment commanders	6	Majs and Lt Cols
Signal Corps.........	Regiment commanders	3	Majs and Lt Cols
CWS Troops...........	Regiment commanders	3	Majs and Lt Cols
Infantry.............	Inf and arty bn Commanders	5	Lts and Capts
Mountain Infantry....	Ordnance engineering and mechanics	4	Lts and Capts
Cavalry and Cyclists.	Ordnance engineering and mechanics	4	Lts and Capts
Artillery............	Ordnance engineering and mechanics	4	Lts and Capts
Engineers............	Ordnance engineering and mechanics	4	Lts and Capts
Signal Corps.........	Ordnance engineering and mechanics	4	Lts and Capts
CWS Troops...........	Ordnance engineering and mechanics	4	Lts and Capts
Infantry.............	Company commanders for heavy weapons companies	4	1st and 2d Lts
Infantry.............	Course for laying and aiming (NCOs), forward observation posts, fire control men of heavy weapon companies	5	Acting Cpls, Cpls, and Sgts
Infantry.............	Course for chief section (Artillery) Leaders and company mortar section Leaders of heavy weapons companies	4	Acting Cpls, Cpls
Infantry.............	Course for heavy MG section leaders Heavy weapons companies	4	Acting Cpls, Cpls
Infantry.............	Company commanders of rifle companies	4	1st and 2d Lts
Infantry.............	Platoon leaders - rifle companies	4	Sgts, Cpls, Lts
Infantry.............	Instruction personnel for division combat schools	4	Cpls, Sgts
Infantry.............	Motor transport section leaders	4	Cpls, Sgts
Infantry.............	Course for instructors on new light antitank weapons	1	Capts, Lts, Sgts, Cpls
Mountain Troops......	Course for company commanders, platoon leaders, and gun leaders on heavy infantry weapons in the mountains	5	Capts, Lts, Sgts
Mountain Troops......	Course for pack animal troop leaders and stable sergeants	8	Cpls, Sgts
Mountain Troops......	Course of army mountain guides	8	Offs, Enlisted Men
Mountain Troops......	Course for training ski instructors	2	Offs, Enlisted Men
Mountain Troops......	Course of training for ski equipment storage men	2	Cpls, Enlisted Men
Cavalry..............	Course for squadron leaders, including Combat school course	8	Capts, Lts
Cavalry..............	Course for signal section and troop leaders	5	Sgts, Cpls
Cavalry..............	Course for antiaircraft company commanders, including technical course on motor transport	5	Capts, Lts

Arms and Services	Description of Courses	Duration in weeks	Participants
Cavalry............	Signal troop leaders	6	Sgts, Cpls
Cavalry............	Course for soldiers of the Field Army who desire to become professional NCOs	8	NCOs, Acting Cpls
Artillery..........	Course for officers to act as commanders assistants and as instructors at schools	12	Majs, Capts, Lts
Artillery..........	Course for officers to act as commanders of signal units of artillery on staffs of the artillery commander	6	Lts
Artillery..........	Battery commander	4	Capts, Lts
Artillery..........	Artillery battalion adjutant	4	Lts
Artillery..........	Forward observation officer	4	Lts
Artillery..........	Artillery range finding officer	4	Lts
Artillery..........	Battery officer	4	Capts, Sgts
Mountain Artillery...	Training of arty for mountain warfare	4	Capts, Lts, Sgts
Mountain Artillery...	Artillery range finding officers of mountain artillery	4	Lts
Mountain Artillery...	Mountain battery commanders	4	Capts, Lts
Mountain Artillery...	Signal officers of mountain artillery	4	Lts, Sgts
Mountain Artillery...	Course for NCOs of mountain artillery	4	NCOs
Fortress Artillery...	Course for fortress artillery	4	Officers
Fortress Artillery...	Course for fortress artillery	4	NCOs
Railway Artillery....	Artillery battalion and battery commanders	3	Majs, Capts, Lts
Railway Artillery....	Battery officers	4	Lts
Railway Artillery....	Track construction commanders	2	Sgts, Cpls
Railway Artillery....	Electrician NCOs	1	Sgts, Cpls
Railway Artillery....	Gun commanders	3	Sgts, Cpls
Railway Artillery....	Range finders	3	Enlisted Men
Assault Artillery....	Battery commanders	4	Capts, Lts
Assault Artillery....	Adjutants, special missions, staff officers	3	Lts
	Platoon leaders	3	Lts, Sgts
Counter Artillery Sec	Artillery battalion commanders	4	Majs, Capts
	Battery commanders	3	Capts, Lts
Counter Artillery Sec	Battery commanders sound ranging	3	Capts, Lts
Counter Artillery Sec	Battery commanders flash ranging	3	Capts, Lts
Counter Artillery Sec	Adjutants, special missions, staff officers	3	Lts
Counter Artillery Sec	Officers of motor transport service (sound ranging)	4	Capts, Lts
Counter Artillery Sec	Survey officer of light observation battalion (motor) and of light observation battalion (partly motorized)	3	Lts
Counter Artillery Sec	Commanders of reinforced meteorological sections	8	Lts, Sgts

Arms and Services	Description of Courses	Duration in weeks	Participants
Counter Artillery Sec	Compiling officers (sound ranging)	3	Lts, Sgts
Counter Artillery Sec	Compiling officers (flash ranging)	3	Lts, Sgts
Counter Artillery Sec	Balloon section leaders	2	Lts, Sgts
Counter Artillery Sec	Commanders of close reconnaissance sections	2	Lts
Counter Artillery Sec	T/Sgts (radio) for sound ranging	4	NCOs
Counter Artillery Sec	Survey and flash ranging team leaders	2	NCOs
Counter Artillery Sec	Balloon pilots	3	NCOs
Counter Artillery Sec	Reenlisted men	12	NCOs and Enlisted Men
Specialist Careers of the Artillery...	Officers of motor transport service	4	Lts
Specialist Careers of the Artillery...	Maintenance technical sergeants	4	NCOs
Specialist Careers of the Artillery...	Shop foremen	4	NCOs
Specialist Careers of the Artillery...	Ordnance sergeants	3	NCOs
Specialist Careers of the Artillery...	Chiefs of ammunition	3	NCOs
Specialist Careers of the Artillery...	Tank - howitzer - radio technicians	6	NCOs
Specialist Careers of the Artillery...	Tank - howitzer - radio operators	5	NCOs
Engineers............	Company commanders	4	Capts, Lts
Engineers............	Adjutants	4	Lts
Engineers............	NCOs	9	NCOs and Enlisted Men
Engineers............	Platoon leaders for heavy bridge equipment and construction of emergency bridges	4	NCOs
Engineers............	NCOs for heavy military bridge equipment	8	NCOs and Enlisted Men
Engineers............	Maintenance sergeants	9	NCOs

Appendix 23

H Dv 26
M Dv Nr 143
L Dv 26

Guiding Principles for the Psychological Examination Boards of the Armed Forces and for the Psychological Laboratory of the Ministry of War
(12 August 1936)

This Regulation 26 specifies the duties, organization, and place in the chain of command of psychological examination boards of the Army, Navy, and Air Force. It does not contain samples of tests.

According to section C of this Regulation, tests were given both before and after entering the service. Before a test could be given, the normal medical examination must have been taken by the future soldier. In case of Air Force (flying) personnel, an Air Force medical examination had to be passed.

Special tests were given to potential signal personnel and to officer candidates. In case of transfers from one branch of service to another, specialist branch tests had to be taken additionally.

In addition to the general test given to all men entering the service, the examination boards fulfilled the following functions:

Testing of participants in Reserve officer and officer selection courses

Acting as instruction agencies for various units of the armed forces and the military district commands

Testing and examination of able but difficult soldiers

Examination of men and NCOs who are to be discharged because of unfitness

Advising in court-martial cases

Compulsory examination of suicide cases

Collecting and disseminating emotional psychological data on soldiers to the highest boards for use in Army procedure.

Appendix 24

Notes on Appendixes

The following terminology for officer candidates was introduced in 1943, and was uniformly in use during wartime.

Candidates for Active Commissions
(Aktiver Offizier-Nachwuchs)

Potential Officer Candidate (Offizierbewerber)

Officer Candidate (Fahnenjunker)

Senior Officer Candidate (Oberfähnrich)

Candidates for Reserve Commissions
(Reserve Offizier-Nachwuchs)

Potential Reserve Officer Candidate (Reserveoffizierbewerber; in 1942 and 1943, also known as Kriegsoffizierbewerber)

Reserve Officer Candidate (Fahnenjunker der Reserve, until 1939, also known as Offiziersanwärter, and from 1939 on as Reserveoffiziersanwärter)

Senior Reserve Officer Candidate (Oberfähnrich der Reserve)

The grade of senior officer candidate was dropped as of 1 September 1939. It was revived on 1 July 1943, and, from then on, also applied to Reserve officer candidates. Another grade of the officer candidate series, Fähnrich, which had been dropped at the beginning of the war, was not revived.

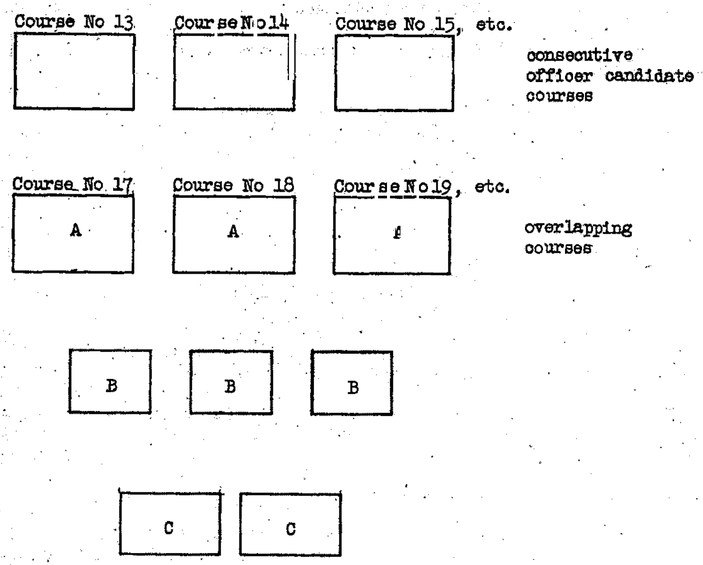
The grade of Fahnenjunker in peacetime is equivalent to the wartime grade of Offizierbewerber.

From 1939 until June 1943, the later Reserve Officer Training Program was known as Wartime Officer Training Program and covered the training of wartime officers (former career NCOs) as well as Reserve officers.

In March 1942, the term Potential War Officer Candidate (Kriegsoffizierbewerber) was introduced. At the beginning of 1943, this was changed to Potential Reserve Officer Candidate (Reserve Offizierbewerber), and a term for Reserve Officer Candidate (Fahnenjunker der Reserve) was substituted for the one used until then (Reserve Offiziersanwärter).

The courses were numbered consecutively; nos one to 14 (middle of 1943), were called Officer Candidate Courses (Offiziersanwärter Lehrgänge), and thereafter, in accordance with the change of terminology mentioned in paragraph 5, were known as Fahnenjunker Lehrgänge. Beginning with course No 16 (May 1944), the infantry, cavalry, and Panzer troop courses which, until then, had followed one another in close succession, were supplemented and augmented by overlapping courses (A, B, and C Courses). No change was made in the courses of the other arms or services.

Example


Course No 13
Course No 14
Course No 15, etc.
consecutive officer candidate courses
Course No 17
Course No 18
Course No 19, etc.
A
A
A
overlapping courses
B
B
B
C
C

There was an intermediate infantry course every month and a half, an artillery and a Panzer troop course every two months. All other branches of the service had courses every three or four months.

Appendix 25

Regular Army Officer Candidates Career in Peacetime

Promotions	Time	Training
Lance Corporal	6 months (with a unit)	Basic training
Corporal	6 months (with a unit)	Advanced training (as a section commander)
Office Candidate (Fähnrich)	5 months Officer Candidate School	Training as a platoon commander Tactics with a reinforced infantry battalion Army administration, coordination of arms Officer candidate examination
Senior Officer Candidate (Oberfähnrich)	4 months	Officer examination
	2 months (Arm or Service School)	Training as platoon commander of his arm or service and as a recruit training officer
2d Lt	1-2 months	Unit platoon commander

Appendix 26

Career of Reserve Officer Candidates for Line Officer in Peacetime

The candidate had to undergo his regular two-year compulsory service the same as all other soldiers. When selected as potential Regular officer candidate, he continued his normal training and following his discharge from the Regular Army was promoted to lance corporal or corporal of the Reserve Army. The following program lists the periods in which the candidate served to receive his promotion to lieutenant. These periods of training were carried out over a period of several years.

Promotion to	Time	Training
	Draft by district recruiting headquarters as a lance corporal or corporal in the reserve (officer candidates)	
Corporal (Unteroffizier) in the reserve	Four weeks with the unit (1st reserve training period)	Training and duty as a squad leader (B Section)
	Discharge Redrafting as sergeant (officer candidate) by recruiting district headquarters	
Sergeant (Feldwebel) in the reserve	Six weeks with the unit (2nd reserve training period)	Training as a platoon leader
	Discharge Redrafting as a sergeant (officer candidate) by recruiting district headquarters	
	Four weeks with the unit (3rd reserve training period)	Duty as a platoon leader, and officer candidate training
Recommended to Chief of the Army Personnel Office for promotion to officer	Discharge	

Appendix 27

Inspector General
for Potential Officers and
NCOs of the Army

Berlin, 12 December 1944

To: All Directors of Regular and Reserve Officer Canidate Training Schools

Until the publication of Directives for the Indoctrination and Training of Officer Candidates in the Replacement Army, I order the following:

Purpose of the school is as follows:

(a) Indoctrination to produce politically fanatic combat soldiers
(b) Training to result in combat leaders of infantry squads, artillery sections, etc. Indoctrination and training go hand in hand under the guidance of National Socialist principles.

Main effort for National Socialist guidance is as follows:

(a) National Socialist thinking in every phase of service, so that the spirit and actions of the service will portray our political philosophy
(b) Resolute belief in the basic National Socialist concepts - victory, loyalty, and willingness to die for the Führer
(c) Efficiency and conduct toward the men as an embodiment of these precepts

Main effort in indoctrination is as follows:

(a) National Socialist leaders to be an example to the men in efficiency and character
(b) Indoctrination in the honor and tradition of the National Socialist officer
(c) Increasing the fighting spirit

Main effort in military training is as follows:

(a) Complete familiarity with all weapons used in a squad and proper employment thereof
(b) Commanding squads in combat
(c) Personal leadership of a squad
(d) Tactical procedures in the attack and the defense

Concept of service is as follows:

The decisive factor of success is not the length of service, but the concept as a result of thorough groundwork.

Relaxation periods increase alertness and willingness to learn. They are always necessary after periods of strain. I expect commanding officers of officer candidate schools and their officer training staffs to comply with these directives in training and indoctrinating officer replacements entrusted to them.

v. Hellermann

The Chief of Army Equipment
and Commander of the Replacement Army
Az.34b GIF US/OB
No. 1800/44

Berlin, 15 May 44

Directives for the Training and Education of Officer Candidates in the Replacement Army

(30th Replacement Training Cycle applicable to Reserve officer candidate training for the same period)

(extracted)

General

1. Three training periods (total 10 months)

First training period (4 months), basic training
Second training period (4 months), training as squad leader, gun section leader, etc.
Third training period (2 months), practical experience as squad leader or gun section leader

2. Training aims

Eventual assignment of officer candidates as squad leaders with field units; the creation of a basis of experience upon which later training of officer candidate courses can be based; limitation of the squad to tactical operations - employment within the tactical limitations.

The importance of infantry training for officer candidates from all branches has been shown by the Russian campaign. Every officer candidate must be able to defend himself and counterattack with dismounted gun crews, etc. Military and political indoctrination of the officer candidate is of the highest importance.

3. Experiences gained in the Russian campaign have caused many modifications in the training program. Pamphlets dealing with such subjects as winter training in the Replacement Army are available.

4. Selection of the training staff

The choice of suitable officer candidate supervisors (Fähnrichväter)* is very important.

They are attached to the Replacement Army for the entire course, including the courses held at the NCO schools during the second and third training periods.

The entire training staff must have had combat experience and have fought on the eastern front. There will be no changes in the staff during the entire training period.

---

*Experienced officers assigned to supervise personally, and look after the welfare of a specified group of candidates.

Monthly lectures on leadership are to be given by the commanders of the school or training units.

Education and Training

First period of training

1. The officer candidates take part in the basic training of the recruits of their respective age groups. Officer candidates and recruits share the same quarters and the same training in order to acquaint the potential officers with the psychology of their recruits.

2. Driving instruction with the armored forces and motorized troops will start early in the training. Drivers' permits are to be earned. Technical training in repair and maintenance is given simultaneously, but no motorized training for officer candidates belonging to nonmotorized units is necessary. Steering motor boats for engineer officer candidates, and subsequent examinations will be conducted before the end of the second training period.

Riding school for the cavalry - care of horses will be stressed.

National Socialist indoctrination classes are held by the company commander and special classes, by the officer candidate supervisors.

Subjects: Military courtesy (two lessons)
Military correspondence (two lessons)
Great German heroes (two lessons)

5. Guard duty (sentry duty twice, interior guard duty once). Working details are necessary for training procedure. The same applies to stable service, washing of vehicles, guard in railroad stations, etc., and dinner in the officers' mess hall twice a week.

Second period of training

Training as squad and gun squad leaders

1. Emphasis is placed on the educational training of officer candidates for actual front-line duty. Special technical courses will be given at the Army NCO schools, service schools, and training units.

2. Combat practice - independent action, endurance under critical conditions, issuing precise orders; winter warfare - practical and theoretical training; one night problem each week; use of spade and entrenching tools; defensive procedures for aircraft and gas alarm.

Training problems of several days - at least two problems both in defense and attack (bivouac); instruction in village and wood fighting; clearing and neutralizing mines; combat patrol and close combat; fighting enemy tanks in teams; tanks will be driven over men taking cover in foxholes - this proved necessary by the experiences gained in the Russian campaign. The use of deception is emphasized; establishing of field positions and makeshift quarters for men; handling of horses and vehicles according to the experiences gained during the Russian campaign and winter warfare - this training will be conducted at night and in bad weather (bivouac). Combat problems will be demonstrated on the sand table twice a week. Cooperation of all branches of service; the officer candidates take part in training maneuvers and mock fire exchange with other units; self confidence as a leader; voice and command training on every occasion.

3. Rifle training: the officer candidate is to become an instructor himself; mock fire fight; attack and defense problems are to be emphasized.
   (a) less than 400 meters
   (b) assault and close combat
   (c) combat in woods
   (d) village fighting
   (e) firing at night wearing gas masks

4. Further driver training (armored forces, motorized forces) - driver's permit for combat vehicles at the conclusion of the third period of training; intensification of maintenance training.

5. All officer candidates (with the exception of armored and motorized forces) will be trained with horses (grooming, feeding, watering, saddling, etc.)

6. Care of weapons, ammunition, clothing, supply equipment, etc. - 10 lessons during the second and third training period.

7. Physical training: technique of attack and defense in close combat without weapons; boxing, long-distance creeping, jumping out of foxholes, jumping into pits, overcoming obstacles (also tanks), preparation for antitank close combat; swimming instruction.

8. Subjects for National Socialist indoctrination classes will be given by the company commander and the officer candidate supervisor (Fähnrichväter).

   Special classes taught by Army instructors in order to further the professional education. Five lessons a week are given: German (2), military history (2), military geography (1). Artillery mathematics for artillery officer candidates may be given instead of one lesson of German and one lesson of military history.

9. Guard duty (deputy of commander of the guard twice) occasional dinner with the officer candidate supervisor at the officers' mess hall, and other officer activities.

Third period of training

Employment as squad leaders or gun commanders

1. Intensification of acquired knowledge, cooperation of the various branches of arms in combat, training as gun squad leaders the infantryman will get acquainted with heavy infantry weapons and their use; increasing endurance, and assistance by means of training maneuvers every fortnight.

2. National Socialist indoctrination and military classes

   Military subjects: life in combat, combat tactics of the enemy.

Supervision of Education and Training

During the first period, the responsibility rests with the regiment or battalion commanders of the training units, and then with the directors of the officer candidate courses. At the conclusion of each phase, the commanders review the status of training (military training and political indoctrination).

Reserve Officer Candidate Training

The above directives apply also to Reserve officer candidates. They start with the second period courses. Their commander is a front-line officer with a superior record, who has graduated from an officer candidate supervisor course. He is responsible for not more than 35 candidates. Reserve officer candidates of the infantry basically trained with heavy infantry weapons will also do so during the third period. The candidates will dine at the officers' mess hall twice a week.

Efficiency Reports, Appointments, Promotions, and Eliminations

At the conclusion of the first period of training, soldiers qualified for a Reserve officer's commission are appointed Reserve officer candidates; the report is sent to corps headquarters. All officer candidates and Reserve officer candidates will wear a special badge. Efficiency reports will be sent to the officer in charge of his respective course.

Officer candidates and Reserve officer candidates are promoted to private first class (Gefreiter) during the second period; to officer candidates, at the conclusion of the third period. Grades are given as follows: "especially capable," "suitable," "not yet suitable," "unfit" as gun squad leaders. "Very fit," and "fit" officer candidates and Reserve officer candidates will be promoted to sergeant. Those "not yet fit" are promoted to private first class (Gefreiter). "Unfit" candidates are dismissed.

Appendix 28

Stages of Training for Potential Regular Line Officers in Wartime (1939 to March 1942)

Promotions	Station	Time	Program	Notes
Private First Class (Gefreiter)	Replacement Army	Three months with troops First training period	Basic Training	Accepted as potential officer candidate in the Replacement Army
		Three months with troops Second training period	NCO training	
Corporal, Officer candidate	Field Army	Two months front trial	Trial as squad leader (inf, art, etc.)	A two-month trial with the troops in the field was required.

Upon returning to the Replacement Army, prior to entering the officer candidates school, the candidate, as a rule, had to wait approximately two to three months because of paper clearance, awaiting the opening of the new class and admittance to it. (This is not considered part of the program).

Promotions	Station	Time	Program	Notes
Advanced officer candidate	Replacement Army	Three to four months at officer candidate school	Training as platoon leader and preparing for officer appointment	Before appointment to officer corps, a total of 15 months was required.

A total service time of 18 to 20 months was normally required before the potential Regular Army officer candidate received his appointment to lieutenant. Traveling to and from the front, furloughs, hospitalization, overstaying time allotted for the front trial, and awaiting admittance to the schools increased the time above the normal requirement of 15 months.

Appendix 29

Stages of Training for Potential Regular Line Officers in Wartime (March 1942 to March 1945)

Promotions	Station	Appointment as Potential Officer Candidate		Development and Training
	Replacement Army	Four months[1] (First training period)		Basic training in training unit
Automatic promotion to lance corporal after total service of six months		Four months (Second training period)	at an NCO school	Training as squad leader (inf, arty, etc.)
Promotion of the outstanding students to corporal, but all students at least to lance corporal by the end of the course		Two months (Third training period)		Practical experience as squad leader
Promotion to officer candidate sergeant around middle of course	Field Army	If possible two months[2], at the most three months of front trial		Front trial as NCO[3]
Promotion to senior officer candidate	Replacement Army	Officer candidate course lasting three or four months		Training as platoon leader of respective branch
		Senior officer candidate course lasting three months		Instruction as company commander or adjutant, intensified training as platoon leader
Commissioned as 2d Lieutenant				

Remarks

1. This four-month basic training period was instituted on 1 April 1943. Previous to that date, basic training took only three months.
2. It was ordered that, beginning 21 November 1943, individuals could be detailed to officer candidate courses before having undergone the two-month front trial.
3. After 21 November 1943, practical experience as NCO in the Field Army was no longer required. The only prerequisite in that respect was an indication of leadership qualities.

Appendix 30

Stages of Training for Potential Reserve Line Officers in Wartime
(1939 to March 1942)

Promotions	Station	Time	Program	Remarks
	Replacement Army	Three months with the troops	Basic training	He is not considered a potential officer candidate while serving in the Replacement Army
Lance Corporal	Field Army	Three months front trial	Trial as squad leader (Inf, art, etc.)	Selection as officer candidate took place in and by the Field Army
Officer candidate	Upon returning to the Replacement Army, prior to entering the officer candidate school, the candidate, as a rule, had to wait approximately two to three months because of paper clearance, awaiting the opening of the new class, and admittance to it. (This is not considered part of the training.)			
Advanced officer candidate	Replacement Army	Three to four months at officer candidate school	Training as platoon leader and preparing for officer appointment	Before appointment to officer corps a total service time of 15 months was required

During the years 1939 to 1942, normally only officer candidates with service as peacetime Reserve officer candidates were sent to the Reserve officer candidate courses.

A total service of two to three years was normally required before the Regular officer candidate received his appointment to lieutenant. Traveling to and from the front, furloughs, hospitalization, overstaying time allotted for the front trial, (generally more than Regular Army officer candidates), and awaiting admittance to the schools increased the time above the normal requirement of 15 months.

Note: The above program illustrates the procedure for potential officer candidates under 30 years of age. Reserve officer candidates over 30 years of age did not normally take part.

Appendix 31

STAGES OF TRAINING FOR POTENTIAL RESERVE LINE OFFICERS IN WARTIME
(MARCH 1942 TO MARCH 1945)

Promotions	Station	Assignment to a Unit as:		Development of Training
		a) Potential Reserve Field Officer	b) Recruit	
Appointment as potential Reserve officer candidate at the end of basic training Automatic promotion to private first class (Gefreiter) after total service of six months	Replacement Army	Four[1] months of basic training (first training period)	Selection of personnel made during four months of basic training (1st training period)	Basic training in training unit.
Promotion of outstanding students to corporal, but all students to lance corporal, at least by end of third training period. Appointment as Reserve officer candidate.		Four months (second training period)		Training as squad leader (inf, arty, etc) in special courses given in the training unit[2]
		Two months (third training period)		Practical experience as squad leader in the training unit[2]
	Field Army	If possible two, at the most three months of front trial		front trial as NCO[3]
Promotion to advanced Reserve officer candidate (Fahnenjunker Feldwebel der Reserve) and senior Reserve officer candidate (Oberfähnrich der Reserve)	When member of a field unit	If less than 30 years old Underwent officer candidate course lasting three or four months Three months senior officer candidate course in the service command Commissioning as Reserve second lieutenant by the Army Personnel Office	If more than 30 years old Was commissioned in the field	Promotion to advanced Reserve officer candidate Promotion to senior Reserve officer candidate Recommended for commissioning as Reserve second lieutenant

Remarks

1. This four-month basic training period was instituted in April 1943. Previous to that date, basic training took only three months.
2. Under special circumstances, this could also be achieved at an Army NCO School.
3. After 21 November 1943, the only prerequisite in that respect was an indication of leadership qualities.

Appendix 32

Survey of Officer Candidate Courses at Service Schools (1939 to 1941)

Unit	Courses	Service School	Station
Infantry Infantry (motorized) Mountain troops Machine gun battalion (motorized)	Rifle company Heavy machine guns Infantry howitzers Antitank guns	Infantry school	Doeberitz-Elsgrund
Antiaircraft units	Antiaircraft weapons	Antiaircraft defense school	Doeberitz-Elsgrund
Artillery Observation and surveying units Assault artillery	Artillery Observation Assault artillery	Artillery school	Jueterbog
Engineers	Engineers	School of engineers (2)	Dessau Rosslau
Railway engineers	Railway engineers	School for railway engineers	Rehagen-Klausfeld
Signal troops (not signal troop units)	Radio Telephone	Signal school	Leipzig
Cavalry Cavalry regiment Bicycle units Reconnaissance units (mounted and partly motorized) including motorized units	Cavalry or cyclists		
Reconnaissance units (motorized) Armored reconnaissance units Motorcycle battalion of armored divisions Motorcycle battalion of infantry division (motorized)	Reconnaissance units (motorized) Motorcycle riflemen	Cavalry School	Krampnitz near Potsdam
Armored regiment Rifle regiment Tank destroyer battalion	Tanks Riflemen (motorized) Tank destroyers	Armored school	Wuensdorf
Transportation troops Motor Transport Troops	Transportation troops Motor transport troops	Transportation school	Hannover
Chemical warfare troops	Chemical warfare troops	Chemical warfare school	Celle

Appendix 33

Survey of Officer Candidate Schools and Officer Candidate Courses at Service Schools (1942 to 1945)

Infantry

Infantry, riflemen (in light motorized infantry division), mountain infantry, machine gun battalion (motorized), mortar battalion, mounted infantry (cyclists)
Officer candidate schools and officer candidate courses

(a)	School for infantry officer candidates	I Dresden
(b)	School for infantry officer candidates	II Wiener-Neustadt
(c)	School for infantry officer candidates	III Potsdam
(d)	School for infantry officer candidates	IV Thorn (formerly Ohrdruf)
(e)	School for infantry officer candidates	V Posen
(f)	School for infantry officer candidates	VI Beverloo (Belgium), later Metz, later Meseritz, finally Schwerin
(g)	School for infantry officer candidates	VII Milowitz (near Prague)
(h)	School for infantry officer candidates	VIII Hannover (later Wetzlar)
(i)	School for infantry officer candidates	IX Hagenau (finally Randers, Denmark)
(k)	School for infantry officer candidates	X Neuenburg (Protectorate)
(l)	School for infantry officer candidates	XXI Reichenau (Protectorate)
(m)	Officer candidate course at the infantry school	Doberitz
(n)	Officer candidate course	Bruenn
(o)	Officer candidate course at the reconnaissance and cavalry school	Bromberg, later Naestved (Denmark)

Senior officer candidate courses at the following schools

(a) Winter warfare school, Henberg, for riflemen in light motorized infantry division
(b) Mountain infantry school, Mittenwald
(c) Alpine school, Fulpmes, Tirol.

Artillery

(horse-drawn and motorized artillery, observation and survey units, assault artillery, railway artillery, antiaircraft artillery)

School for artillery officer candidates, Suippes (France) later Thorn, then Gross-Born, finally Kammwald near Pilsen

Officer candidate course at the artillery school, Jueterbog

Senior Officer Candidate Courses also at

(a) Mountain artillery school Dachstein for mountain artillery

(b) Assault gun school Magdeburg for assault artillery

(c) Antiaircraft artillery school of the Air Force Rerik for antiaircraft artillery

Armored force

(Tanks, armored infantry (also motorized infantry) antitank battalion, reconnaissance battalion (motorized), armored reconnaissance)

Officer candidate schools

(a)	Armored force OCS 1	Wuensdorf, later Wischau	for tanks, armored inf, and members of antitank units
(b)	Armored force OCS 2	Zossen, then Ohrdruf, later Gross-Glienicke	for tanks, and armored infantry
(c)	Armored force OCS 3	Krampnitz, later Koenigsbrueck	for armored infantry and armored reconnaissance
(d)	Armored force OCS 4	Wischau	for armored infantry and members of antitank units
(e)	Armored force OCS 5	Bamberg	for armored infantry

Senior officer candidate schools

(a) Senior officer candidate school 1 of Armored Force, Krampnitz
(b) Senior officer candidate school 2 of Armored Force, Wischau

Engineers

(Horse-drawn and motorized engineers, armored mountain engineers, and railway engineers)

(a) Officer candidate course at the engineer school 1, Dessau-Rosslau

(b) Officer candidate course at the engineer school 2, Speyer

(c) Railway engineer school Rehagen-Klausdorf

Signal corps

(Horse-drawn and motorized signal corps except for members of signal troop units)

Officer candidate course at the Army signal school Halle in Leipzig

Supply troops

(Horse-drawn and motorized supply troops)

Antiaircraft units

(Antiaircraft units, except for GHQ antiaircraft artillery)

Officer candidate course at the Army antiaircraft defense school

first Doeberitz, then
Stettin-Altdamm,
finally Greifswald

Chemical warfare

Officer candidate course at the chemical warfare school Celle

Technical troops

Officer candidate course at the school for technical troops

Pirna/Saxony

Motor transport corps

Officer candidate course at the motor transport school

Stuttgart/Vaihingen, finally
Erfurt

Appendix 34

Railway Engineer School
Commander, Officer Candidate Courses
Eisenbahnpionierschule
Kdr. der O.A.-Lehrgänge
Bd.Nr. 428/41.

Rehagen-Klausdorf
31 October 1941

To: The Inspectorate of Training and Education

Subject First appreciation for deferment from 8th class of officer candidates

Since the impression gathered at the beginning of the 8th officer candidate course, namely, that the candidates selected were just as good as those of previous courses, proved incorrect, a revision of candidate selection has become necessary.

The candidates at this 8th course show rather a further decline in their average ability and quality as compared with the 7th officer candidate course; a greater number of candidates are expected not to attain the ultimate aim of training.

Concerning this first application for deferment from the 8th course of officer candidates, it may be sufficient, for the time being, to make the following remarks:

The school education of the candidates leaves much to be desired; many of the attendants are unable to follow lessons, even when held in the simplest and most unconventional form. The railway engineer school certainly does not include studies of a highly scientific nature, as this would not be in keeping with the general aims and purposes of the school, and it goes without saying that it would never be possible to cope, in a term lasting three to four months, with highly scientific matters which, ordinarily, at universities, are extended over a period of just as many years. Nevertheless, the future railway engineer officer must be expected to possess a technical sense of feeling and be capable, even without any detailed technical knowledge, to work out rough calculations and projects with the aid of technical tables or other similar auxiliary means. To be able to do this, high school knowledge should be a necessary prerequisite.

At the 8th course for officer candidates, the following lack of knowledge was obvious:

(a) One attendant was not capable of bisecting a given angle: it may be added that he had only public (elementary) school education

(b) One attendant had no notion what a right angle was; previous education six terms at a higher technical institute

(c) One attendant could not give the formula for figuring the area of a circle, when the diameter is given; previous education - high school graduate

(d) Many had difficulty in extracting the square root of a given full number or decimal number; in the multiplication or division of decimal fractions, wrong results and faulty placing of the decimal point were not unusual; the solution $\frac{1}{4} - 1/8 = ?$ offered some difficulty to some attendants

(e) Likewise the calculation of the value of x from the equation $\frac{20}{4} = \frac{100}{x}$; for instance, $a^3 : a = a$, was unknown to many

(f) 60 percent of the attendants are not acquainted with the functions of angles (that is, sine, cosine, and tangent) which must be known in all problems of surveying and in all simple calculations required by railway engineers, and in the use of technical tables.

Quite a number of attendants are very bad in German orthography. Punctuation marks are either not placed at all, or are placed in a manner so confusing that to speak of a logical sentence structure is not possible; the article das (the, neuter article) and the conjunction dass (that, indefinite pronoun) are very often misplaced as are the dative and the accusative cases. The letter h, which is sometimes silent, is invariably omitted.

The word fuhr (drove) has been spelled wrongly three times by the same student.

From here on, the writer continues to list a series of spelling mistakes on names of well-known people, places, and things.

As far as military knowledge is concerned, the candidates should be expected to possess the knowledge required of an NCO. In this respect, many inefficiencies have been noticed, which must be improved by reeducation. At the present 8th course for officer candidates, it appeared for the first time that two NCOs were assigned to attend without any previous basic training. One, an engineer by profession (Diplomingenieur), the other a specialized technician (Techniker) who had been inducted into the armed forces and assigned as specialists with no basic training at all. Up to the present, no attempt had been made to make up for this lack of training.

It is recommended that a bulletin be issued, in which it is established that soldiers without basic training, and soldiers who have only had elementary school education, must not be assigned to courses for officer candidates.

If the military education is to begin at the recruit stage, and the scientific education at the elementary arithmetic stage, then the reeducation program will predominate over the originally intended use of courses and instructional personnel. The results under these circumstances could only be negative. The main effort is wasted in trying to eliminate the unsuitable, whereas the training of those suitable will fall short. Seen from the point of view of the course members, however, it must be stated that such soldiers toil uselessly, hold up others, and have no prospects of attaining the aims of the course, with the result that they usually quit prematurely, burdened with an inferiority complex. Had they never been assigned to an officer candidate course, they would have become or would have remained excellent NCOs.

Signed Wess
Lt Col and Officer
Candidate Course Commander

Appendix 35

(Staff/ Railway Engineer Regiment 7)
Dept. IIa. No. 1348/41 secret

13 December 1941

Subject: Potential officers for wartime commission

To: All headquarters and units

The attached extracts of a publication from the railway engineer school gives a shocking picture of the irresponsible selection of applicants for officer careers. The commander of the railway engineer troops expresses his opinion in the above order, in which he places the full blame for this superficial selection on the responsible company commanders. The fact that participants without any basic training were assigned to an officer candidate course makes any comment unnecessary.

Conceded that a part of the blame falls upon the replacement battalion (basic training), no blame, however, can be spared the responsible company commander. The commander of the railway engineers, regiment 7, has repeatedly established that the knowledge of officer candidates in no way comes up to the standards required. Only a few company commanders make an exception; the members of these companies assigned to the officer candidate schools are often far above the other candidates, and upon successfully completing the course, draw special mention.

The winter period now gives every company commander the opportunity and possibility of being more thorough in the selection of potential officers. Unqualified applicants are to be reported to the commander of the railway engineers, regiment 7, with a detailed explanation. The qualified soldiers, however, are to be posted in the company in positions to aid their advancement.

A continual interchange of assignment in the company as squad leaders, temporary attachments in the platoon and company headquarters, special training in engineer machines, etc., give the young soldiers with insufficient training in the replacement battalion the possibility of a complete training. A short, but rigid basic training schedule under the supervision of a qualified officer is never a disadvantage.

Reference is made to manual 82/3b, which deals in detail with the education of potential officers. The following points are to be observed:

(a) Soldiers without sufficient military training are not to be assigned to officer candidate selection and advanced courses.

(b) Soldiers without any special schooling are to be selected only in special cases. The railway engineers are a technical arm of service and demand comprehensive professional training, liberal education, logical thinking, and a feeling for technical subjects. If a soldier with an elementary education is to lead his troops in the field, only the National Socialist principle of "extraordinary achievement" is decisive.

(c) Professional NCOs are to be carefully selected. Besides the railway technical knowledge gathered during their long service, character, personality, qualities of leadership, and a general knowledge obtained by private study are to be considered.

(d) Older soldiers are to be selected only when their technical knowledge has particular value for the unit. Long service (World War I) and age alone do not qualify the applicant to become an officer. Soldiers over 35 years, therefore, are to be selected only in special cases.

I hope that every company commander feels the full responsibility for the high task of training and educating the soldiers qualified to become officers. The officer corps, as a leading class of the Greater German Reich, must not be spoiled even through the special circumstances brought about by the war. Its inferior achievements have a bad effect upon the fighting power of the German Armed Forces and, in a particular manner, on the railway engineer units.

signed Maraczi

Appendix 36

Stages of Training of Reserve Medical Officers (Graduated Physicians and Students of Medicine) 1939 to 1942

Program	Minimum Time in Months Required for Training and Promotions					
	Physicians Graduated before 1 August 1939			Graduated during the War		
	Year born			Year born		Students of Medicine
	1907 and earlier	1908 to 1913	1914 to 1915	1915 and earlier	1915 to 1918	
	months	months	months	months	months	months
	a) Training					
Basic training in repl. units (07 and earlier in Home defense repl. units)	1	2	2	2	2	3
Training in field units	-	-	2	2	2	6
Training in the medical corps of the Field Army	2	2	2	2	2	-
Advanced training in the medical corps, then duty in the medical corps of the Field Army	-	-	-	-	-	*
	Total length of service (in months) required for promotions					
Promotion to Private First Class (Sanitäts-Gefreiter)	4	4	6	6	6	6
Corporal	5	5	7	7	9	9
Appointment as officer candidate	5	5	7	7	9	**
Officer candidate Sergeant (Sanitätsfeldwebel)	6	6	8	8	12	12
Senior officer candidate (Unterarzt)	7	7	9	9	13	13 x
Reserve medical second lieutenant (Assistenzarzt der Reserve)	10	10	12	14	24	xx

* Off-duty continuation and eventual termination of studies according to current regulations

** Promotion after end of advanced training in the medical corps

x At the earliest, promotion will be given after passing the final examination in medicine

xx At the earliest, promotion will be given after three months of probation as Reserve senior officer candidate

Appendix 37

Stages of Training of Reserve Veterinary Officers, Graduated Veterinarians, and Students of Veterinary Medicine

Program	Minimum Time Required for Training and Promotions			Students of veterinary medicine
	Year of Birth			
	1907 and earlier	1908 to 1913	1914 and later	
		(a) Training		
Weapons training in Replacement Army	1 month	2 months	2 months	3 months With a mounted or horse-drawn replacement unit (not a veterinary replacement unit)
	with a Veterinary Replacement Unit			
Basic military duty in the Field Army	----------------	----------------	at least 2 months	6 months With a mounted or horse-drawn field unit
Assignment to veterinary service in the Field or Replacement Army	After 1 month of weapons training	After 2 months of weapons training	After 2 months of weapons training, and at least 2 months of basic military duty in the Field Army	After 9 months of basic military duty, they will be transferred to a veterinary unit of the Field Army
Advanced military and specialized training	As a rule, several more weeks of military and specialized advanced training must be undergone as a NCO with a veterinary replacement unit, as well as advanced training courses with instructional and experimental units of the Veterinary Corps, or else active veterinary service in the Field Army.			----------------------
Continuation of studies	----------------	----------------	----------------	Remarks
	Promotions after total length of service in months			
Promotion to Private First Class (Gefreiter)	4	4	6	6
Corporal (Unteroffizier)	5	5	7	9
Appointment to Officer candidate	After 3 months of service in the Field Army of which 2 months were spent on field duty as NCO or in a T/O position of veterinary officer			At the earliest after 1 month of duty in a veterinary unit
Advanced officer candidate (Wachtmeister)	6	6	8	12
Senior Officer Candidate (Unterveterinär)	7	7	9	13 (at the earliest, after final passing of veterinary examinations)
Reserve veterinary officer	10	10	12	At the earliest, after a 3-month front trial period as senior officer candidate

---

Appendix 38

Stages of Training for Reserve Specialist Engineer Officers, Graduate Engineers, and Students of German Postgraduate Technical Schools (Specialization in Machine Construction, Electrical Engineering, Construction Engineering, and Surveying)

Program	Minimum Time Required for Training and Promotions			
	Graduate Engineers Year born			Students
	1907 and earlier	1908 to 1913	1914 and later	
	(a) Training (in months)			
Weapon training in replacement units (07 and earlier in home defense replacement units)	1	2	2	3
Basic military duty in field units			2	6
Specialized technical assignment in the Field Army after total length of service	1	2	4	9
Continuation of studies	-	-	-	(See 1)
	(b) Total length of service (in months) required for promotions			
Promotion to Private First Class (Gefreiter)	4	4	6	6
Corporal (Unteroffizier)	5	5	7	9
Officer candidate	5	5	7	(See 2)
Advanced officer candidate (Fahnenjunker Feldwebel)	6	6	8	12
Senior officer candidate (Feldingenieur)	7	7	9	(See 3) 13
Reserve specialist engineer officer	10	10	12	(See 4)

Remarks (a) Continuation and termination of study outside duty, according to existing regulations
(b) After one month of duty in special technical service
(c) At the earliest after graduation as civilian engineer
(d) At the earliest after three-month probationary period as senior officer candidate

Appendix 39

Appendix d
to
H. Dv. 130/1 E
Ob. d. E./Stab IV/IN 210
Nr 12000/44

Conducting and Umpiring Field Problems

Technique of the Umpire Service

General

Umpires are divided into the following categories:

(a) Staff umpires (Stabsschiedrichter) (officers) function at Hqs during maneuvers of large formations

(b) Field umpires (Truppenschiedsrichter) (officers) function during field problems at company, battalion, or regiment Hq (in many cases assistants were designated to simulate effect of enemy fire).

(c) Assistant umpires (Unterschiedsrichter) (officers and NCOs) function with platoons and squads.

The officer in charge is responsible for the uniformity of all umpiring.

For problems of battalion level, one officer or senior NcO should be detailed to each company as an umpire. He is an assistant to the officer in charge of the problem and is responsible for seeing that the problem of his company is conducted under combat conditions, and that the purpose of each particular problem is achieved. This umpire is in charge of all assistant umpires.

Assistant umpires illustrate and describe the problem to the men as they go along, but nothing else. It is definitively wrong to enforce certain actions or movements by orders or directives. Only energetic and experienced instructors should be detailed as assistant umpires.

Umpires must be impartial. They have to execute only orders given to them by the officer in charge or his assistants.

In problems of lower levels, the senior umpire has the right of decision. If there is no umpire present, the senior officer makes the decision.

All orders and directives of umpires and assistants must be complied with. Protests against decisions of umpires are considered unmilitary. Each umpire is entitled to declare "out of action," soldiers who are of higher rank than himself.

The unit commander must never be the umpire at the same time. If, in basic training, an assistant instructor is not available for umpiring, the most qualified trainee takes over. During basic training, these instructors will often have to be told what orders they should give. Criticism of the umpire is, in this case, only directed against the actions of the young instructor.

Certain territories which are private property and, therefore, can not be used for instructional purposes will be designated to the troops of both parties as mined, contaminated, or impassable.

Decisions of umpires, which are merely given for reason of safety or for purposes of training, will be identified as such to the men. This is particularly important if parts of a problem have to be conducted under conditions which differ from real combat situations and in cases when decisions cannot possible be correct.

All assistant umpires must report to the officer in charge of the exercise and to the senior umpire from time to time, to give them a brief survey of the tactical situation and to receive further instructions.

The officer in charge and his assistants wear a yellow band around their left upper arm.

Soldiers working for the umpire wear a white band around their cap or a white band around their left upper arm. Their equipment consists of a map, paper, pencil, and devices to simulate fire. The use of a bicycle or horse is often a great asset.

Preparation for a Field Problem

The officer in charge will discuss with the assistant umpires the purpose and contemplated course of the problem before it begins. This will be done at the sand table, on the map, or on the terrain itself. He gives them detailed instruction covering their activities. During the umpire instruction, umpires will be briefed on the effect of all weapons and the manner of explaining to the men the various phases and situations of the problem.

The air situation and ammunition problems will be explained to the men by assistant umpires. Partisan activities, location of mines and obstacles, application of poison gas (various kinds of gases), and the supply situation will be discussed whenever applicable.

Instruction of umpires covering combat practice firing will also include safety measures. Details may be taken from existing manuals and training guides.

Activity and Conduct of Umpires

The troops must also recognize the umpire as a teacher and instructor. They must realize that the umpire must bear in mind the purpose of the problem to be followed, and that it is of secondary importance who will be the victor. This cannot be determined readily because of the lack of fire effect, but can be decided by considering whether the task has been executed correctly. The justice of umpires, therefore, can only be secondary. Decisions against a unit must not be considered a rebuke, but rather a misfortune of war.

In case the effect of weapons or the tactical position cannot be clearly determined, assistant umpires may be asked for further instructions and explanations.

The activity of the assistant umpire depends on the nature of the problem. In training problems during basic training they are primarily instructors. During problems of platoon level or higher, they are assistants to the officer in charge.

During flexible (freilaufend) problems, they will assure that tactical conduct is adhered to, but will intervene only if the purpose of the problem does not seem to be achieved. If an officer jeopardizes the purpose of the problem by his actions, the umpire, by presenting this officer with a realistic tactical situation, will insure the conscientious execution of the problem. He gives new concepts on the effect of enemy fire, transmits new ideas on the tactical position of the enemy, or changes the situation by initiating new reports or orders. He will, however, never restrain the energy, activity, or responsibility of the officers in charge.

The umpire may give suggestions only for the platoon leader's actions; he must never take over the leadership himself.

Nontactical conduct of individuals will have to be criticized and eliminated by the umpire without delay. During the second phase of basic training, the umpire may criticize and demand repetition of all incorrectly executed movements.

Umpires must be agile. They must at all times keep up with forward troops, in order to supply new tactical situations. To stay behind a unit engaged in a problem is wrong. During breaks, they establish connection with the umpires of friendly or enemy units.

In a problem where two parties are engaged, the umpires must insure that they do not give away the position of the units to which they are attached. This goes particularly for night problems.

The umpire gives reports and orders in a military manner. He speaks directly, as if he were the messenger himself. For instance, the umpire reports in a prone position:

> "Messenger of the machine gun platoon - machine gun platoon cannot be ready to fire before 1415 hours. How is the situation? Will I have to take along any reports?"

Punishment, by way of exclusion from problems, will be given only after the criticism by umpires has proved unsuccessful. If the umpire gives his tactical situations too late, or if he puts men out of action at random, he weakens the fighting spirit and power of resistance of the unit.

If individual men are put out of action, they will have to be designated by name. For instance, an umpire cannot say: "Two men out of this squad are out of action." In addition, he will have to state the reasons for eliminating the men. Fighting spirit and endurance will always have to be acknowledged, even though the operation proved unsuccessful for tactical reasons.

Individual men or units will remain on the spot where they were pronounced out of action until they receive further orders from the umpire or his assistants. Helmets or caps will be removed. In most cases those men or units will be collected and follow the main body of troops as reserves. All these actions will be carried out tactically.

Reports and orders carried by messengers who have been pronounced out of action will be given to the officer in charge.

Decisions by umpires must never result in a withdrawal, unless specific orders for such an action have been issued. Umpires will always insist on unconditional stand regardless of the enemy's strength.

If an umpire sees fit to prevent any further advance of a unit, he will lay enemy fire in front of the unit or notify their commander that they lack fire support. He can also proclaim a break if the course of the action would have taken more time in combat.

The umpire can cause rapid advance of a squad by informing them that their unit is not under any enemy fire or that the ensmy himself is under strong concentrated fire.

In case of close combat, quick umpire decisions are indicated. Frequently the parties will have to be separated, and a break will be proclaimed during which the

final decision will be settled.

Simulation of Tactical Situations

Simulations of tactical situations are essential in order to prevent situations which would be impossible in combat. The former will be announced and explained loud enough so that they can be clearly understood by the entire platoon. At maneuvers, special detachments will have to be detailed to simulate fire in the terrain. They inquire at observation points on which point the fire should be concentrated and simulate it at times designated.

Umpires will supplement this simulation of fire. They will have to be instructed so that they are able to call the fire correctly. General statements, such as "You are being shot at," are incorrect. They must make it completely clear what kind of fire is used, where it comes from, and on what target it is concentrated. Observed and unobserved fire, bracketing, and firing for effect are to be described clearly. The units rightfully draw different conclusions after it has been announced what kind and calibers of weapons are used; for example, automatic weapons, mortars, naval artillery, assault guns, tank guns, or antitank guns. If slow firing weapons are involved, shots will have to be called.

Noise of battle, fresh shell or bomb craters, burning houses, blown streets, or mine fields may be simulated and announced if the tactical situation demands it. This also gives the problem a warlike atmosphere.

All details regarding air attacks, such as bombings, low-flying attacks, reconnaissance and pursuit activities, carpet bombing, strafing, and antiaircraft fire will be illustrated as realistically as possible. German planes which might show up during problems will be considered by both sides as enemy aircraft - if not announced differently.

A current and vivid explanation of all phases of a problem proves most helpful and instructive to the men. This requires a thorough knowledge of all arms, actual battle experience, and imagination.

Appendix 40

Part I

Training Plan for Training Companies for Special Assignment and NCO Training Units (Machine Gun Training and Replacement Companies for Special Employment)

Part II

Refresher Training (6 weeks) for Recalled, Previously Deferred Personnel and Exchange NCO's

Directives for Refresher Training

(a) The following directives and training plans are set up for a six-week training period. The replacement situation, however, can make it necessary to shorten the training period.

(b) The aim of the refresher training is to establish and broaden the knowledge and ability of soldiers who have taken their basic training some time ago, and to establish their readiness for employment in the field. It is often necessary to bring back to nature many of these men who have been living in cities. Therefore, it is essential to begin training in the field at an early date. It is particularly important to accustom trainees to the primitive conditions at the front, by frequent stays out of doors under active service conditions. The greatest value is to be placed on training at night and physical conditioning.

(c) Recalled personnel must be developed into willing fighters, and convinced of the necessity of the war. They must be prepared for the front with the full knowledge that, during the following phases of the war, the individual performance of every man is of extreme importance. This will be done by means of National Socialistic guidance lectures. In these lectures, at least two hours each week will be devoted to National Socialist ideology and one hour to answering political questions.

(d) The main points of emphasis in training are as follows:
Weapons training (including night training)
Firing practice (from open and covered fire positions)
Combat training (use of ground construction of gun positions)
Antitank close combat

(e) To insure continuity of training, it is essential that the knowledge and ability of trainees be taken into consideration. Training groups are to be formed on a basis of premilitary training, past employment, and profession.

(f) Special emphasis is to be laid on the selection of NCOs and potential NCOs.

(g) The following weekly plans are applicable also to the training of NCOs. During the training they will be placed in command of squads, sections, etc. The special NCO subjects will be taken as well as the normal training subjects.

(h) Antigas training is a definite part of all training. This requires very little time and, apart from a few lectures, can be incorporated into the daily

training.

(i) Sport must be considered as 'purposeful,' and carried out in the form of unarmed combat, close combat, etc.

(j) All soldiers must be given machine-gun training. Thirty percent of all personnel must be trained as gunners and sent to the special firing course for gunners. All soldiers must be trained to handle the bazooka. Only those soldiers who are equipped with submachine guns and pistols will be trained in these weapons. All personnel will receive some instruction on rifle grenade dischargers, but only NCOs will be trained to use them.

(k) In order to train as many good machine gunners as possible, it is necessary to give further training to those riflemen who show talent.

Editor's Comment:

The German Military Document Section library is in possession of training plans and syllabi similar to these and to the plans laid down in "Special Appendixes" covering all phases of basic and recapitulatory training for the following arms of services.

Railway Engineer (basic 14 weeks) Appendix 51

Railway Engineer (recapitulatory six weeks) Appendix 54a

Light Artillery Replacements (recapitulatory four weeks)

Panzer Companies (recapitulatory four weeks)

Antitank Companies (recapitulatory four weeks)

Motorized Infantry (recapitulatory four weeks)

Heavy Gun Companies (recapitulatory four weeks)

Motorcycle Companies (recapitulatory four weeks)

Tank Reconnaissance Companies (recapitulatory four weeks)

Cyclist Troops (recapitulatory four weeks)

It is impossible to list the entire contents of all the training plans available, but, in order to give some indication of the value of the documents, a copy of the latest infantry training plan is attached.* All plans and syllabi are set up in a parallel manner. Much of the infantry training is included in the other training plans.

---

*See special appendix.

Appendix 40

Part II

Training Plan for Machine Gun Companies of Infantry Training Companies
(Grenadier, Füsilier, Jäger, Gebirgsjäger, Ausbildungs, Kompanien)

Part I

Basic Training (12 weeks)

Introduction

Basic training is divided into two periods

(a) First training period: one to eight weeks

Individual training of gunners

Individual training within gun crews and within the section

(b) Second training period: nine to 12 weeks

Section and platoon training

Aim of each training period

(a) First training period

Weapons training: Mastery of the weapon and equipment
Firing training: Firing with live ammunition
Aiming (including darkness and fog)
Indirect firing

Combat training: Proper handling in the field (use of terrain, camouflage, entrenchment, range finding, firing)
Observation and reports, guard and sentry duty
Conduct in defense and in the attack (including close combat)
Cooperation within gun crews
Tank warfare (close combat)
After eight weeks the training of the young soldiers must be completed to the extent that they can be transferred to field units at a moments notice.

(b) Second training period

Improving the field combat training of the individual

Individual training of gunners within the section and platoon

Cooperation with the machine gun section

Attack: Guarding an assembly area. Supporting an advance and assault. Use of machine guns in advance, penetration, and in combat in the main defensive area. Use of machine guns in a raid.

Defense: Use of machine guns in defense against enemy attacks to cut off enemy penetrations. Defense with light machine gun, close combat from within a trench. Tasks during counterthrusts and counterattacks, clearing of a position, disengaging.

Combat under special circumstances:
Village and wood fighting
(Combat in woods will not be exercised separately but combined with all other combat training)

Personnel will receive the following training:

As heavy machine gun personnel, 80 percent of the company (of these, 25 percent as gunners)

As telephone operators, radio operators, and company headquarters messengers, 10 percent of the company

As teamsters, 10 percent of the company (of which 40 percent must be trained as cavalry men)

As pack animal leaders, 20 percent of all mountain infantry training companies

Personnel will receive the following instruction:

All men, in care of horses.

All signal personnel and drivers, in the operation of the heavy machine gun in the firing position

All heavy machine gunners, in operating the submachine pistol (MP 38/40), the submachine gun (StG.44), carbine (K43), and the rifle grenade discharger.

The instruction is to be carried out in such a manner that, during the first training period, the soldiers will be instructed in the use and care of the weapon. The operation of the weapons will be demonstrated by instruction firing, during which the individual soldiers themselves should fire a few rounds with the weapon.

At the beginning of the fifth training week the gunners are to receive further specialized training. Only infantrymen who appear extremely capable in view of their marksmanship and ability at handling weapons will be selected as gunners.

They will be trained according to the special directives and notes in the weekly training plan.

All machine guns of the company have to be combined for the training of gunners.

During the second half of the second training period, all gunners will be concentrated for a six-day firing course. (The course of instruction is added as an appendix to the weekly training plans). Personnel who have not completed firing practice No 3 and No 4 or, for any other reason, are not qualified for gunners, will not be sent on the special firing course. Exceptions to this will be decided by the company commander. Officer applicants and Reserve officer applications will take part in the six-day firing course during their second training period.

Basic training of mountain infantry will be carried out according to the training plans for infantry companies. Combat practice and training in firing for mountain infantry units are to be carried out in mountainous terrain.

Training will include:

Use of the rope

Carrying heavy weapons and loads in mountainous country

Leading and quartering pack animals in mountainous country.

Training in these subjects is to be carried out in the mountains in summer and winter.

In addition, a short period is to be devoted to ski training.

Instruction will include:

The dangers of mountain travel and precaution to be taken in mountains; distress signals, topography, and meteorology of mountainous terrain

Treatment of wounded and injured in mountainous country.

Premilitary training must be taken into consideration insofar as it concerns the training of the individual in the various subjects mentioned in the training plan.

Weekly Training Plans

Weekly plans are not intended as training syllabi. They merely regulate the period of training for each subject and insure uniformity of training. The individual subjects, therefore, are only mentioned during the week in which training in that subject is to commence. The number of times that they are repeated will depend upon the degree of training. In the weekly syllabus, the company commander will regulate the training subjects so as to insure that the individual soldier is sufficiently trained in the handling of weapons and equipment to enable him to carry on with the combat practice.

A minimum of three hours a week is to be devoted to political indoctrination along National Socialist lines. Of these, one hour will be devoted to basic ideological education, one hour to current events, and one hour to actual political education. The object of the ideological education is merely to give the individual a basic knowledge of National Socialist ideology and not a high school study of the subject. The subjects for current education will be forwarded at any given time to the units by Army High Command/National Socialist Guidance Staff (OKH/NS-Führungsstab). The political training is intended to keep the individual soldier informed about the actual political and military events of the day.

All training will be based on the premilitary training received in the Hitler Youth and the German Labor Service. All unnecessary repetitions will be avoided. The following plans contain all phases of military training, including those of premilitary training. The company commanders will test and decide how far young

soldiers, who have had premilitary training, are to be advanced, and how much repetition will be necessary for the individual.

The following points are important: Realistic and warlike training; much training in the field and in darkness; all combat training to be carried out under actual combat conditions. Individual training in weapons, combat training, and firing. Irreproachable execution of commands and combat discipline. Combat lectures to be given by officers and NCOs only. If the terrain in which the training is to take place is not suitable, it will be necessary to improvise methods for making combat training realistic.

The firing practices, as outlined in Army Manual 240/2 for rifle, light machine gun, and pistols, must be fired not later than the week in which they are mentioned in the training plan. Any additional firing intended to improve the ability of the individual can be ordered by the company commander, if time and ammunition allow. The following manuals will be authoritative in training with the heavy machine gun:

H.Dv.130/3a
"Training Manual for Heavy Machine Gun"

Merkblatt 25b/27
"The Machine Gun Section in an Open-fire Position" (9 July 1943)

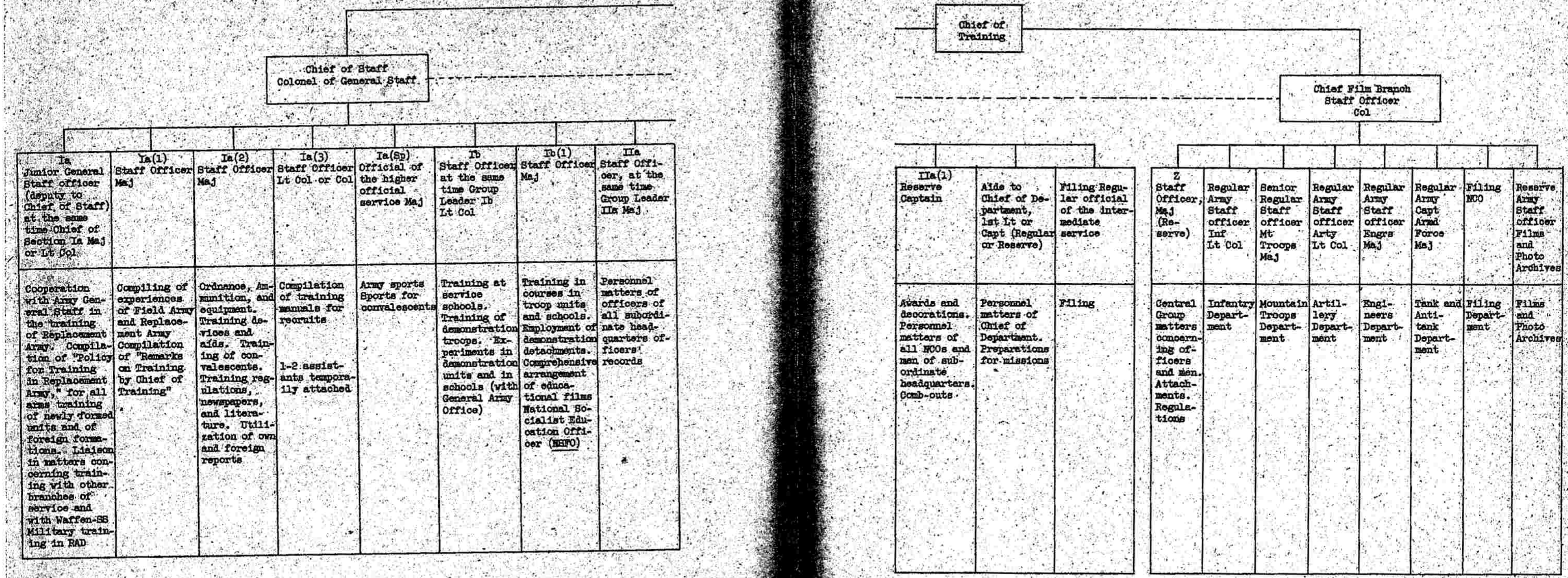
Merkblatt 25b/28
"The Machine Gun Section in a Covered-fire Position" (15 November 1943)

Merkblatt 25b/30
"Firing Practice" (31 July 1943)

H.Dv.241
"Training Manual for Machine Gun 42" (15 September 1944)

D 126/1
"Range Table for Heavy Machine Gun"

ORGANIZATION OF STAFF OF THE CHIEF OF TRAINING IN REPLACEMENT ARMY -- 1942



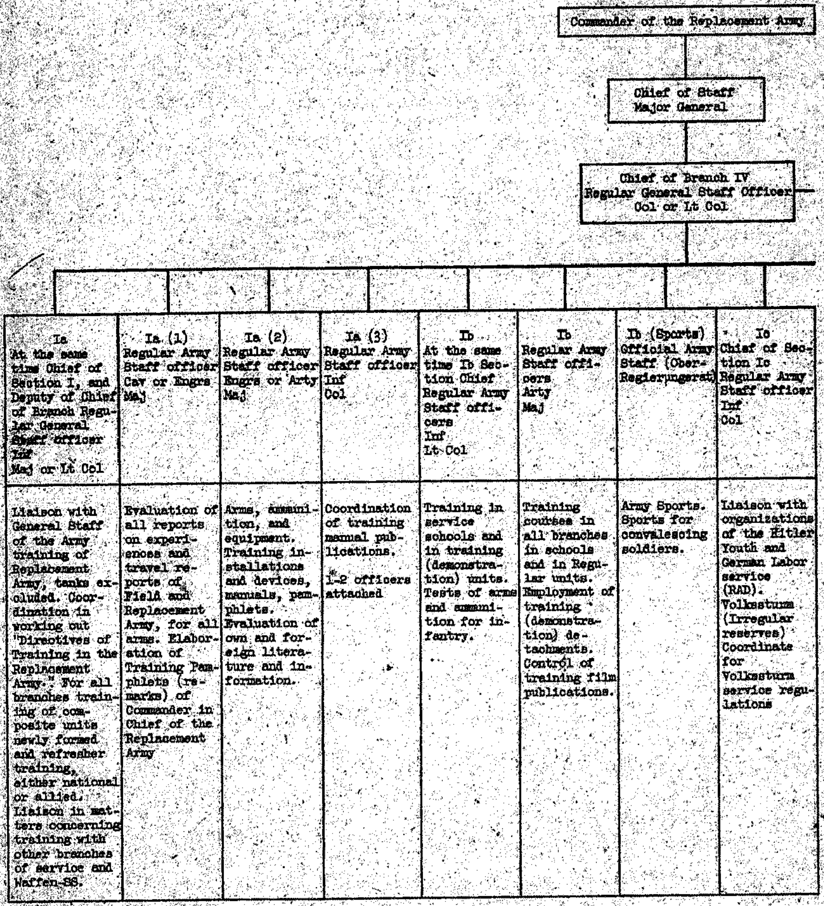
Ia Junior General Staff officer (deputy to Chief of Staff) at the same time Chief of Section Ia Maj or Lt Col	Ia(1) Staff Officer Maj	Ia(2) Staff Officer Maj	Ia(3) Staff Officer Lt Col or Col	Ia(Sp) Official of the higher official service Maj	Ib Staff Officer at the same time Group Leader Ib Lt Col	Ib(1) Staff Officer Maj	IIa Staff Officer, at the same time Group Leader IIa Maj
Cooperation with Army General Staff in the training of Replacement Army. Compilation of "Policy for Training in Replacement Army," for all arms training of newly formed units and of foreign formations. Liaison in matters concerning training with other branches of service and with Waffen-SS Military training in RAD	Compiling of experiences of Field Army and Replacement Army Compilation of "Remarks on Training by Chief of Training"	Ordnance, Ammunition, and equipment. Training devices and aids. Training of convalescents. Training regulations, newspapers, and literature. Utilization of own and foreign reports	Compilation of training manuals for recruits 1-2 assistants temporarily attached	Army sports Sports for convalescents	Training at service schools. Training of demonstration troops. Experiments in demonstration units and in schools (with General Army Office)	Training in courses in troop units and schools. Employment of demonstration detachments. Comprehensive arrangement of educational films National Socialist Education Officer (NSFO)	Personnel matters of officers of all subordinate headquarters officers' records

IIa(1) Reserve Captain	Aide to Chief of Department, 1st Lt or Capt (Regular or Reserve)	Filing Regular official of the intermediate service
Awards and decorations. Personnel matters of all NCOs and men of subordinate headquarters. Comb-outs	Personnel matters of Chief of Department. Preparations for missions	Filing

Z Staff Officer, Maj (Reserve)	Regular Army Staff officer Inf Lt Col	Senior Regular Staff officer Mt Troops Maj	Regular Army Staff officer Arty Lt Col	Regular Army Staff officer Engrs Maj	Regular Army Capt Armd Force Maj	Filing NCO	Reserve Army Staff officer Films and Photo Archives
Central Group matters concerning officers and men. Attachments. Regulations	Infantry Department	Mountain Troops Department	Artillery Department	Engineers Department	Tank and Antitank Department	Filing Department	Films and Photo Archives

All these men were officers of the Regular Army and from various arms and services so as to give a variety of experts and completeness to the staff.

CHAIN OF COMMAND OF BRANCH IV (TRAINING) OF STAFF COMMANDER OF THE REPLACEMENT ARMY 1945

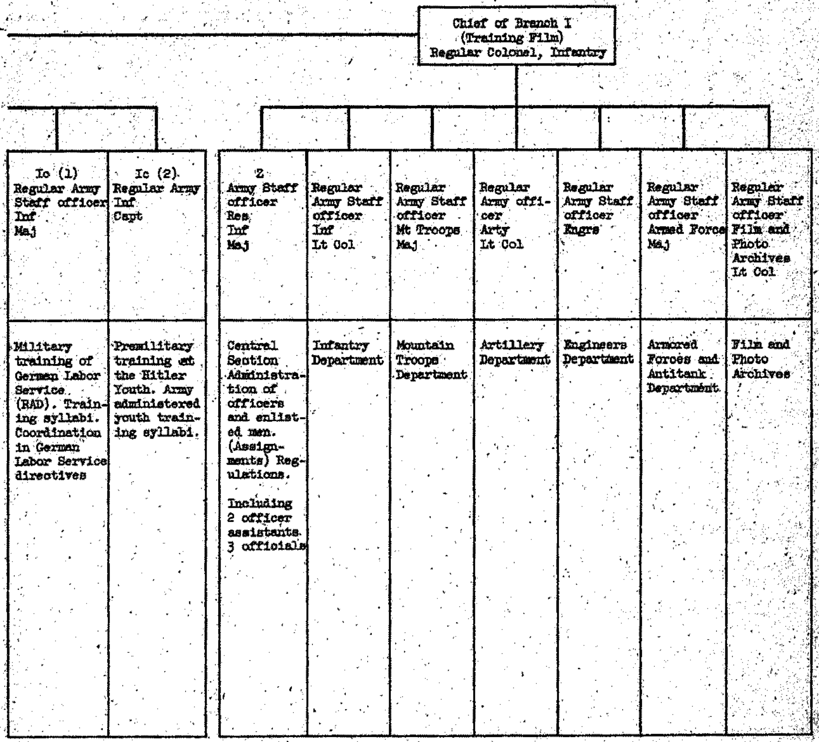


Commander of the Replacement Army

Chief of Staff
Major General

Chief of Branch IV
Regular General Staff Officer
Col or Lt Col

Ia	Ia (1)	Ia (2)	Ia (3)	Ib	Ib	Ib (Sports)	Ic
At the same time Chief of Section I, and Deputy of Chief of Branch Regular General Staff officer Inf Maj or Lt Col	Regular Army Staff officer Cav or Engrs Maj	Regular Army Staff officer Engrs or Arty Maj	Regular Army Staff officer Inf Col	At the same time Ib Section Chief Regular Army Staff officers Inf Lt Col	Regular Army Staff officers Arty Maj	Official Army Staff (Ober-Regierungsrat)	Chief of Section Ic Regular Army Staff officer Inf Col
Liaison with General Staff of the Army training of Replacement Army, tanks excluded. Coordination in working out "Directives of Training in the Replacement Army." For all branches training of composite units newly formed and refresher training, either national or allied. Liaison in matters concerning training with other branches of service and Waffen-SS.	Evaluation of all reports on experiences and travel reports of Field and Replacement Army, for all arms. Elaboration of Training Pamphlets (remarks) of Commander in Chief of the Replacement Army	Arms, ammunition, and equipment. Training installations and devices, manuals, pamphlets. Evaluation of own and foreign literature and information.	Coordination of training manual publications. 1-2 officers attached	Training in service schools and in training (demonstration) units. Tests of arms and ammunition for infantry.	Training courses in all branches in schools and in Regular units. Employment of training (demonstration) detachments. Control of training film publications.	Army Sports. Sports for convalescing soldiers.	Liaison with organizations of the Hitler Youth and German Labor service (RAD). Volkssturm (Irregular reserves) Coordinate for Volkssturm service regulations



Chief of Branch I
(Training Film)
Regular Colonel, Infantry

Ic (1)	Ic (2)	Z						
Regular Army Staff officer Inf Maj	Regular Army Inf Capt	Army Staff officer Res Inf Maj	Regular Army Staff officer Inf Lt Col	Regular Army Staff officer Mt Troops Maj	Regular Army officer Arty Lt Col	Regular Army Staff officer Engrs	Regular Army Staff officer Armed Force Maj	Regular Army Staff officer Film and Photo Archives Lt Col
Military training of German Labor Service (RAD). Training syllabi. Coordination in German Labor Service directives	Premilitary training at the Hitler Youth. Army administered youth training syllabi.	Central Section Administration of officers and enlisted men. (Assignments) Regulations. Including 2 officer assistants. 3 officials	Infantry Department	Mountain Troops Department	Artillery Department	Engineers Department	Armored Forces and Antitank Department	Film and Photo Archives

Annex 1

Der Dienstunterricht im Heere

W. Reibert: Army Service Instructions
(Special edition for riflemen in
the rifle company)*

Edited by: E.S. Mittler and Son, Berlin 1943

This privately compiled book was issued to serve as hand or reference book. Explanations, pictures, sketches, and tables are used to aid the soldier in understanding service regulations and instructions.

Its main sections are as follows:

A politico-historical part which was written for the indoctrination of soldiers

A chapter on the calling and the duties of a soldier

Regulations concerning clothing and quarters

Military courtesy

Organization of the German Army

Gas defense

Weapons and equipment

Drill and weapons training

Firing practice

Combat training.

---

* Other special editions were published for the individual soldier in nearly all phases of combat.

Annex 2

Der Rekrutenunteroffizier Anleitung zur Ausbildung von Rekruten

K. Stock: The Basic Training NCO
A guide to the training of recruits

Edited by: E.S. Mittler and Son, Berlin
1940

Another privately edited soldiers' handbook for the use of NCO instructors. It attempts to show the NCO how and what to teach. References to basic Army manuals are given with brief and pertinent explanations.

Annex 3

H.Dv. 59
M.Dv. Nr. 275
L.Dv. 59

Book of Instruction for Medical NCOs and Enlisted Men
(12 August 1939)

Edited by: E.S. Mittler and Son, Berlin

A privately edited book of instructions designed to give basic medical information to military personnel. It begins by explaining the duties of medical NCOs and enlisted men in war and peace. The first part of the actual text deals with the structure of the body and the function of its members. The second part discusses the various types of sicknesses, wounds, and injuries. The third part deals with first aid, bandages, care of the sick, and hospital duties. The fourth part is devoted to special cases occurring in motorized, armored, mountain, naval, and Air Force units.

Special appendixes deal with gas defense, prophylaxis, snake-poison, the terms of the Geneva convention, i.e., treatment of wounded and captured personnel.

Annex 4

Notes (#132)
OKH/Gen.St.d.H./Ausb.Abt. (II)
Nr.760/42

Forest Fighting (Waldkampf)
(Summary of reports on experiences gained during the fighting on the eastern front)

This pamphlet was published by the Training Branch of the Army General Staff on 31 March 1942. It offers suggestions for training, and deals with the following subjects:

Purpose of pamphlet (to aid in the training for fighting in forests, at night, and in fog)

Behavior of Russian fighters

Peculiarities of forest combat

Reconnaissance, orientation, and observation

Marching

Advancing in a forest, approaching the enemy

Attack

Defense

Training

Annex 5

Notes 18/10
OKH/Gen.St.d.H./Ausb.Abt.
Gen.d.Art./Gen.Insp.d.
Pz.Tr.
Nr.3900/43

What the Infantryman Should Know About the Assault Gun and Antitank Vehicles

This small pamphlet is an appendix to Memorandum 75/3 Employment of Antitank Companies in Combat and Memorandum 27b/57 Employment of Assault Guns in Combat (in an infantry division).

It is subdivided into the following sections:

Equipment and functions of assault guns and antitank vehicles

Dangers involved in fighting near assault guns and antitank vehicles

How can assault guns and antitank vehicles aid the infantryman?

How can the infantryman aid assault guns and antitank vehicles?

Mutual support brings success.

Annex 6

OKH/Gen.St.d.H./Ausb.Abt. (I)
Nr. 10/44
Note Sheet 18a/26

Forest Fighting and Scout Training in Finland
(14 February 1944)

Training principles established in forest fighting courses in Finland have been summarized in this pamphlet to assist in the training of troops fighting under similar conditions. The pamphlet discusses the advance and the approach to the enemy in a dense forest. Attention is then given to the advance of a reinforced battalion and is discussed in great detail. The second part deals with the various types of scout squads and the method of their advance in a dense forest.

Annex 7

OKH/Gen.St.d.H./Ausb.Abt.(I)
Nr.2000/44 geh.

Summary of Training - Directives No 10 to 23
(5 March 1944)

This booklet contains a summary of individually issued training directives published by the Training Branch of the Army General Staff. The material previously published is rearranged here in a topical form. This particular summary deals with five combat problems:

(a) Defense

General

Fighting methods of the Russians

Use of artificial fog

(b) Tank and antitank fighting

Employment of German tanks and assault guns

Conclusions drawn from Russian employment of tanks

Antitank fighting

(c) Experiences in fighting British and Americans

(d) Employment of armored trains

(e) Cooperation between the Army and the Air Force.

Annex 8

OKH/Gen.St.d.H./Ausb.Abt.(IIb)
Nr.4000/42

Camouflage (Tarnung)
Conclusions drawn from experiences during fighting on all fronts
(29 October 1942)

This well-illustrated booklet (61 pages) discusses problems of camouflage under almost any given condition. It deals primarily with the means and methods of camouflage in field and rest positions, on the march, in winter, and in tropical or semi-tropical regions. It ends with a suggested syllabus for training.

Annex 9

OKH/Gen.St.d.H/Ausb.Abt.(II)
Nr. 30/41 geh.
H.Dv. 801

Directives for the employment of a motorized infantry division

(27 January 1941)

This Army publication supersedes a similar directive published in 1937. It begins with a discussion of the characteristics of an infantry division. In addition it contains the following sections:

Organization, equipment, capacity of a motorized infantry division

Duties of a motorized infantry division

Commanding a motorized infantry division

Reconnaissance

On the march

Deployment and preparation for battle

Special features of the battle

Rest

Special supply problems

Annex 10

Ob.d.H./Gen.St.d.H.
Gen.d.Inf.
H.Dv.g4

Instruction concerning the Training of Infantry in stationary Combat Installations (Draft)

(3 March 1940)

This Army manual was written for infantry troops assigned to fight from installations constructed of concrete and armored plate (pill-boxes, strongpoints, etc.) It contains information on weapons and equipment used in such installations and directives for the training of the personnel. The first half of the manual describes the structure itself and gives a detailed description of the optical instruments used for observation. The second half serves as a training manual and furnishes instructions on the use of various types of machine guns,* antitank guns, and mortars. It also contains directives for the training of observation personnel.

---

*German and Czechoslovakian

Annex 11

OKH/Gen.St.d.H.
Gen.d.Inf.i.OKH
H.Dv.130/20

Infantry Training Manual
(Part 20: commanding an infantry regiment)
(21 March 1945)

This manual discusses the commanding of a reinforced infantry regiment and cooperation with assault guns, tanks, pursuit tanks, artillery, mortars, and antiaircraft artillery. Its main sections are called:

Command Functions

On the march

Deployment

Attack

Pursuit

Defense from strong points

Disengaging from the enemy and retreat

Combat and other special circumstances

Coastal defense

Landings on an enemy coast

Appendixes

Annex 12

OKH/Chef HNW/Gen.d.Inf.
b. Chef Gen.St.d.H.
Ia N. Nr. 3570/44
H.Dv. 130/7

Principles for the Signal Intercommunication Service of the Infantry
(Part I: Infantry and Light Infantry Units)
(27 November 1944)

This manual discusses the following:

Type and employment of signal equipment in infantry companies and the regimental heavy infantry gun (13th) and antitank (14th) companies.

Principles for tactical employment of signal equipment.

Employment of signal equipment for the purpose of fire direction.

Duties of signal NCOs and a survey of time factors and service capacity of signal equipment.

Annex 13

Der General der Infanterie
im Oberkommando des Heeres
Ia/III Nr.3540/44

Directives for Employment of Corps Machinegun Battalions (horsedrawn)

1 December 1944

This is a small pamphlet dealing with the basic tactics to be employed by battalions in the attack and in defensive action. These battalions are infantry troops that are in the table of organization of the Army and are administered by the office of the chief of staff of the Army. They are to be employed by corps only as complete units at strategic points.

Annex 14

Merkblatt 25c/41
15 Nov 44

Preliminary Directives for the Employment of Motorized Infantry Antiaircraft Battalions and Antiaircraft Battalions of Fortress Infantry Units

This pamphlet deals briefly with defensive tactics to be employed by infantry antiaircraft units.

Annex 15

Merkblatt 25/3
Lw.-Merkblatt 221

Introduction to Close Combat and Training in the Use of Hand Grenades

Index

(a) Nature of close combat

(b) Training for close combat and use of hand grenades

Preliminary training in close combat

Close combat without weapons

Close combat with weapons

Close combat with hand grenades

(c) Instructions in the use of hand grenades

Annex 16

Merkblatt 25a/16

Preliminary Notes

The Machine Pistol Platoon of the Infantry Company

This pamphlet briefly describes the characteristics and performance of this weapon, the organization and training of the machine pistol platoon and the general combat employment of this type of unit.

Annex 17

Merkblatt 25a/18
12 July 1942

Concentration of High and Low -trajectory Infantry Weapons in a Battalion

This pamphlet consists of a number of illustrated examples explaining the combined employment of rifle, mortar, and infantry gun fire. Situations described vary from attacks against single enemy soldiers to counterbattery fire.

Annex 18

Merkblatt 25a/24
(Anhang 2 zur H Dv.1a
Seite 25a, lfd.Nr.24)

Regulations for the Training of Infantry NCOs in the Field Army

This pamphlet, dated 27 October 1942, was produced by the Chief of Infantry of the General Staff (Gen.St.d.H./Gen.d.Inf.) It was primarily intended for the training of NCOs in field units. It was also published as an appendix to training manuals used by the short-term NCO schools which were set up behind the front lines.

(a) Introduction

(b) Summary of training syllabi for NCOs

- Infantry company (4 weeks)
- MG company (4 weeks)
- Infantry gun company (4 weeks)
- Antitank company (4 weeks)
- Antiaircraft company (4 weeks)

(c) Laying and aiming the antitank gun

(d) Summary of all pamphlets, notes, and regulations necessary for the training of NCOs in the field.

Annex 19

Anhang 2 zur H.Dv.1a
Seite 27b, lfd.Nr.45

Generalstab des Heeres
General der Artillerie (1a)
Az.34 Nr.4150/42
10 August 42

Directive for Short-Term Training in Artillery in the Field

This directive is intended for use in short-term courses given directly behind the lines. It is not intended as a training manual but rather as a guide to the instructor. The appendixes include sample syllabi for courses lasting from one day to three or four weeks. The contents of the directive, as taken from the index, are as follows:

(a) General

Object of training

Planning of course

Administration

(b) Training directive

(c) Suggestions for syllabi

Appendix includes six sample training syllabi

Annex 20

Anhang 2 zur H. Dv. 1a
Seite 27a lfd. Nr.39

Oberkommando des Heeres
Generalstab des Heeres
General der Artillerie
Nr.1600/42 (1b)

Artillery Notes

Directive for the Commitment of Assault Gun Units

This is one of a series of short directives issued periodically in order to keep forward units informed of any changes in methods required by current operations methods. It deals with the following topics:

Description and employment of the assault gun

Organization of assault gun units

Basic principles for commitment

On the move

Employment of assault guns in an attack

Employment of assault guns during a pursuit

Employment of assault gun

Disengaging from the enemy and retreating

Fighting under special circumstances

Supply

Annex 21

H.Dv.220/2
Oberkommando des Heeres
Gen.d.Pioniere u Festungen
Az.34V/Abt.Pi.(IV)
Nr.10200.44

Preliminary Manscript for Engineer Training Manual
Commitment of Engineers

This preliminary manuscript was published in December 1944 by the Training Branch of the General Staff. It is based on actual combat experiences. It was distributed to commanders of various engineer units for their comments and criticism after which it was to be published in training manual form. Further contributions based on combat experiences were requested. This manual was intended for use by officers and men of engineer units. Table of contents is as follows:

Part I Employment of engineer troops

Characteristics of engineers - troops

Organization

Engineer equipment and material

Activities of engineers in:

(a) Rest areas (at rest, on the march, in attack, in defense, etc.)

(b) Combat areas (village, wood, mountain, winter, etc.)

Part 2 Commitment of engineer troops

General principles regarding the commitment of engineer troops

Commitment under various combat conditions

Fighting under various conditions

Annex 22

Oberkommando des Heeres
Gen.St.d.H./Gen.d.Nbl.Tr.b.Ob.d.H.(1)
Az 41f Nr.301/41g

Notes on the decontamination of gas-infected areas (1 March 1941)

This short pamphlet was issued early in 1941 by the Chief of Chemical Warfare Troops (Gen.d.Nbl.Tr.b.Ob.d.H.). It combines the most essential points of the chemical warfare pamphlets H.Dv.300, H.Dv.395, D95, as well as the directives The chemical Warfare Battery and Regulations for the Commitment of a Fire Control Battery. The introduction to the pamphlet suggests a strictly retaliatory chemical warfare, although contamination of areas by gas is also discussed. Following is a list of contents:

Part I Contamination of an area

(a) Technical possibilities for contaminating an area

Effect of chemical gas

Duration of effectiveness

Methods of contamination
(a) Spray
(b) Artillery
(c) Airplane

(b) Tactical principles for the contamination of an area

Application of principles

Principle of reconnaissance

Execution of the principles

Part 2 Decontamination of an area or troops

(a) Technical possibilities for the decontamination of an area

(b) Tactical principles for decontaminating an area

(c) Decontamination of troops

Appendices

1 Organization of a contamination unit

2 Organization of a decontamination unit

3 Personal decontamination equipment (and its efficiency)

4 Statement covering the efficiency of a gas-detecting squad

5 Statement on personnel decontamination

Annex 23

This is number 17 in a series of short pamphlets issued in November 1944 by the Training Branch of the InspectorGeneral for Armored Troops (Generalinspecteur der Panzer-truppen /Abteilung Ausbildung.) These pamphlets were issued to acquaint front line troops and commanders with the latest tactical and technical changes in the armored forces. They contain combat experiences and enemy methods as obtained from the different fronts and are a cross between a training directive and an intelligence review. Pamphlet No. 17 contains the following information:

Commander of antitank defense (all weapons)

Antiaircraft defense from tanks (guns and MGs)

Commitment of and first aid by medical personnel of an armored formation

Experiences of an antitank unit on the eastern front

Experiences of an armored reconnaissance unit on the eastern front

Experiences of armored corps engineers (8-15,9.44)

Emergency defense by pioneer troops of an armored formation

The supply company of an armored formation

Extracts from experiences of a supply company of an armored reconnaissance unit

The reduced training time for armored units in the replacement army

Instructions for setting up courses for newly formed units and for refresher training

Notes on length of barrels

Points in reference to the commitment of enemy assault artillery

Communication service

Directives (mentioned hereunder are changes in nomenclature of units, new nomenclature of certain weapons and a list of newly published manuals and directives)

Annex 24

Sturmartillerie
W. Müller

German Assault Artillery

Edited for the OKH by 1st Lt. Dr. W. Müller, Intelligence Officer (Ic) at the Assault Gun School

This illustrated pamphlet deals with the following topics:

Effectiveness of assault artillery

The tradition behind the development of assault artillery

The German assault gun

Assault guns are artillery

The Assault gunner and his training

Organization of an assault gun battalion

How do assault guns fire?

Supplying an assault gun with ammunition

Assault artillery in battle

1. Advance section towards the Nieper
2. Tank battle
3. Defensive Battle

Annex 25

Note Sheet 41c/55
Chef d.H.u.B.d.E./Chef.d.A.i.E.
Stab/Ia (1)/Jn Nr.19568

Notes

Examples for the employment of assault detachments
Basis for training in the Replacement Army
(2 October 43)

Actual assaults on the eastern front are analyzed and examined for use in the training of replacements. On the basis of these completely documented cases a set of rules for such undertakings is laid down. The first assault, which is described here, was made to capture enemy soldiers, to obtain documents and propaganda material, and to destroy combat and other installations. The conclusions drawn from the three assaults are given under the following headings:

Leadership

Strength of an assault detachment

Selection of soldiers

Organization

Uniform

Arms

Equipment

Annex 26

Chef d. H. u. B. d. E.
Chef d. A. i. E.
Stab/Ia/In2/II Nr.12655/43
Note Sheet 41c/56

Preliminary Notes

Service in a Defensive Combat Position

These notes are based on combat experiences and make no claim to completeness. They are intended for use in the training of replacements of all arms of the service.

Part I Directives for daily duties in a defensive position

Appendix to part 1: Observation and reconnaissance service in a regimental sector

Part II Notes for platoon, company and battalion commander.

Annex 27

H.Dv.130/1E
Ob.d.E./Stab IV/In 2 Ia

Training Manual for the Infantry
(AVI)

Part 1 E Directives for Training in the Replacement Army (11 December 44)

This manual contains the following sections:

(a) General

Political education

Military training

Duties of the commanding officer

Training personnel

Training installations

(b) Training in Training Units

Basic training

(a) Combat training
(b) Umpire duties
(c) Fire and aiming practice
(d) Training with weapons and equipment
(e) Instruction
(f) Drill
(g) Winter training
(h) Engineer service
(i) Signal service
(k) Gas defense training
(l) Riding and driving training
(m) Motor car driving training
(n) Sport
(o) Physical training and first aid training

Further training

(c) Training in the Special Training Units

(d) Training in the Convalescent Units

(e) Officer and NCO Training in Field Units

Training of officers and officer candidates

Training of NCOs

Training Schedules

Annex 28

Chef. d.H. u.B. d.E.
Chef Ausb./In 7/Ic
H.Div. 421/10

Training Manual for Signal Troops
(AVN)

Part 10 Directives for Training in the Replacement Army (16 March 1943)

This manual also follows the pattern of H.Dv.130/1E. It covers the same subjects as the infantry training manual and instructions for signals training.

PROPERTY OF U S ARMY

Annex 29

Ob. d.H./Chef d.H.
u.B. d.E./Chef Ausb./SIn/Org Ia (Ausb.)
Nr. 87/44
H.Dv. 100/1

Training Manual for Medical Troops
(AVS)

Part 1. Directives for Training in Medical Depots and Replacement Units
(2 March 44)

With the exception of two sections and a few adaptations in the others, this manual is similar to the infantry manual (H.Dv. 130/1E). Part II of Section B, devoted to basic medical training, has the following subsections:

Training subjects

Training of litter-bearers

Training of medical orderlies

Part III of Section B deals with additional training for litter-bearers and medical orderlies with these two subsections:

General directives

Special training

In contrast to (H.Dv. 130/1 E), this manual has the following appendixes:

Appendix A Winter Training in the Replacement Army

Appendix B Directives for Motor Transport Training of all Arms

Appendix C Firing Practice for Rifle, Light Machine Gun and Heavy Machine Gun.

Annex 30

OKH/Chef d.H. u.B.d.E.
Chef d.A. i.E./ Abt. Lehrfilm
Nr. 25/44
H.Dv.40

Instruction by means of Slides and Films Including a list of Instruction Films and Slides of the Army

A. The first part of this manual has the following subsections:

I Basic Principles of Instructing by means of Slides and Films.

II Process of Instructing by means of Slides and Films

III Production of Projection Material for the Instruction of Troops

(a) Slides

(b) Instructional films

IV The Loan of Instructional Films and Slides

V Directives for Operators of Projectors

B. List of Films classified according to arms of service (Followed by a detailed list of 22 classes of training films)

PROPERTY OF U S ARMY

Annex 31

OKH/CHef d.A. i.E.
Abteilung Lehrfilm (F2)
Nr.120/143
Part III of H.Dv. 40

Preliminary List of Instructional Films and Slides of the Army. (20 January 43)

Same as preceding Annex

Annex 32

Merkblatt 41c/51
(Anhang 2 zur H.Dv. 1a
Seite 41c lfd. Nr 51)

Pamphlet 41c/51

This short military pamphlet, dated 1 March 1943, is an appendix to Army Manual 1a page 41c (H. Dv 1a Seite 41c). It was published by the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army (Ch H Rüst u BdE) for use in training depots.

This pamphlet contains brief notes on improved methods of firing a rifle. It stresses the importance of training recruits under field conditions particularly the art of firing from behind natural and artificial cover. A series of illustrations shows the proper positions to adopt while firing from behind cover.

PROPERTY OF U S ARMY

Annex 33

Merkblatt 40/14
(Anhang 2 zu H.Dv. la
Seite 40 lfd Nr. 14)

Pamphlet 40/14

This pamphlet, similar to 41c/51 (see appendix 52), also is an appendix to "Army Manual la", page 40. Dated 7 April 1943, it was published by the Chief of Army Equipment and Commander of the Replacement Army (Ch H Rüst u BdE) for use in the training of recruits in training depots.

This pamphlet deals with training in the firing of rifles, light machine guns, and heavy machine guns. Following is a list of contents according to chapters:

I General

II Firing instructors

III Training course

IV Range firing (this includes instructions for the actual firing of the three weapons mentioned above)

V Combat firing (III and IV above, under active service conditions)

VI Field targets

VII Panorama and sand table targets (for indoor and outdoor aiming practice)

VIII Firing records (firing score records for the individual soldier)

Annex 34

Der Chef der Heeresrüstung
und Befehlshaber des Ersatzheeres.
AHA/Inf.Abt. (In 2) Ia

Infantry Training Manual
(AVI)

Part II (Local Defense Units) Directives and training plans for the training of replacement companies of local defense units (29 April 1942)

This manual contains the following sections:

A. General

Duties of commanding officers

Instructional personnel

Training facilities

B. Training in Replacement Units

Recruit training

Advanced training

Training of NCOs

Training of officers

C. Training Plans

Replacement company of a local defense unit (this includes a six week syllabus of training)

Directives and training plan for the training of drivers within a replacement company of a local defense unit

(a) Directives

General

Directive re "Care of Horses"

Training of Drivers

PROPERTY OF U.S. ARMY

(b) Training Plans

Directive re "Care of Horses" (including a six-week training syllabus)

Training of drivers (including a six-week training syllabus)

Annex 35

"Wofür Kämpfen wir"
OKH/HPA/Ag p2

WHAT ARE WE FIGHTING FOR?

This is a military pamphlet published in January 1944 by the Personnel Branch of the Army High Command (OKH/HPA/Ag 2). It is intended as reading material for officers who wish to prepare themselves for the responsibility of politically indoctrinating the men under their command. In the opening address, written by Hitler himself, he states:

> "An officer who is unable to indoctrinate and guide his troops politically is as misplaced as one who is incapable of training and leading the men under his command."

The pamphlet is prepared so that it can be used both as a basis for political lectures and as a study. Besides the *Order from the Führer* written by Hitler, and an article entitled *The Idea of the State* written by Alfred Rosenberg, the pamphlet contains several chapters on each of the following main subjects:

(a) Our Enemies

  Jewry

  Bolshevism

  England

  America

(b) Development and Purpose of the War

(c) What Are We Fighting For?

PROPERTY OF U S ARMY

Annex 36

Die Nationalsozialistische
Führung der Truppe
Oberbefehlshaber West
Abteilung N.S. Führung

National Socialist Guidance for Troops

This booklet, published in 1944 by the National Socialist Guidance Branch and signed by Field Marshal von Rundstedt as Commander in Chief West, points out the reasons for and duties of National Socialist Guidance officers. One chapter is devoted to "The German Officer - Military and Political Leader," and depicts the role to be played by unit commanders in the political indoctrination of troops under their command. Emphasis is placed on the necessity of political indoctrination to overcome the material and manpower superiority of the invading forces.

Annex 37

Nationalsozialistische
Erziehung und Führung in Heere
Generalinspecteur fur den
Führernachwuchs im Heere.
1944

National Socialistic Indoctrination and Guidance in the Army

The newly formed branch of the Army High Command, General Inspector for Potential Army Officers (Generalinspecteur für den Führernachwuchs des Heeres), is responsible for the indoctrination, guidance, and training of all potential Army officers. Consequently, the former publication Indoctrination and Training in the Army (Erziehung und Bildung) is now known as National Socialist Indoctrination and Guidance in the Army (Nationalsozialistische Erziehung und Führung im Heere).

This publication is intended as a guide for the political indoctrination of junior officers as well as potential officers. It contains articles written by both civilian and military authors. Combat experiences are often included and the publishing department requests cooperation from front line sources in regard to future articles.

PROPERTY OF U.S. ARMY

Annex 38

Merkblatt für den
Komp. Unterricht

Notes for Company Lectures

This pamphlet contains a series of loose-leaf lectures for use as guides to lectures given at company level. The notes, numbered from 10 to 32 and dated from May 1942 to July 1943 contain political information designed to acquaint the front-line soldier with the workings of the Party and its ideas as well as information on the situation within Germany. The following is a list of the contents of the pamphlets, giving the numbers of the notes and the main headings.

General

1-9	(obsolete)
10	Not Enough Children
11	Daily Questions (20 examples for company lectures)
12	Sustaining the Front and the Home
13	The German Soldier and His Italian Ally

National Socialist Indoctrination in the Army

Main Text The German People

14	The Northern Race
15	Racial Wars in World History
16	Family, Kin, Nation
17	The Nation as a Defensive Force

Main Text The German State

18	The Borders of the German Race
19	The German State
20	The Leader Principle
21	The Armed Forces

Main Text The German Lebensraum

22	War as the Rule of Life
23	Work -- Our Inheritance
24	The German Farmer
25	Value of Sea and World Commerce

Main Text The National Socialist

26	Great Germans before Adolf Hitler
27	The German Social State
28	The Party and its Organization
29	Conduct of Life of the German Man
30	Notes for troops on leave from the east
31	Notes for the troops
32	Personnel and material losses

Annex 39

Oberbefehlshaber des Heeres
Chef H Rüst u.B.d.E./In E.B.-
H.Dv. 82/3b Teil A

Supplementary Instruction for the Army Officers in Wartime

Section A

Officer Replacements, 15 May 1941

Section I, General

Selection, promotion and retirement of officers

Section II, Regular officers

Selection, of candidates (including men from the ranks), promotions, transfers

Section III, Reserve officers

Selection, promotion, transfer

Section IV, Miscellaneous

Duties of the officer candidate supervisor (Fähnrichvater)

Officer candidate courses at branch schools

Regulations for selection of officers

Regulations for special units

Special regulations for wounded personnel

Promotion of Party leaders

In addition there are a number of appendixes and sample forms

PROPERTY OF U S ARMY

Annex 40

H.Dv 82/3b
Part B

Supplementary Instructions for Army Officers in Wartime

Part B

Replacements for

Medical Officers

Veterinary Officers

Specialist Engineer Officers

Ordnance Officers

(16 November 1941)

This 145-page booklet contains instructions for medical, veterinary, specialist engineers, and ordnance officers in wartime. A preface written by the Commander in Chief of the Army emphasizes the importance of an adequate numbers of officer replacements and their proper training. It also points out the need for a proper and reasonable basis for the selection of officers.

The booklet is divided into five sections and contains numerous tables, illustrations, and appendixes. It explains regulations governing the selection, transfer, appointment, promotion, resignation, and discharge of officers and describes in detail the careers of officers in the various branches of the Army. Wherever peacetime and wartime regulations differ both are given.

Annex 41

Der Chef der Heeresleitung
Sanitäts-Inspektion
August 1934

Training of Officer Candidates in the Medical and Veterinary Corps

This pamphlet gives the various phases of training for officer candidates in these branches. Only the military aspects are treated in any detail.

PROPERTY OF U S ARMY

DISTRIBUTION

USFET	50
MTOUSA	2
CIG	1
JIS	1
JSC	1
OCC (OASW)	3
OCS	4
P AD	2
OTD	10
SSPD	3
POD	2
Hist Div	1
OCCWS	5
OQMG	2
OCSO	10
OCE	2
OCO	2
OSG	3
OPMG	1
WD Lib	2
AAF	150
AGF	75
USMA	5
CSC	15
ANSCOL	2
NWC	2
ONI	1
USMC	6
State Dept	1
BJSM	100
CAS	50
ID	33
TOTAL	547

Property of U.S. Army
N69098

PROPERTY OF U S ARMY

LIBRARY
COMMAND
AND
STAFF